Workshop Manual

Audi A3 Cabriolet 2008 ➤

General body repairs, interior

Edition 05.2010

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - Technical data

68 - Interior equipment

69 - Passenger protection

70 - Trim, insulation

72 - Seat frames

74 - Seat - padding, covers

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.

All rights reserved.
No reproduction without prior agreement from publisher.

Copyright © 2015 Audi AG, Ingolstadt

Contents

00 - Technical data 1
1 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring 1
2 Contact corrosion 2

68 - Interior equipment 3
1 Storage compartments/covers 3
1.1 Exploded view of shelves / trim panels 3
1.2 Exploded view of dash panel trim (driver side) 4
1.3 Removing and installing dash panel trim (driver side) 5
1.4 Exploded view of trim for steering column switch module 5
1.5 Removing and installing trim cover for instrument cluster 6
1.6 Removing and installing trim (top) for steering column switch module 7
1.7 Removing and installing trim (bottom) for steering column switch module 8
1.8 Exploded view of glove box 8
1.9 Manually releasing the glove box lid 10
1.10 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism with lock 10
1.11 Removing and installing trim panel for glove box lid 11
1.12 Removing and installing glove box 11
1.13 Removing and installing glove box lid 13
1.14 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid 14
2 Centre console 15
2.1 Exploded view of centre console 15
2.2 Removing and installing ashtray (rear) 17
2.3 Removing and installing storage box (rear) for centre console 18
2.4 Removing and installing switch mounting (rear) 18
2.5 Removing and installing grab handle 19
2.6 Removing and installing cover 19
2.7 Removing and installing switch mounting 20
2.8 Removing and installing centre console 20
2.9 Removing and installing sliding cover for centre console 21
2.10 Removing and installing mounting 22
2.11 Removing and installing brackets for centre console 22
2.12 Exploded view of storage compartment and trim - equipment version 'non-smoker' 22
2.13 Removing and installing trim 23
2.14 Removing and installing storage compartment 24
2.15 Exploded view of cover, trim and ashtray (front) - equipment version 'smoker' 24
2.16 Removing and installing cover 25
2.17 Removing and installing frame for cover 25
2.18 Removing and installing ashtray (front) 25
2.19 Removing and installing trim for ashtray lid 26
2.20 Exploded view of storage net (centre console) 26
2.21 Removing and installing trim 27
2.22 Removing and installing storage net (centre console) 28
3 Trim for handbrake grip 29
3.1 Exploded view of trim for handbrake grip 29
3.2 Removing and installing handbrake lever trim 30
4 Centre armrest (front) 31
4.1 Exploded view of centre armrest (front) 31
4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front) 32
4.3 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (front) 32
4.4 Removing and installing trim section 33
4.5 Removing and installing side caps 33

Introduction to publicity. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.6 Removing and installing cover (rear) . . . 33
4.7 Removing and installing storage compartment . . . 34
4.8 Removing and installing handle for centre armrest (front) . . . 34
4.9 Removing and installing trim . . . 35
5 Interior mirror . . . 36
5.1 Exploded view of interior mirror . . . 36
5.2 Removing and installing manual anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . 37
5.3 Removing and installing automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . 37
5.4 Safety regulations for interior mirror . . . 38
5.5 General notes on interior mirror . . . 38
5.6 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off . . . 39
5.7 Switching compass display on and off . . . 39
5.8 Setting magnetic deflection zone . . . 39
5.9 Calibrating digital compass . . . 40
5.10 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror Y7 for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles . . . 41
5.11 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map . . . 41
5.12 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror . . . 47

69 - Passenger protection . . . 49
1 Safety regulations and test methods for pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system . . . 49
1.1 General safety regulations . . . 49
1.2 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components) . . . 50
1.3 Additional safety regulations for side airbags . . . 51
1.4 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags . . . 52
1.5 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) . . . 52
1.6 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version . . . 53
1.7 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version . . . 53
1.8 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident . . . 54
1.9 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident . . . 56
1.10 Accident in which airbag was not triggered . . . 56
1.11 Checking seat belts . . . 56
1.12 Checking belt webbing . . . 57
1.13 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action) . . . 57
1.14 Visual inspection of belt buckle . . . 58
1.15 Functional check of belt buckle . . . 58
1.16 Checking guide fittings and latch plate . . . 58
1.17 Checking securing components and anchorage points . . . 58
1.18 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version) . . . 59
1.19 Checking child seat anchors following an accident (ISOFIX, Top Tether) . . . 59
2 Seat belts . . . 60
2.1 Overview of seat belts and anchorage points . . . 60
2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front) . . . 61
2.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front) . . . 62
2.4 Removing and installing guide rail for belt strap (front) . . . 64
2.5 Exploded view of belt buckle (front) . . . 64
2.6 Removing and installing belt buckle (front) . . . 65
2.7 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 67
2.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear) . . . 68
2.9 Removing and installing belt end fitting (rear) . . . 69
2.10 Exploded view of belt buckle (rear) . . . 69

Publication or reproduction of this or any other part of this document, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear) . . . 70
3 Child seat anchors (ISOFIX, Top Tether) . . . 72
3.1 Exploded view of child seat anchor (ISOFIX) for front seat . . . 72
3.2 Removing and installing ISOFIX retainer . . . 72
3.3 Exploded view of child seat anchors (ISOFIX) for rear seats . . . 74
3.4 Exploded view of child seat anchor (Top Tether) for rear seats - country-specific version . . . 76
3.5 Removing and installing child seat anchor (Top Tether) . . . 76
4 Airbags . . . 78
4.1 Overview of fitting locations . . . 78
4.2 Exploded view of airbag control unit J234 . . . 79
4.3 Removing and installing airbag control unit J234 . . . 80
5 Airbag (driver side) . . . 82
5.1 Exploded view of airbag (driver side) . . . 82
5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with airbag igniters N95 and N250 . . . 83
5.3 Renewing connector at airbag . . . 86
6 Airbag (front passenger side) . . . 87
6.1 Exploded view of airbag (front passenger side) . . . 87
6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with airbag igniter N131 . . . 89
6.3 Removing and installing brackets for airbag unit (front passenger side) . . . 92
6.4 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side E224 . . . 92
6.5 Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side K145 . . . 94
7 Side airbags . . . 96
7.1 Exploded view of side airbag (front) . . . 96
7.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter N199 / N200 . . . 96
8 Crash sensors for airbags . . . 99
8.1 Overview of crash sensors for airbags . . . 99
8.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for front airbag . . . 100
8.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (front) . . . 102
9 Roll-over protection . . . 105
9.1 Exploded view of roll-over protection system . . . 105
9.2 Removing and installing roll-over bar . . . 106

70 - Trim, insulation . . . 107

1 Door trim (front) . . . 107
1.1 Exploded view of door trim . . . 107
1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim . . . 109
1.3 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 110
1.4 Removing and installing door trim . . . 110
1.5 Removing and installing storage pocket . . . 112
1.6 Removing and installing armrest . . . 113
1.7 Removing and door puller with switch mounting . . . 113
1.8 Removing and installing interior door handle . . . 114
1.9 Removing and installing cover for mirror base . . . 115
2 Dash panel . . . 117
2.1 Overview of dash panel . . . 117
2.2 Exploded view of dash panel . . . 118
2.3 Removing and installing dash panel end trim . . . 120
2.4 Removing and installing side defroster vent (top) . . . 121
2.5 Removing and installing dash panel vent (side) . . . 121
2.6 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre) . . . 123
2.7 Removing and installing centre loudspeaker trim . . . 123
2.8 Removing and installing trim for switch module . . . 123

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © 2010 AUDI AG.

2.9 Removing and installing cup holder/storage compartment . . . 124
2.10 Removing and installing dash panel . . . 124
2.11 Removing and installing top defroster vent (centre) . . . 128
2.12 Removing and installing mounting frame for radio/navigation system . . . 128
3 Central tube for dash panel . . . 129
3.1 Exploded view of central tube for dash panel . . . 129
3.2 Removing and installing support for dash panel . . . 133
3.3 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel . . . 133
3.4 Removing and installing retaining brackets for central tube for dash panel . . . 137
4 Passenger compartment trim . . . 138
4.1 Overview of trim panels . . . 138
4.2 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (top) . . . 139
4.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top) . . . 139
4.4 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (bottom) . . . 140
4.5 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom) . . . 141
4.6 Exploded view of foot rest cover and bracket . . . 142
4.7 Removing and installing foot rest cover . . . 143
4.8 Removing and installing foot rest bracket . . . 144
4.9 Exploded view of sill panel trim . . . 144
4.10 Removing and installing sill panel trim . . . 145
4.11 Exploded view of side trim . . . 146
4.12 Removing and installing belt exit point trim (front) . . . 146
4.13 Removing and installing mid-range and bass loudspeaker trim . . . 147
4.14 Removing and installing armrest in side trim . . . 148
4.15 Removing and installing side trim . . . 148
4.16 Removing and installing cover for window regulator . . . 149
4.17 Exploded view of back panel trim . . . 153
4.18 Removing and installing back panel trim (front) . . . 153
4.19 Removing and installing back panel side trim . . . 154
4.20 Removing and installing belt exit point trim (rear) . . . 155
4.21 Removing and installing back panel trim (top) . . . 155
4.22 Exploded view of floor covering . . . 156
4.23 Removing and installing cover for universal joint of steering column . . . 157
4.24 Removing and installing trim and footwell vent . . . 158
4.25 Removing and installing floor covering . . . 159
4.26 Exploded view of convertible roof compartment trim . . . 159
4.27 Removing and installing support for convertible roof . . . 160
4.28 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment side trim . . . 161
4.29 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (front) . . . 162
4.30 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (centre) . . . 163
5 Luggage compartment trim . . . 165
5.1 Exploded view of luggage compartment trim panels . . . 165
5.2 Exploded view of rear lid trim . . . 166
5.3 Removing and installing rear lid trim . . . 166
5.4 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock . . . 167
5.5 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim . . . 167
5.6 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim . . . 168
5.7 Exploded view of luggage compartment side trim . . . 169
5.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim . . . 170
5.9 Exploded view of fastening rings . . . 171
5.10 Removing and installing fastening ring . . . 172
5.11 Exploded view of luggage compartment floor covering . . . 173
6 Roof trim . . . 174
6.1 Overview of roof trim . . . 174
6.2 Exploded view of sun visor . . . 175

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.3 Removing and installing sun visor . . . 175
6.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor . . . 176
6.5 Exploded view of roof frame trim . . . 176
6.6 Removing and installing trim panel . . . 177
6.7 Removing and installing roof frame trim (bottom) . . . 178
6.8 Removing and installing roof frame trim (top) . . . 179

72 - Seat frames . . . 181

1 Overview of seat versions . . . 181
1.1 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand VAS 6136 . . . 182
2 Front seats - standard seat (with manual adjustment) . . . 183
2.1 Exploded view of front seat - standard seat . . . 183
2.2 Removing and installing front seat . . . 183
2.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors . . . 183
2.4 Connecting airbag adapter . . . 183
2.5 Connectors in connector point . . . 183
2.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing . . . 183
2.7 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat . . . 183
2.8 Removing and installing seat rail cover (front) . . . 183
2.9 Removing and installing seat rail cover (rear) . . . 184
2.10 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side) . . . 184
2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjuster . . . 184
2.12 Removing and installing trim (sill side) . . . 185
2.13 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side) . . . 185
2.14 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side) . . . 185
2.15 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) . . . 186
2.16 Exploded view of seat height adjuster unit and seat height adjuster . . . 186
2.17 Removing and installing seat height adjuster . . . 186
2.18 Removing and installing seat height adjuster unit . . . 186
2.19 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle . . . 186
2.20 Exploded view of torsion bar . . . 186
2.21 Removing and installing torsion bar . . . 186
2.22 Removing and installing bearing . . . 187
2.23 Renewing bottom part of seat / seat pan . . . 187
2.24 Exploded view of front seat backrest . . . 187
2.25 Removing and installing backrest cover panel . . . 187
2.26 Removing and installing front seat backrest . . . 187
2.27 Exploded view of spring mat . . . 187
2.28 Removing and installing spring mat . . . 188
2.29 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support . . . 190
2.30 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support . . . 191
2.31 Exploded view of backrest release mechanism (front) . . . 191
2.32 Removing and installing backrest release handle (front) . . . 191
2.33 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism (front) . . . 191
2.34 Removing and installing bracket for trim for backrest release mechanism (front) . . . 191
2.35 Removing and installing Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front) . . . 191
2.36 Adjusting Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front) . . . 191
2.37 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility . . . 191
2.38 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry facility . . . 192
2.39 Removing and installing memory block . . . 192
2.40 Exploded view of storage compartment . . . 192
2.41 Removing and installing storage compartment . . . 192
2.42 Exploded view of head restraint . . . 192
2.43 Removing and installing head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism . . . 192
2.44 Removing and installing head restraint guide without and with release button . . . 192
2.45 Overview of electrical and electronic components . . . 192

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.46 Exploded view of lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors 193
2.47 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor V125 / V126 193
2.48 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor V129 / V130 193
2.49 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switches 193
2.50 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch 193
3 Front seats - sports seat (with manual adjustment) 194
3.1 Exploded view of front seat - sports seat 194
3.2 Removing and installing front seat 196
3.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors 198
3.4 Connecting airbag adapter 201
3.5 Connectors in connector point 203
3.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing 203
3.7 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat 203
3.8 Removing and installing seat rail cover (front) 205
3.9 Removing and installing seat rail cover (rear) 205
3.10 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side) 205
3.11 Removing and installing backrest adjuster 206
3.12 Removing and installing trim (sill side) 207
3.13 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side) 209
3.14 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side) 210
3.15 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side) 210
3.16 Exploded view of seat height adjuster unit and seat height adjuster 210
3.17 Removing and installing seat height adjuster 211
3.18 Removing and installing seat height adjuster unit 212
3.19 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle 215
3.20 Exploded view of torsion bar 215
3.21 Removing and installing torsion bar 216
3.22 Removing and installing bearing 219
3.23 Renewing bottom part of seat / seat pan 222
3.24 Exploded view of front seat backrest 223
3.25 Removing and installing backrest cover panel 224
3.26 Removing and installing front seat backrest 226
3.27 Exploded view of spring mat 228
3.28 Removing and installing spring mat 228
3.29 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support 229
3.30 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support 230
3.31 Exploded view of backrest release mechanism (front) 232
3.32 Removing and installing backrest release handle (front) 234
3.33 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism (front) 234
3.34 Removing and installing bracket for trim for backrest release mechanism (front) 235
3.35 Removing and installing Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front) 236
3.36 Adjusting Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front) 239
3.37 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility 241
3.38 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry facility 242
3.39 Removing and installing memory block 244
3.40 Exploded view of storage compartment 244
3.41 Removing and installing storage compartment 245
3.42 Removing and installing bracket for storage compartment 246
3.43 Exploded view of head restraint 247
3.44 Removing and installing head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism 248
3.45 Removing and installing head restraint guide without and with release button 249
3.46 Overview of electrical and electronic components 250
3.47 Exploded view of lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors 251
3.48 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor V125 / V126 252
3.49 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor V129 / V130 254
3.50 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switches 256

Audi
Copyright by AUDI AG. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.51 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 257
4 Rear seats 259
4.1 Overview of rear seats 259
4.2 Exploded view of seat bench 260
4.3 Removing and installing seat bench 261
4.4 Exploded view of backrests (rear) 262
4.5 Removing and installing pressure pin for releasing rear seat backrest 263
4.6 Removing and installing rear seat backrest 263
4.7 Removing and installing cap for centre bracket (front) 265
4.8 Exploded view of backrest release mechanism (rear) 265
4.9 Removing and installing actuator for releasing rear seat backrest 266
4.10 Removing and installing Bowden cable 267
4.11 Removing and installing bracket for actuator 268
4.12 Exploded view of backrest frame and backrest pan 268
4.13 Removing and installing filler pieces 269
4.14 Removing and installing rear seat backrest at backrest frame 270
4.15 Removing and installing backrest pan 270
4.16 Exploded view of head restraint (rear) 271
4.17 Removing and installing head restraint (rear) 271

74 - Seat - padding, covers 273
1 Front seat covers and padding 273
1.1 Exploded view of cover and padding for front seat 273
1.2 Removing and installing seat cover and padding 273
1.3 Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling 275
1.4 Cutting slots in fabric cover for ISOFIX retainer 276
1.5 Exploded view of cover and padding for front seat backrest 276
1.6 Removing and installing cover and padding for front seat backrest 278
1.7 Detaching backrest cover from padding (front) and assembling 279
1.8 Overview of seat heating element 279
1.9 Removing and installing seat heating element 280
1.10 Overview of backrest heating element 281
1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element 282
1.12 Exploded view of cover and padding for head restraint (front) 282
1.13 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism 283
2 Covers and padding on rear seats 287
2.1 Exploded view of cover and padding for rear seat bench 287
2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding for rear seat bench 288
2.3 Detaching cover from padding for rear seat bench and assembling 288
2.4 Exploded view of cover and padding for rear seat backrest 289
2.5 Removing and installing cover and padding for rear seat backrest 290
2.6 Detaching cover from padding for rear seat backrest and assembling 291
2.7 Overview of seat bench heating element 292
2.8 Removing and installing seat bench heating element 293
2.9 Overview of backrest heating element 294
2.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element 295
2.11 Exploded view of cover and padding for head restraint (rear) 295
2.12 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint (rear) 296

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

00 – Technical data

1 Routing and attaching pipes and wiring

Make sketches or take photographs when unfastening or removing and installing hydraulic and pneumatic pipes or wires. This ensures re-installation at the original location.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Contact corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if unsuitable fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers etc.) are used on the vehicle.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are fitted.

In addition, all rubber and plastic parts and all adhesives are made of non-conductive materials.

Should you have any doubts whether certain parts can be re-used, use new parts ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Important:

- We recommend using genuine replacement parts only, as these have been checked and are compatible with aluminium.
- We recommend using Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Damage caused by contact corrosion is not covered by the warranty.

68 – Interior equipment

1 Storage compartments/covers

1.1 Exploded view of shelves / trim panels

1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 15
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

2 - Dash panel trim (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 4
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 5

3 - Trim for steering column switch module

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 5
- ❑ Removing and installing trim (top) ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing trim (bottom) ⇒ page 8

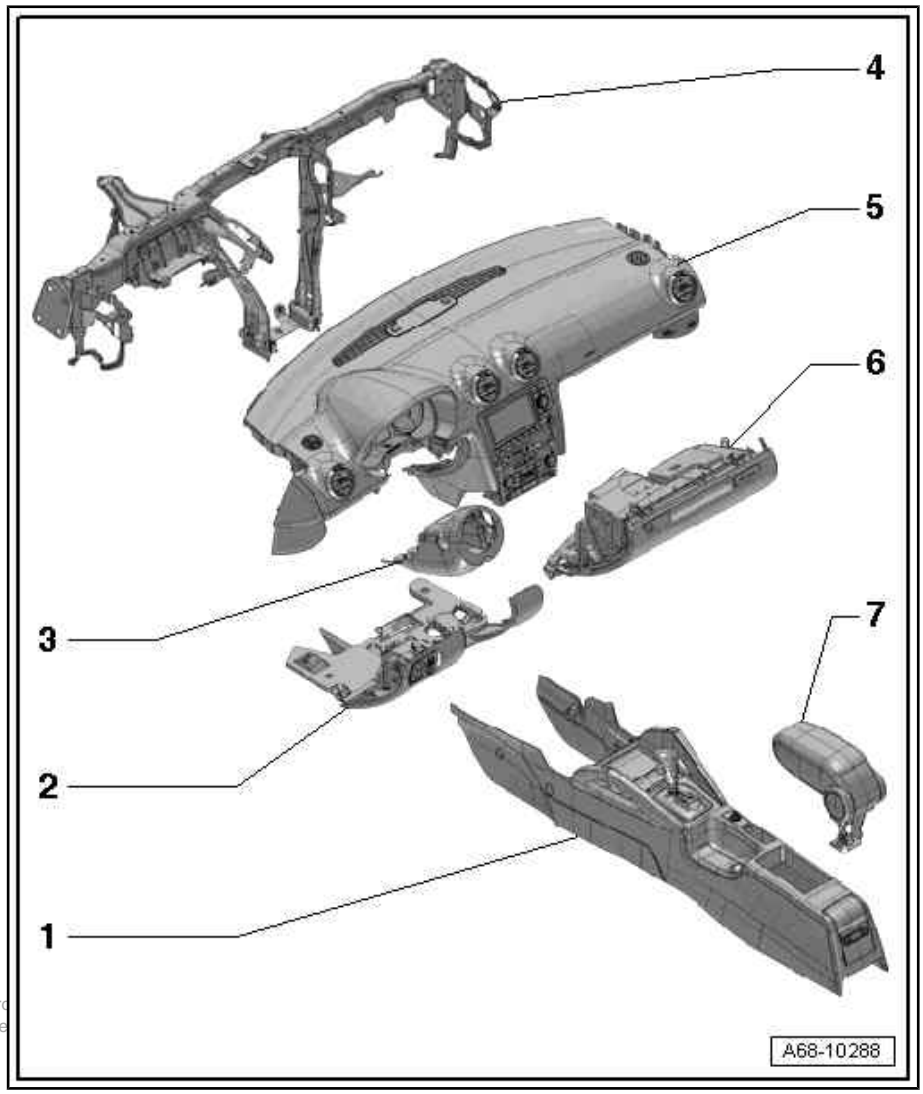
4 - Central tube for dash panel

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 129
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 133

5 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124



6 - Glove box

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 8
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 11

7 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 31
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32

1.2 Exploded view of dash panel trim (driver side)

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

2 - End trim
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

3 - 16-pin connector -T16-
- ❑ Diagnostic connector

4 - Clip
- ❑ Insert in foot rest

5 - Dash panel trim (driver side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 5

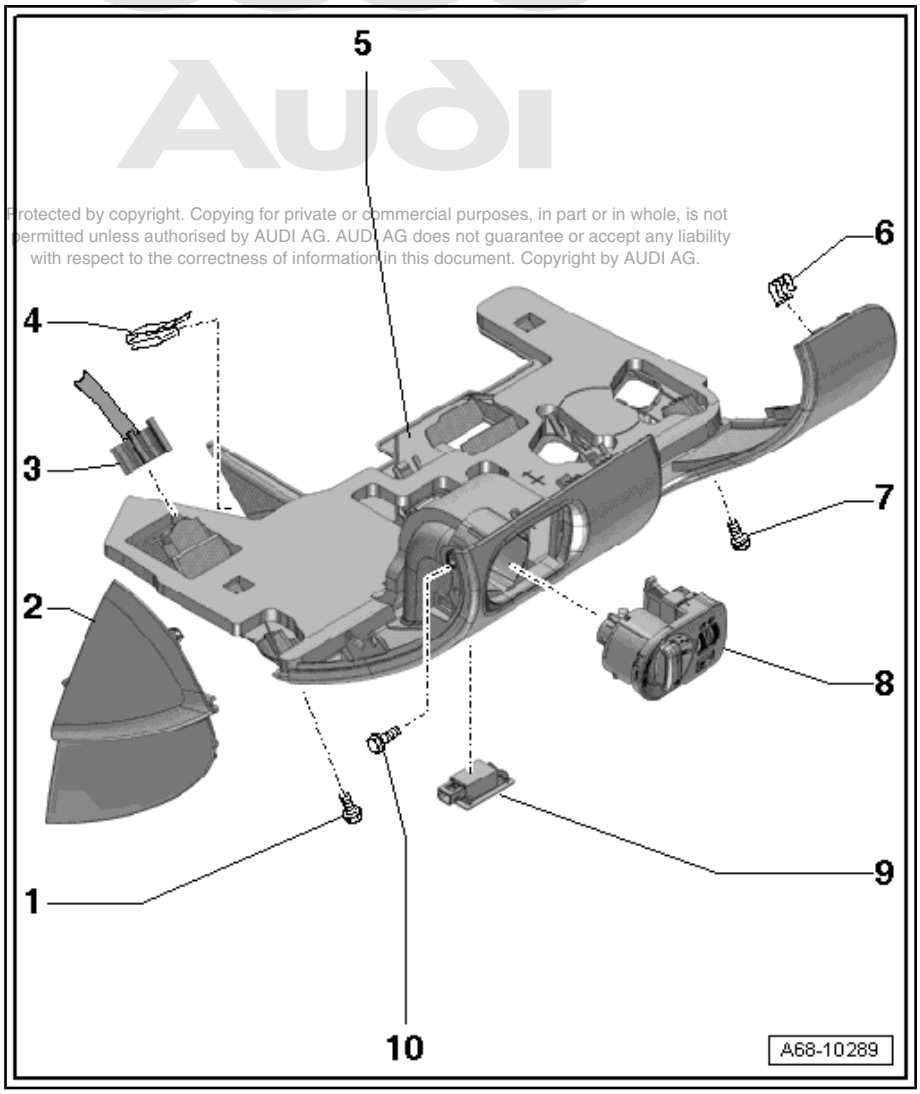
6 - Spring clip
- ❑ For dash panel trim (driver side)

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

8 - Light switch -E1-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

9 - Footwell light
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

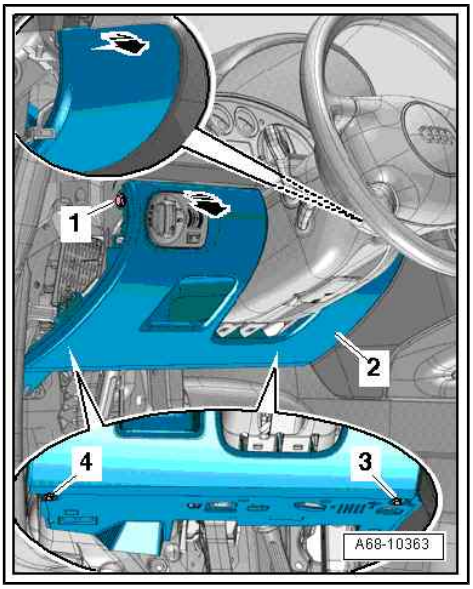
10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.3 Removing and installing dash panel trim (driver side)

Removing



- Switch off all electrical equipment.
- Remove ignition key.
- Remove dash panel end trim (driver side) ⇒ page 120 .
- Remove bolt -1- at side.
- Unscrew bolts -3- and -4- (bottom).
- Unclip top edge of dash panel trim (driver side) -2- from dash panel -arrows-.
- Unplug electrical connectors for light switch.
- Unclip 16-pin connector -T16- (diagnostic connector).
- Equipment version with footwell light: Unplug electrical connector.
- Pull dash panel trim (driver side) out of spring clip at foot rest and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Insert bottom of dash panel trim in spring clip at foot rest and insert top of dash panel trim in spring clips at dash panel.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 4

1.4 Exploded view of trim for steering column switch module

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Trim cover

- ❑ For instrument cluster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 6

2 - Trim (top)

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 7

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

4 - Trim (bottom)

- ❑ For steering column switch module
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 8

5 - Handle

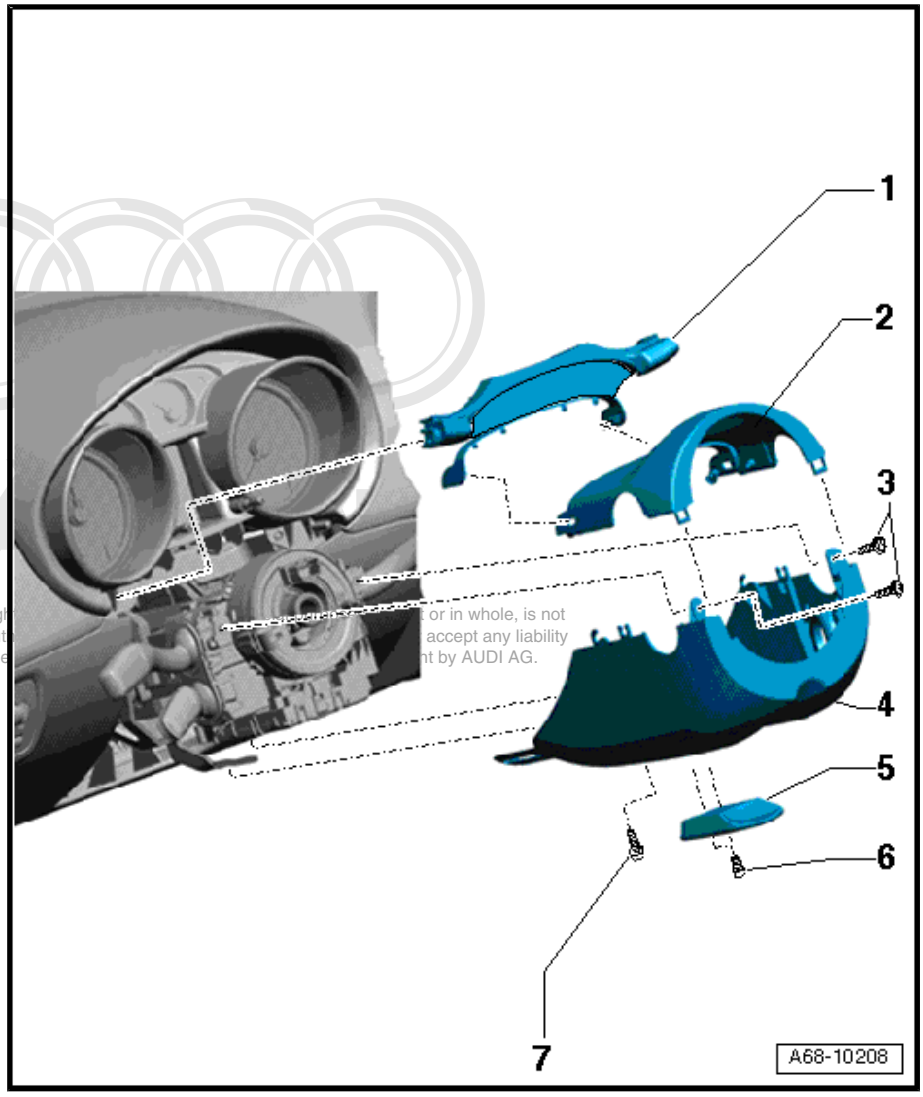
- ❑ For steering column adjustment

6 - Bolts

- ❑ 3 Nm

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm



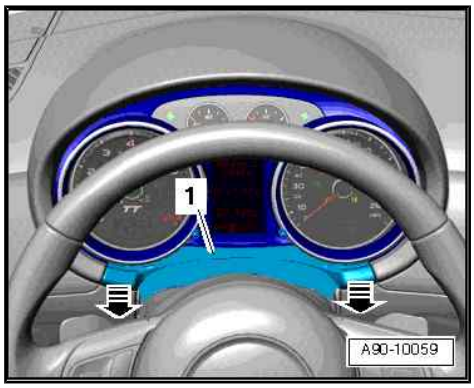
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Removing and installing trim cover for instrument cluster

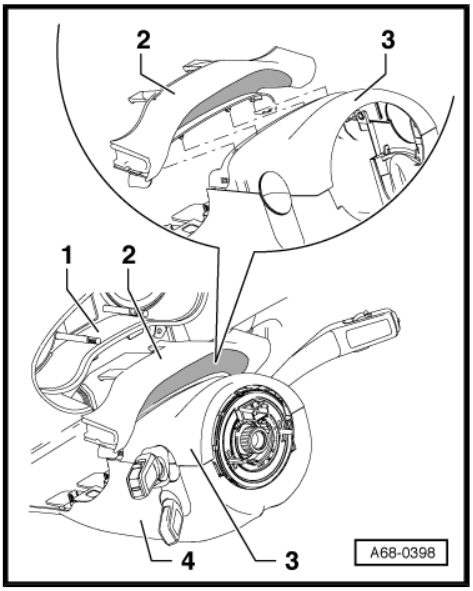
Removing

– Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Pull off trim cover -1- in direction of -arrow-.



– Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully unclip trim cover -2- from trim (top) for steering column switch module -3-.



Note

Disregard items -1- and -4-.

Installing

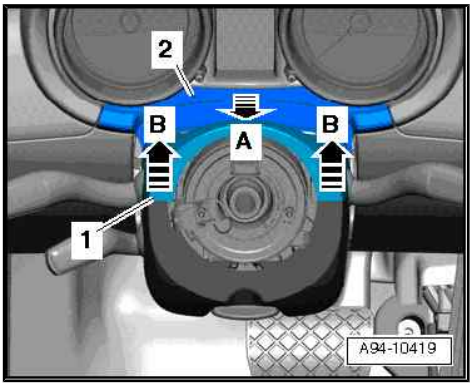
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that trim cover engages audibly in trim (top).

– Engage trim cover at instrument cluster.

1.6 Removing and installing trim (top) for steering column switch module

Removing



– Move steering wheel down and towards rear as far as it will go, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– Detach trim cover -2- in direction of -arrow A-.

– Turn steering wheel 90° to one side from straight ahead position.

– Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully prise trim (top) -1- off trim (bottom) for steering column switch module in direction of -arrows B-.

– Disengage trim (top) at trim (bottom) for steering column switch module and detach.

Note

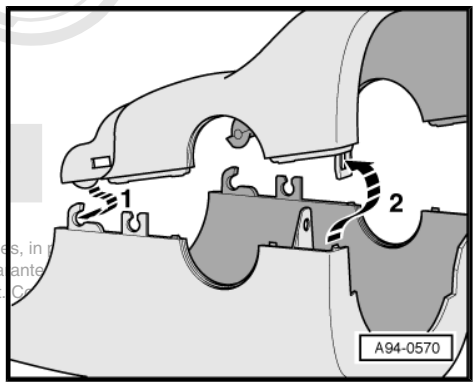
Steering wheel has been removed in illustration.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Start by engaging trim (top) in trim (bottom) -arrow 1-.

– Make sure that lug of trim (bottom) engages in recess at retaining tab of trim (top) -arrow 2-.



Note

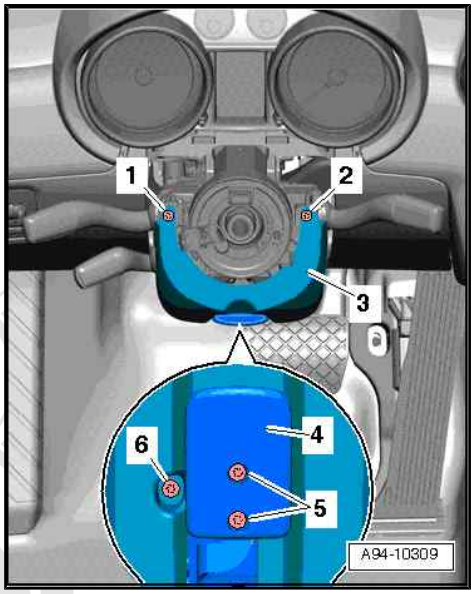
In illustration trim for steering column switch module has been removed.

– Engage trim cover at instrument cluster.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

1.7 Removing and installing trim (bottom) for steering column switch module

Removing



- Remove trim (top) for steering column switch module ⇒ page 7 .
- Remove bolts -5- and detach handle -4- for steering column adjustment.
- Turn steering wheel 90° to one side from straight ahead position.
- Remove bolts -1- and -2-.

Note

If bolts -1- and -2- are not accessible, steering wheel must be removed before performing remaining work steps ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48 .

- Unscrew bolt -6- and detach trim (bottom) -3- for steering column switch module.

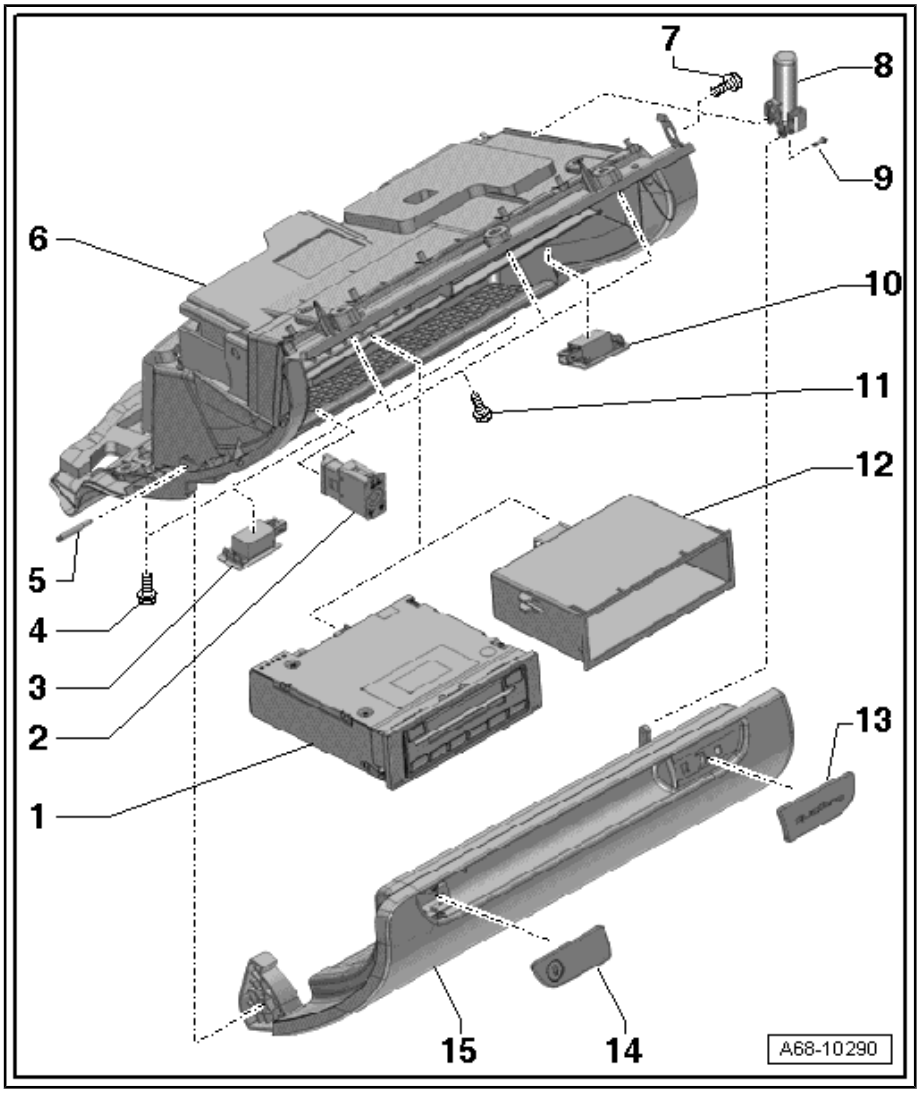
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 5

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Exploded view of glove box



1 - CD drive

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91

2 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

3 - Footwell light

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

5 - Hinge pin

- ❑ For securing glove box lid

6 - Glove box

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 11

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

8 - Cushioning element

- ❑ With glove box light switch -E26-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 14

9 - Hinge pin

10 - Glove box light -W6-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

12 - Storage box

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

13 - Trim

- ❑ For glove box lid
- ❑ Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 11

14 - Glove box opening mechanism with lock

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 10

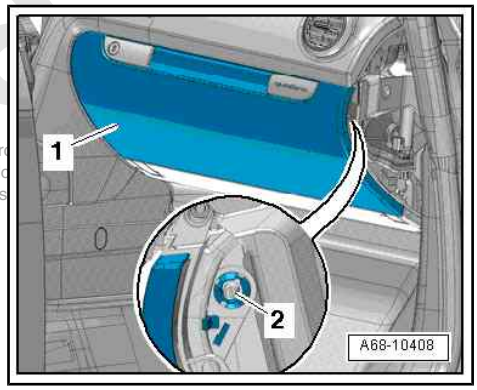
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

15 - Glove box lid

- ❑ Manually releasing the glove box lid ⇒ page 10
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 13

1.9 Manually releasing the glove box lid

Procedure



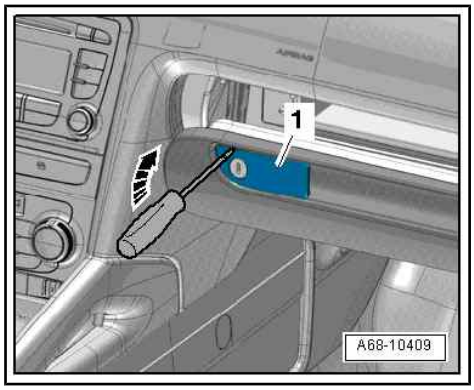
– Remove dash panel end trim (passenger side) ⇒ page 120 .

– Open glove box lid -1- by pressing down locking pin -2- with a screwdriver.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commerc
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG do
with respect to the correctness of information in this

1.10 Removing and installing glove box opening mechanism with lock

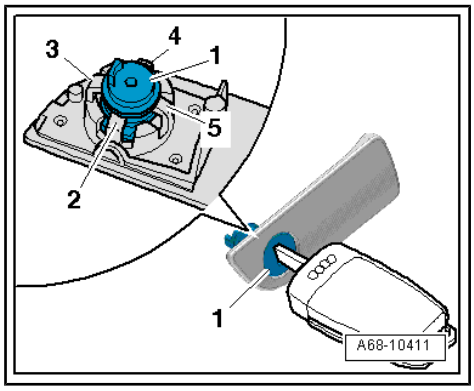
Removing



– Carefully prise out glove box opening mechanism -1- with lock using a flat screwdriver -arrow-, as shown in illustration.

Note

The lock cylinder can only be removed with the key inserted.



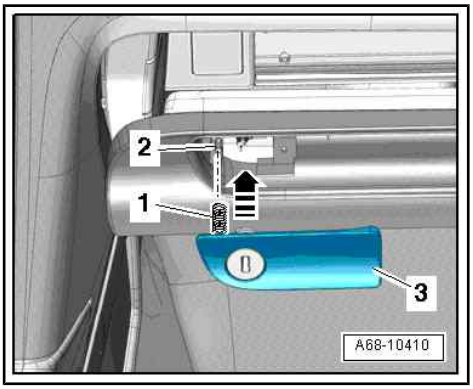
– Use a screwdriver to carefully prise out retainers -2, 3, 4, 5- and at the same time pull lock cylinder -1- out of glove box opening mechanism.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– With key inserted, press in lock cylinder until it engages audibly in all retainers.

– Fit glove box opening mechanism -3- with lock and spring -1- into pin -2- on glove box lid and press in until it engages audibly -arrow-.



1.11 Removing and installing trim panel for glove box lid

Note

Cannot be removed without being damaged irreparably.

Removing

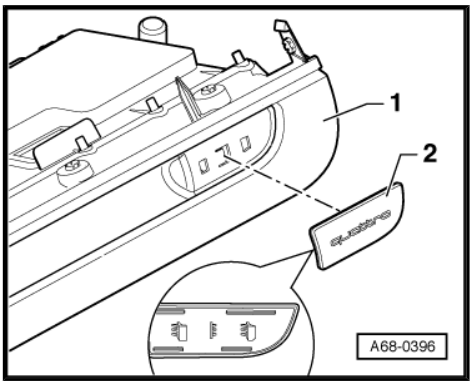
– Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully release retaining tab and disengage trim panel -2- from glove box lid -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Clip trim panel -2- into glove box lid -1-.

– Make sure trim panel engages audibly.



1.12 Removing and installing glove box

Note

If the glove box lid cannot be opened in the normal way you can use the manual release mechanism to open it ⇒ page 10 .

Removing

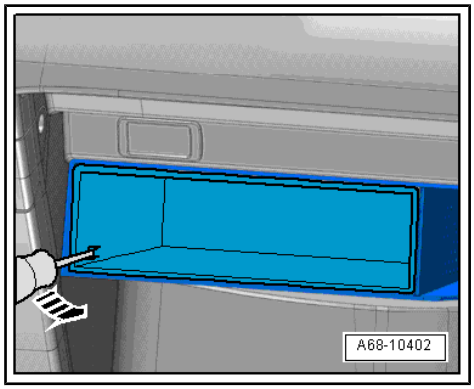
WARNING

On vehicles with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

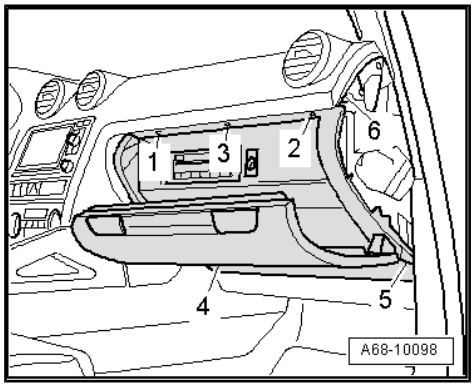
– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Equipment version with storage box in glove box: Release retaining hooks (left and right) -arrow- using a screwdriver and pull storage box out of glove box.
– Equipment version with CD drive: Remove CD drive ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91 .



– Remove dash panel end trim (passenger side) ⇒ page 120 .
– Open glove box lid and unscrew bolts -1 ... 6-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Detach glove box and pull out far enough so that you can unplug electrical connector at main connector.

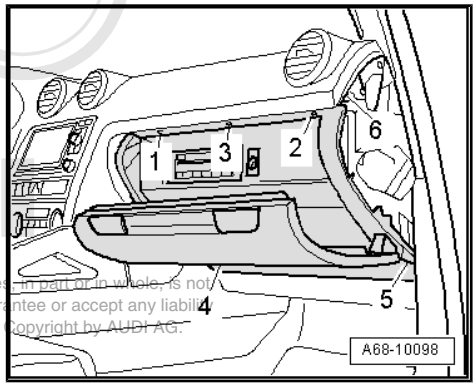
Installing

WARNING

- *On vehicles with key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- , observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction, even of extracts, or in whole, is not permitted without written authorization from AUDI AG. We accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



– Plug in electrical connector until it engages audibly.
– Tighten bolts in sequence -1 … 6- as shown in illustration.
– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

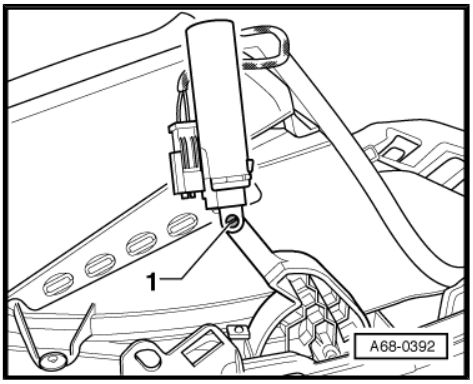
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

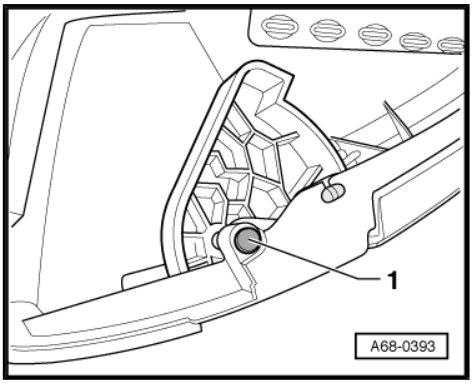
Tightening torque ⇒ page 8

1.13 Removing and installing glove box lid

Removing



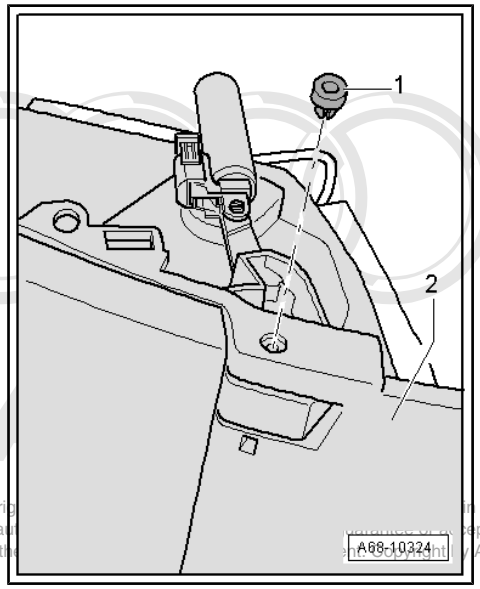
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 11 .
– Pull hinge pin -1- out of cushioning element.



– Set down glove box with top resting on a soft surface.
– Remove pin -1- on left side of glove box.

Note

- *A cap -1- is located on the right side of the glove box exterior. Take care that the cap does not get lost when the pin is removed.*
- *The pin for the glove box lid is pressed into a hole underneath the cap.*



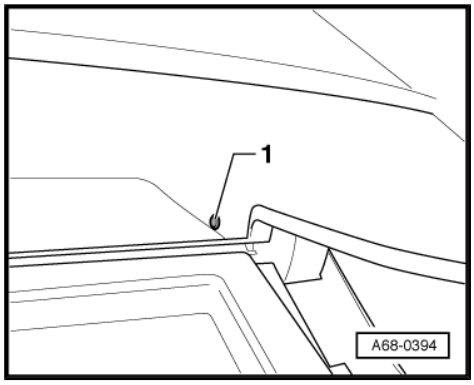
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Open glove box and remove mat.
– Working from the inside, knock out pin -1- on right side using a 4 mm pin punch.
– Detach glove box lid.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press cap in so that it is seated flush in glove box.



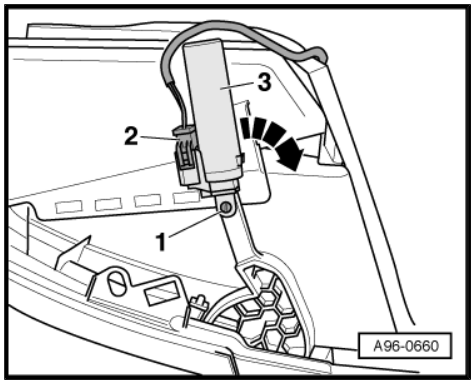
1.14 Removing and installing cushioning element for glove box lid

Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 11 .
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Pull out hinge pin -1-.
– Open glove box (removed earlier).
– Release switch -3- in clockwise direction -arrow-and detach.

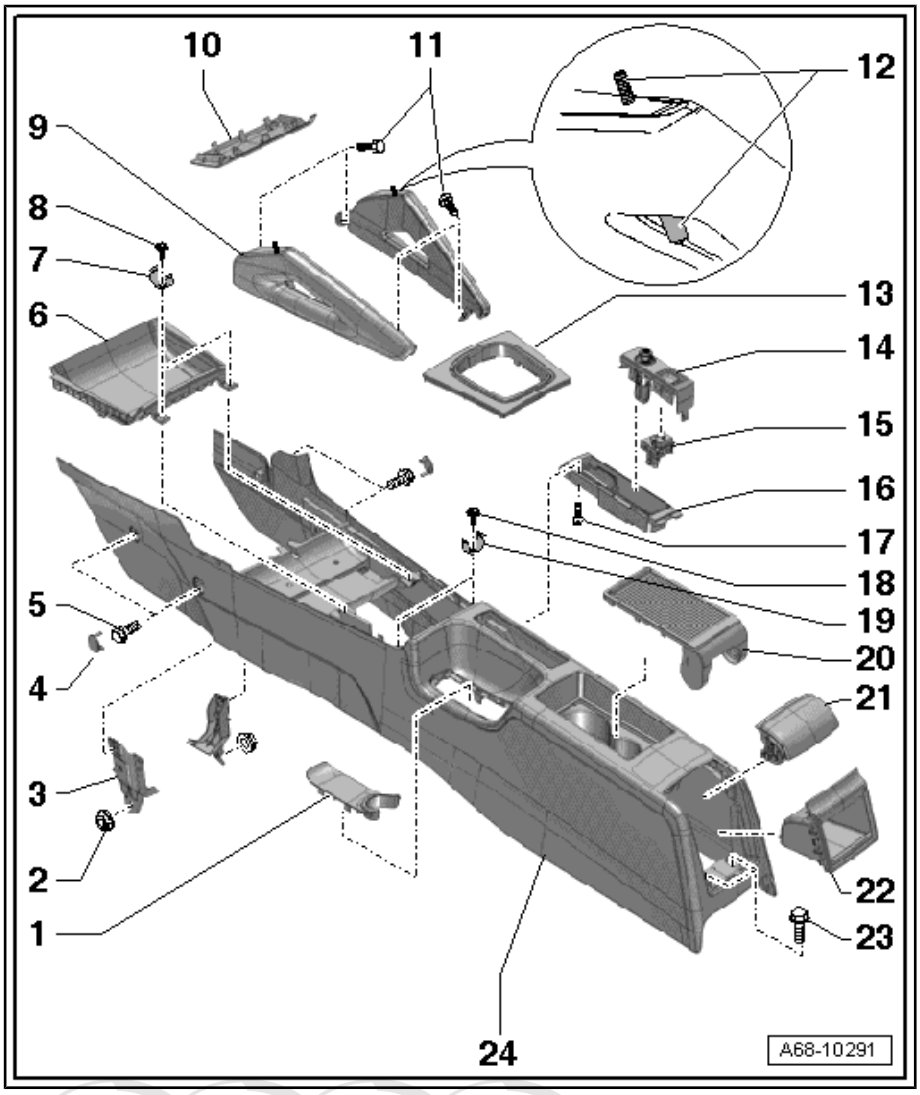
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



2 Centre console

2.1 Exploded view of centre console



1 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 19

2 - Nut

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 22

4 - Cap

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Different versions

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

6 - Storage compartment or ashtray (front)

- ❑ Illustration shows equipment version 'non-smoker'
- ❑ Exploded view of equipment version 'non-smoker' ⇒ page 22
- ❑ Exploded view of equipment version 'smoker' ⇒ page 24

7 - Clip

- ❑ For cover
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Observe installation position ⇒ page 17

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

9 - Grab handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 19

10 - Trim

- ❑ Illustration shows equipment version 'non-smoker'
- ❑ Exploded view of equipment version 'non-smoker' ⇒ page 22
- ❑ Exploded view of equipment version 'smoker' ⇒ page 24

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 17

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

12 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 17

13 - Cover

- ❑ For gear lever boot
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 34

14 - Switch mounting

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing cigarette lighter -U1- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

15 - Convertible roof actuation button -E137-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

16 - Mounting

- ❑ For switch
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 22

17 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

18 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

19 - Clip

- ❑ For cover
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 17

20 - Sliding cover

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 21

21 - Ashtray (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 17

22 - Storage box (rear) or switch mounting (rear)

- ❑ For centre console
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing storage box (rear) ⇒ page 18
- ❑ Removing and installing switch mounting (rear) ⇒ page 18

23 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

24 - Centre console

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

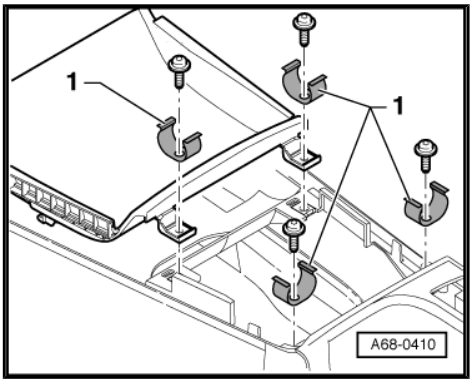
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation position of clips for cover

– Fit clips -1- as shown in illustration:

• Align front clips lengthwise.

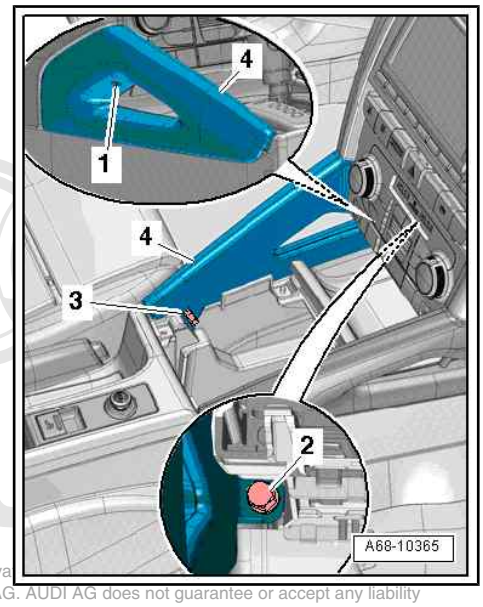
• Align rear clips at right angles.



Tightening torque and sequence for grab handle

– Tighten bolts for grab handle as follows:

1. Bolt -1- to 1.8 Nm
2. Bolt -2- to 3.5 Nm
3. Bolt -3- to 3.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for privat
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.2 Removing and installing ashtray (rear)

Removing

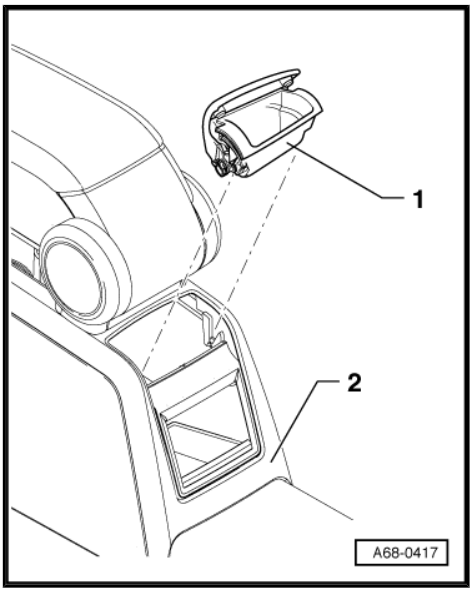
– Open ashtray (rear).

– Pull ashtray (rear) -1- upwards out of centre console -2-.

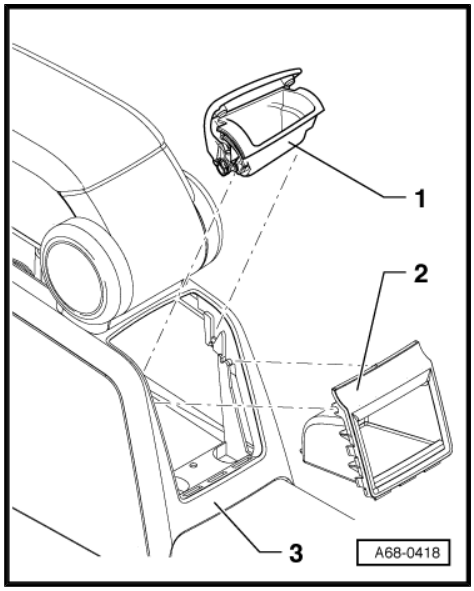
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

• Cover must be open when installing ashtray (rear).



2.3 Removing and installing storage box (rear) for centre console



Removing

– Open ashtray (rear).
– Pull ashtray (rear) -1- upwards out of centre console.
– Pull storage box (rear) -2- out of centre console -3-.

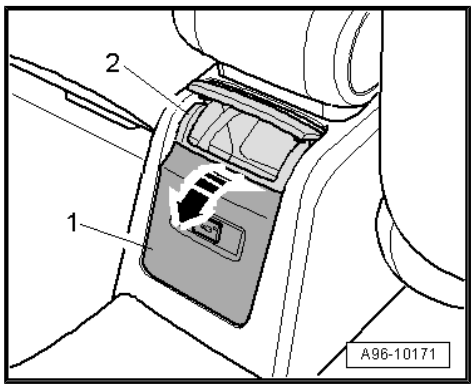
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install storage box (rear) -2- first.
• Cover must be open when installing ashtray (rear).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.4 Removing and installing switch mounting (rear)



Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
– Open ashtray (rear).
– Pull ashtray (rear) upwards out of centre console -2-.
– Pull upper edge of switch mounting -1- out in -direction of arrow-.
– Disengage lower edge of switch mounting.
– Unplug electrical connectors and detach switch mounting.

Note

To renew, remove seat heating switch ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 .

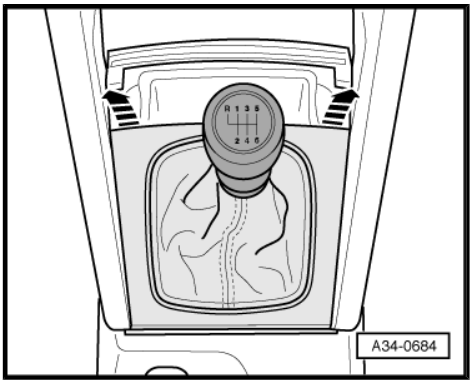
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

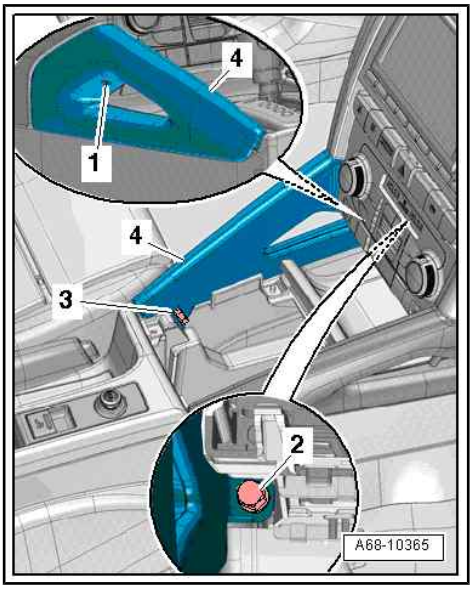
– Switch mounting must engage audibly in centre console.
• Cover must be open when installing ashtray (rear).

2.5 Removing and installing grab handle

Removing



- Equipment version 'smoker': Open ashtray (front).
- Carefully prise cover with gear lever boot off centre console -arrows-.
- Fold cover with gear lever boot upwards over gear knob.
- Equipment version 'non-smoker': Remove trim for storage compartment in centre console ⇒ page 23 .
- Equipment version 'smoker': Remove frame for cover ⇒ page 25 .



- Remove bolts -1, 2, 3- and detach grab handle -4-.

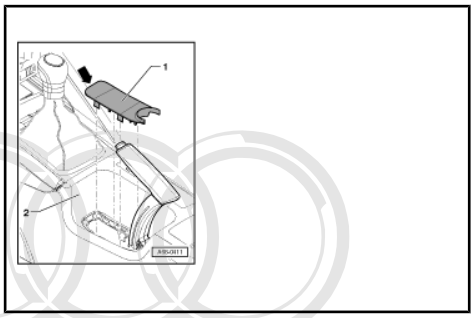
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Tighten bolts ⇒ page 17 .

2.6 Removing and installing cover

Removing



- Apply handbrake.
- Starting at front -arrow-, use a small flat screwdriver to unclip cover -1- from centre console -2-.

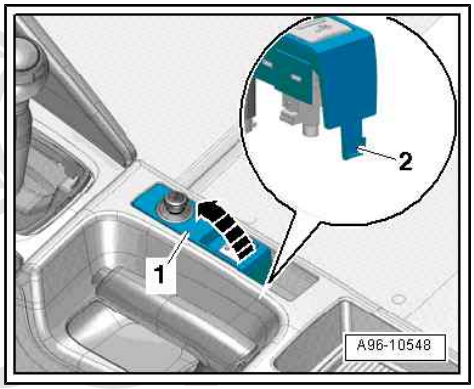
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.7 Removing and installing switch mounting

Removing



- Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.
- Release retaining clip -2- with a small screwdriver.
- Swivel switch mounting -1- out of centre console -arrow-.
- Unplug electrical connectors.

Note

To renew, remove convertible roof actuation button -E137- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 and lighter ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

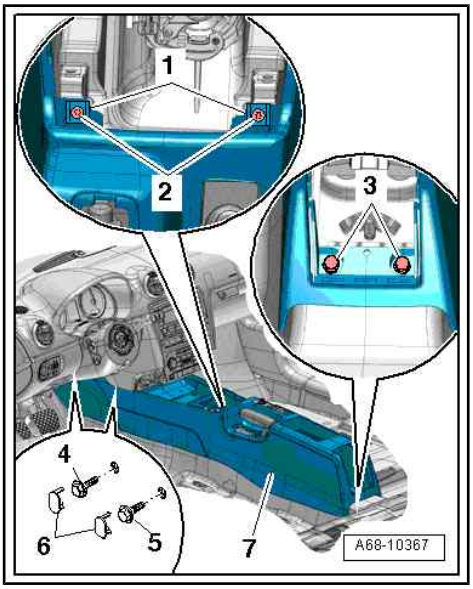
Install in reverse order of removal.

2.8 Removing and installing centre console

Removing

- Operate seal longitudinal adjustment handle and move front seat as far back as possible.
- Remove grab handles ⇒ page 19 .
- Equipment version 'non-smoker': Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 24 .
- Equipment version 'smoker': Remove ashtray (front) ⇒ page 25 .
- Remove cover ⇒ page 19 .
- Equipment version with centre armrest (front): Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 32 .
- Equipment version with storage box: Remove storage box (rear) for centre console ⇒ page 18 .
- Equipment version with switch mounting: Remove switch mounting (rear) ⇒ page 18 .
- Remove cigarette lighter / 12 V socket ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 .

– Mark assignment of caps -6- for left and right side and prise out with a small flat screwdriver.
– Unscrew bolts -4- and -5- on left and right.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach clips -1-.
– Remove bolts -3-.
– Swivel centre console (rear) upwards.
– Unplug any remaining electrical connectors.
– Lift centre console, pull it out of dash panel towards rear and remove by lifting it over selector lever/gear lever.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

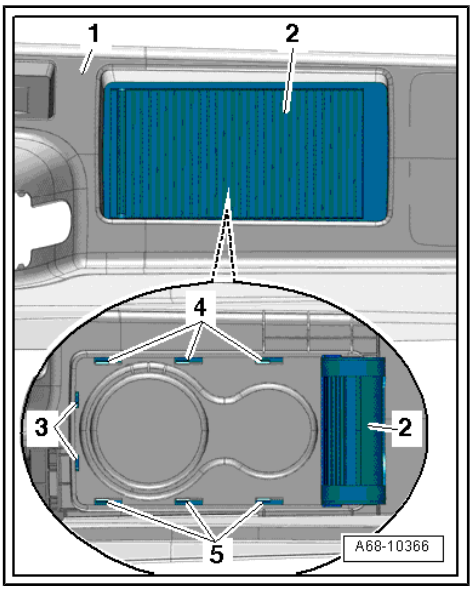
– Before installing cover, install grab handles (left and right) ⇒ page 19 .
– Make sure clips -1- are fitted in correct position ⇒ page 17 .
– When fitting caps -6-, observe correct assignment (different versions).
– Press in cap so that it is seated flush in centre console.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 15

2.9 Removing and installing sliding cover for centre console

Removing

– Remove centre console ⇒ page 20 .
– Remove switch mounting ⇒ page 20 .
– Turn centre console upside down.
– Unclip retaining tabs -3, 4, 5- with a small flat screwdriver.
– Take sliding cover -2- out of centre console -1-.



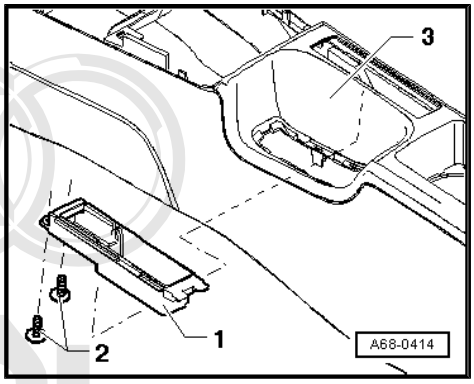
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.10 Removing and installing mounting

Removing



– Remove centre console ⇒ page 20 .
– Turn centre console upside down.
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Take mounting -1- out of centre console -3-.

Installing

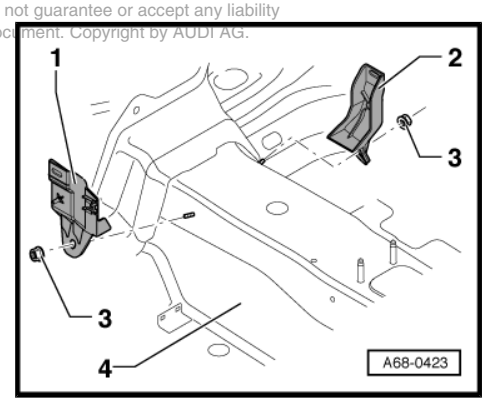
Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 15

2.11 Removing and installing brackets for centre console

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Remove centre console ⇒ page 20 .
– Fold back floor covering in area of brackets for centre console -1- / -2-.
– Remove nuts -3-.
– Take brackets for centre console off centre tunnel -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 15

2.12 Exploded view of storage compartment and trim - equipment version 'non-smoker'

1 - Mounting frame

2 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 24

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

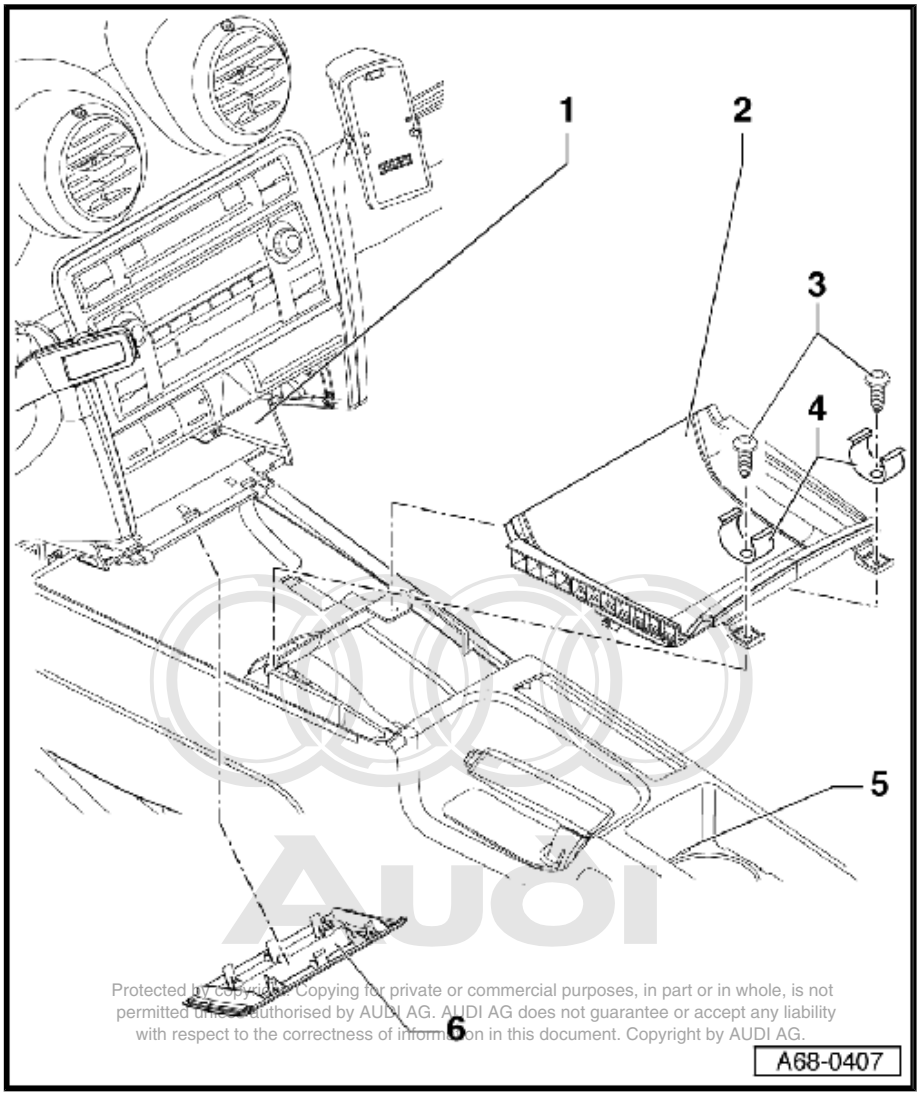
4 - Clips

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 17

5 - Centre console

6 - Trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 23



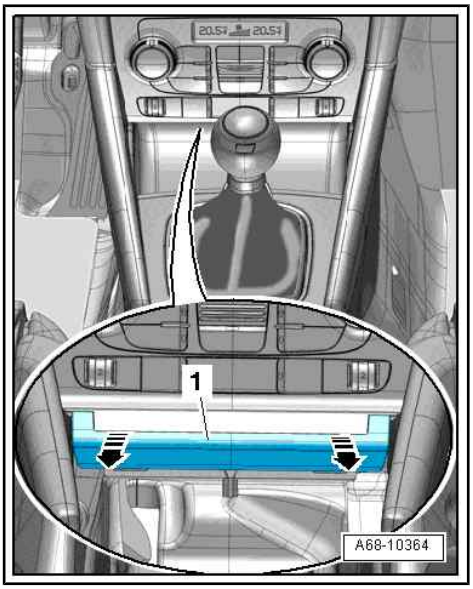
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.13 Removing and installing trim

Removing

– Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 87 .

– Unclip trim -1- -arrows- and detach.

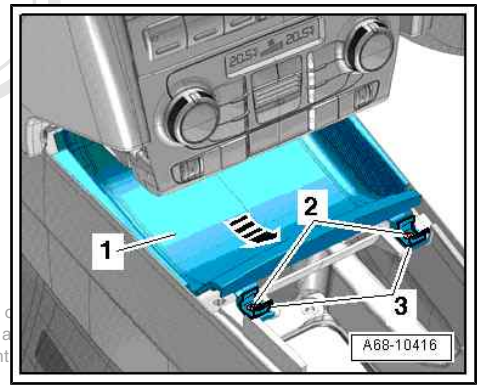


Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.14 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing



– Remove grab handles ⇒ page 19 .
– Remove bolts -2-.
– Detach clips -3-.
– Take out storage compartment -1- -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

– Make sure clips are fitted in correct position for clipping in cover for gear lever boot ⇒ page 17 .

Tightening torque ⇒ page 15

Copyright by AUDI AG. This document is protected by copyright in part or in whole. Any use of this document is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15 Exploded view of cover, trim and ashtray (front) - equipment version 'smoker'

1 - Mounting frame

2 - Frame
- ❑ For cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

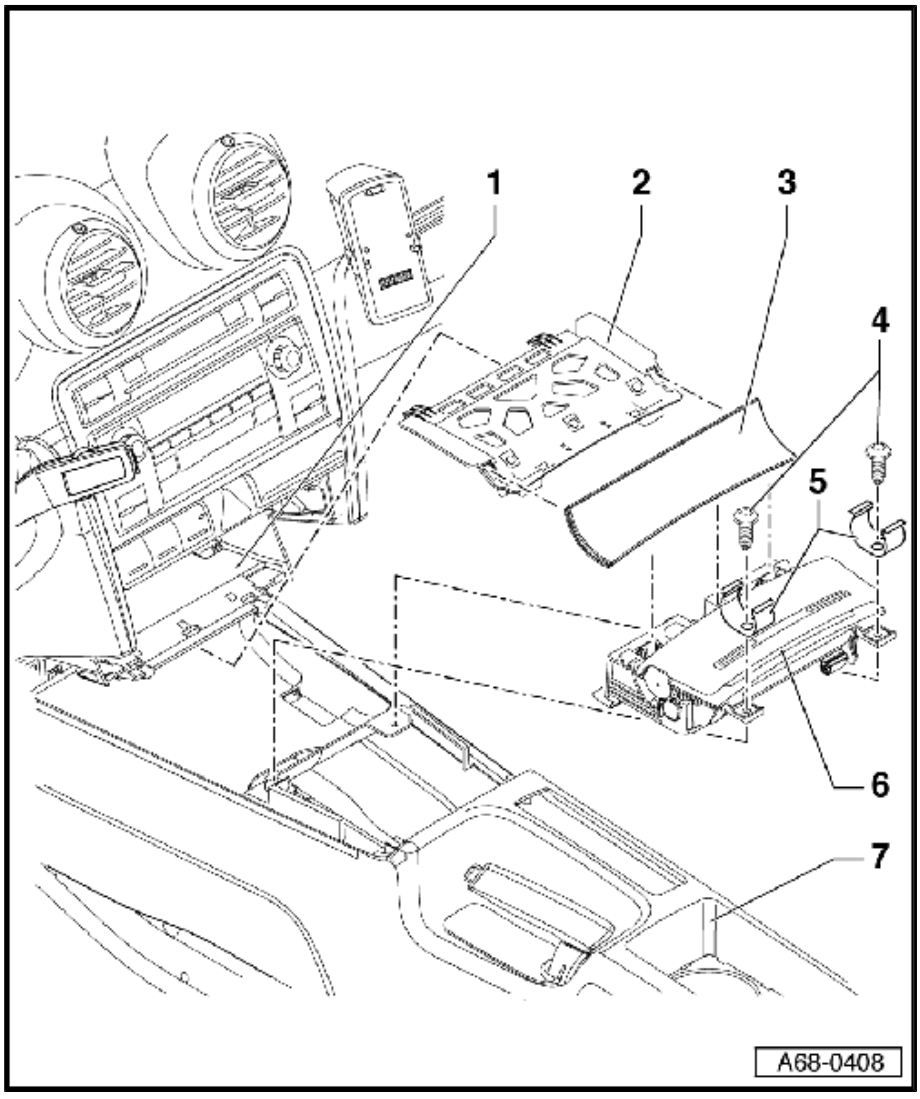
3 - Cover
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25

4 - Bolts
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

5 - Clips
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 17

6 - Ashtray (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 25
- ❑ Removing and installing trim for ashtray lid ⇒ page 26

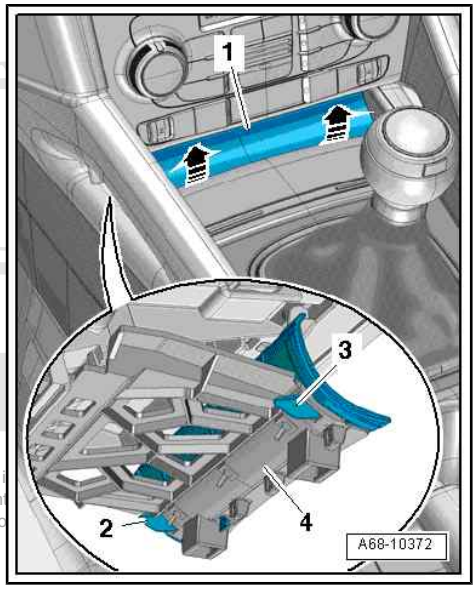
7 - Centre console



2.16 Removing and installing cover

Removing

– Lift cover -1- at rear edge -arrows- and disengage retaining tabs -2- and -3- from frame for cover -4-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage cover with retaining tabs in frame for cover and press downwards until it engages audibly.

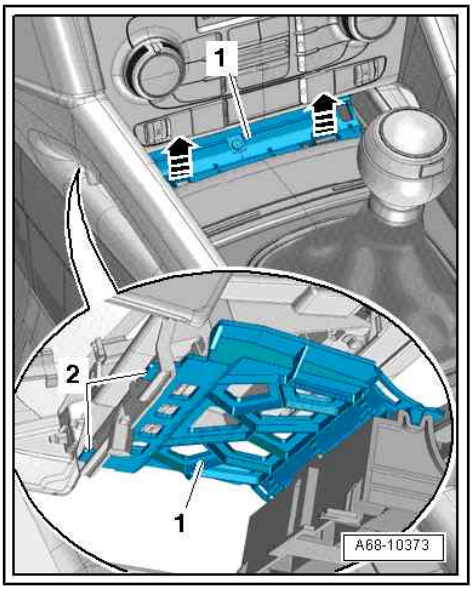
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarant
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

2.17 Removing and installing frame for cover

Removing

– Remove cover ⇒ page 25 .

– Pull frame for cover -1- upwards at rear edge -arrows- and pull guide pins -2- out of mounting frame.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.18 Removing and installing ashtray (front)

Removing

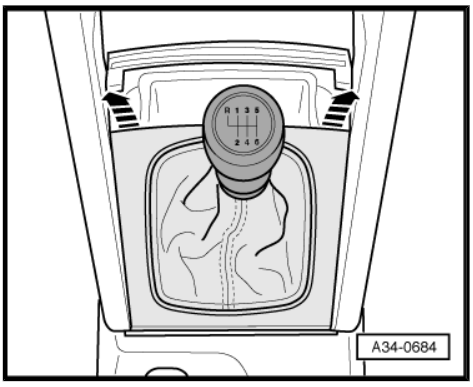
– Open ashtray.

– Remove cover ⇒ page 25 .

– Remove frame for cover ⇒ page 25 .

– Carefully prise cover with gear lever boot off centre console -arrows-.

– Fold cover with gear lever boot upwards over gear knob.



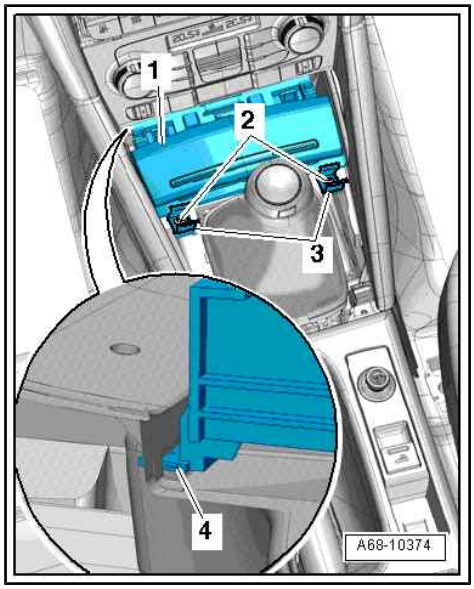
– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach clips -3-.
– Pull ashtray -1- upwards at rear edge and pull guide pin -4- out of centre console.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

– Make sure clips are fitted in correct position for clipping in cover for gear lever boot ⇒ page 17 .

Tightening torque ⇒ page 24



2.19 Removing and installing trim for ashtray lid

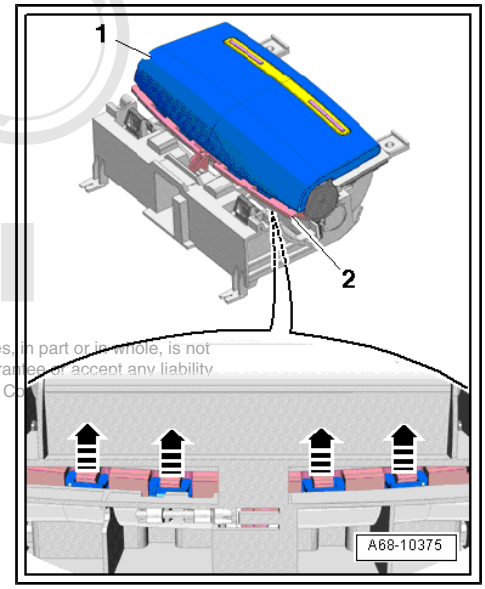
Removing

– Remove ashtray (front) ⇒ page 25 .
– Turn over ashtray and release retaining hooks on ashtray lid -2- from below -arrows-.
– Lift trim -1- for ashtray lid slightly and pull trim off ashtray lid towards rear.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on trim for lid of ashtray until it engages audibly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Co

2.20 Exploded view of storage net (centre console)

1 - Centre console

2 - Pop rivet

- ❑ 5x

3 - Trim

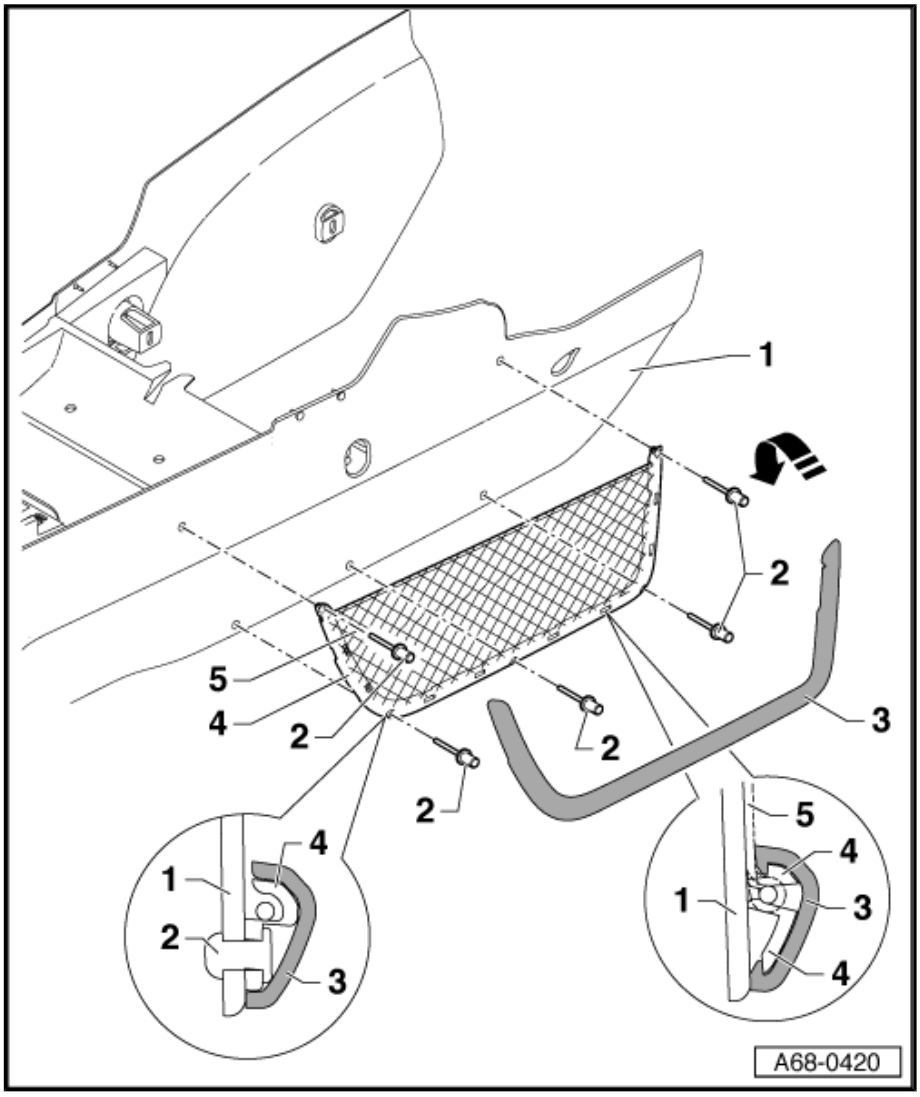
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 27

4 - Frame

- ❑ For storage net (centre console)

5 - Centre console storage net

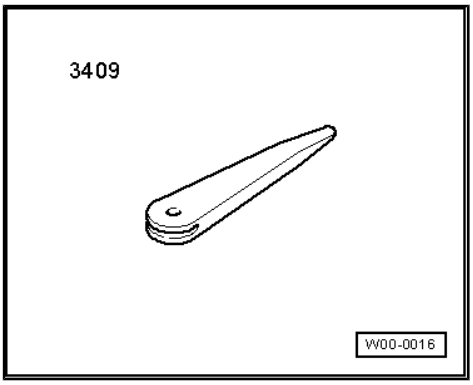
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 28



2.21 Removing and installing trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

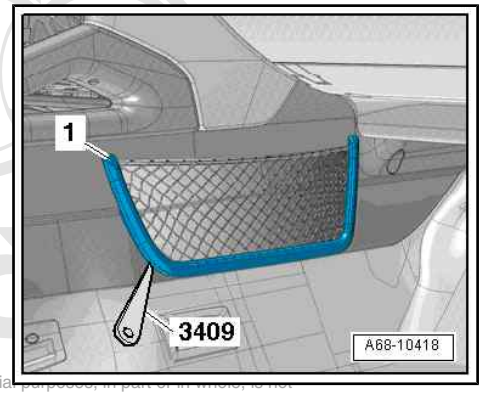
- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Starting at bottom, unclip trim -1- using removal wedge -3409- .



Installing

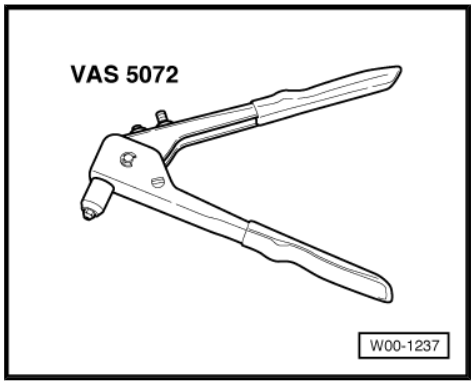
Install in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.22 Removing and installing storage net (centre console)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072-



- Drill
- Drill bit ∅ 3.2 mm
- Safety goggles

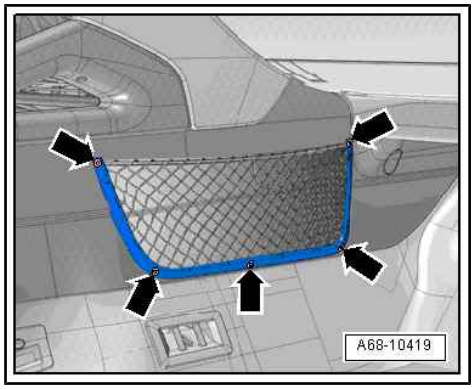
Removing

– Remove trim ⇒ page 27 .

WARNING

Risk of injury!

- *Wear safety goggles.*



– Carefully drill out pop rivets -arrows- using ∅ 3.2 mm bit.

– Detach frame with storage net (centre console).

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Rivet frame with storage net (centre console) to centre console using pop rivet pliers -VAS 5072- .

3 Trim for handbrake grip

3.1 Exploded view of trim for handbrake grip

1 - Handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

2 - Trim (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

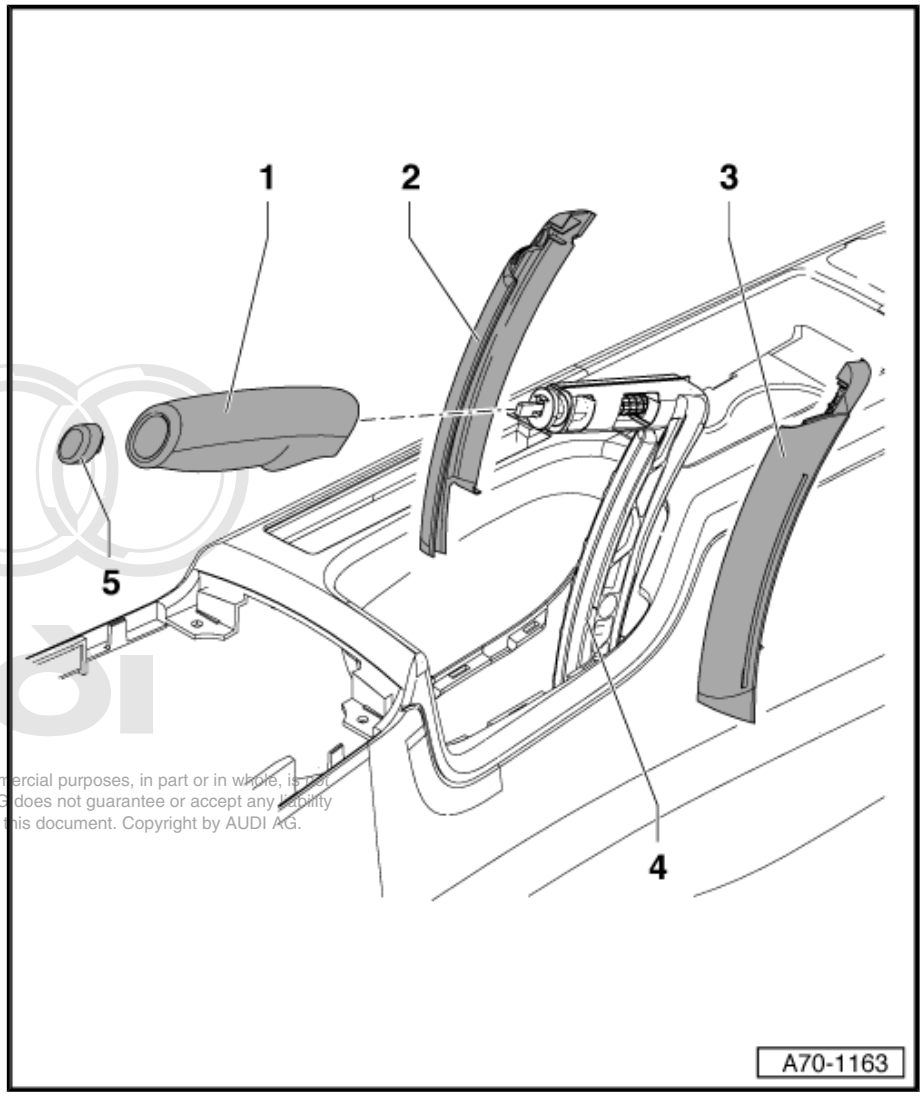
3 - Trim (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30

4 - Handbrake lever

5 - Pushbutton

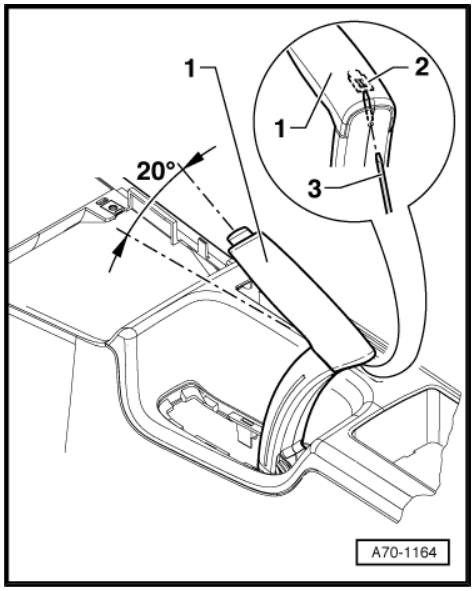
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 30



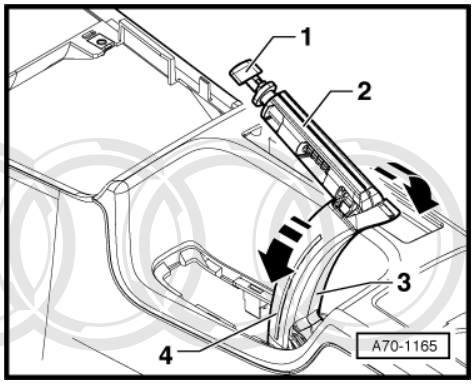
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing handbrake lever trim

Removing



– Fold back centre armrest.
– Pull handbrake up until handbrake lever is at an angle of -α- = 20°.
– Insert a narrow flat screwdriver -3- into hole at rear of handbrake lever trim and press lug -2- upwards.
– Pull handle -1- forwards off handbrake lever.



– Starting at top, pull trim (right-side) -3- and trim (left-side) -4- off handbrake lever in direction of -arrow-.
– Use flat screwdriver to prise pushbutton -1- off handbrake lever -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Fit components as follows:

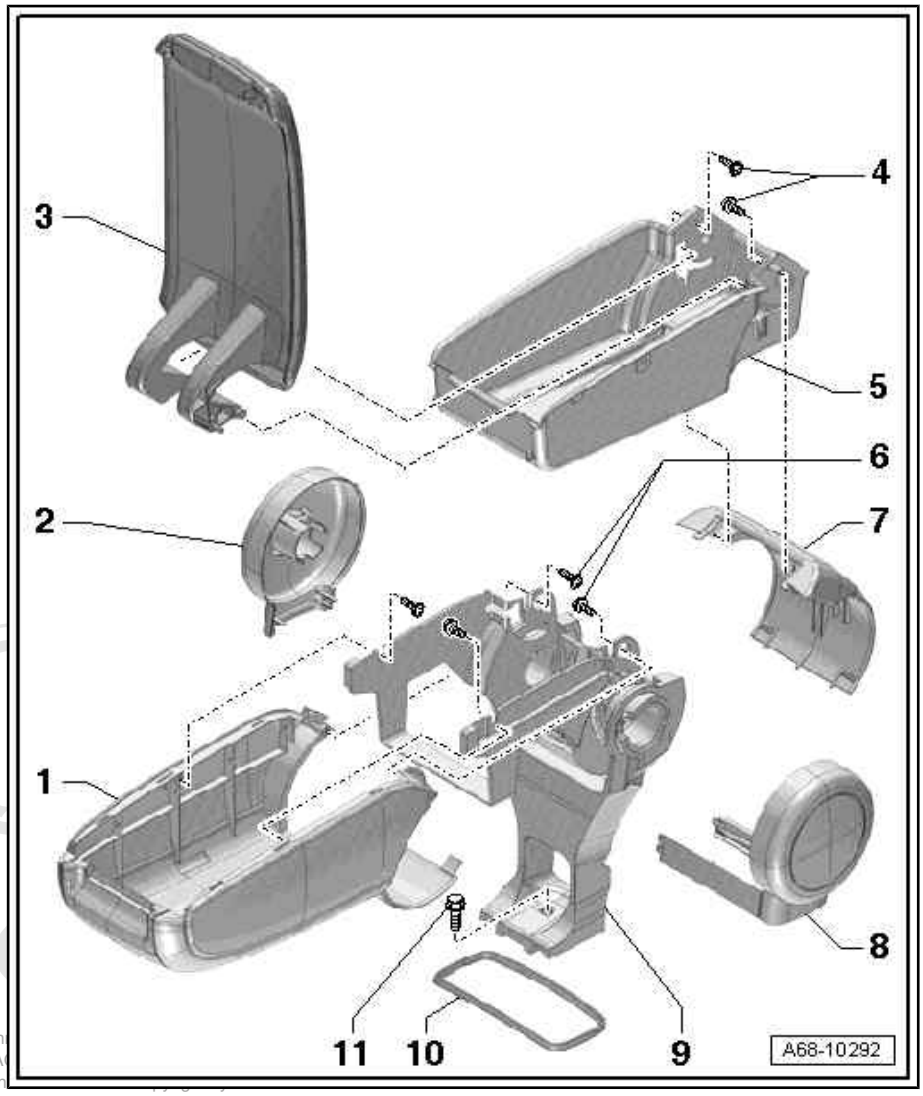
1. Fit trim (left and right).
2. Fit handle.
3. Fit pushbutton.

– Make sure that all components engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Centre armrest (front)

4.1 Exploded view of centre armrest (front)



1 - Trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 35

2 - Side cap (right-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33

3 - Padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled

4 - Bolts
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 1 Nm

5 - Storage compartment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 34

6 - Bolts
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 1.3 Nm

7 - Cover (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33

8 - Side cap (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33

9 - Support
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ "4.9 Removing and installing trim", page 35
- ❑ Cannot be dismantled

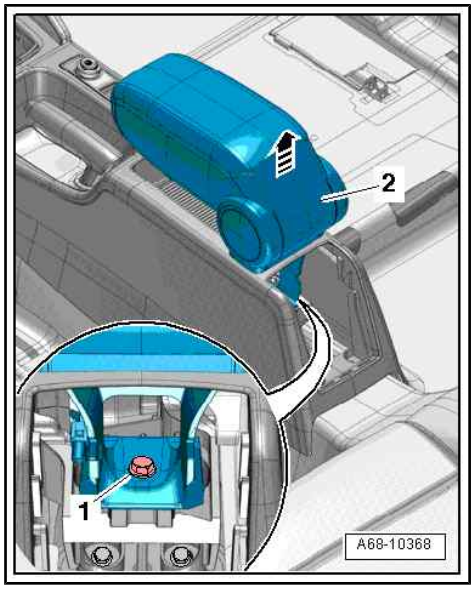
10 - Trim section
- ❑ Inserted in side cap
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 33

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 14 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to correctness and completeness of in

4.2 Removing and installing centre armrest (front)

Removing



- Equipment version with storage box: Remove storage box (rear) for centre console ⇒ page 18 .
- Equipment version with switch mounting: Remove switch mounting (rear) ⇒ page 18 .
- Equipment version with telephone bracket -R126- : Unplug electrical connector for telephone bracket.
- Remove bolt -1-.
- Lift centre armrest -2- off bracket -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

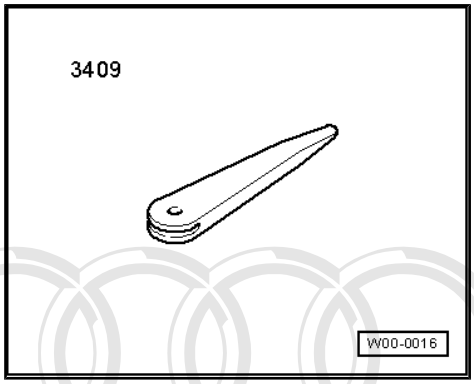
- Insert centre armrest correctly into mounting on bracket.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 31

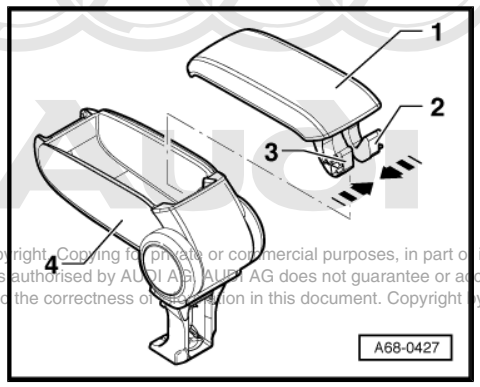
4.3 Removing and installing padding for centre armrest (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Removing



Note

Padding can be removed and installed with armrest installed.

- Open centre armrest.
- Compress pivot pins -2- and -3- for padding simultaneously -arrows- and disengage from mounting.
- Detach padding -1- from centre armrest -4-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure that pivot pins engage audibly in mounting for storage compartment.

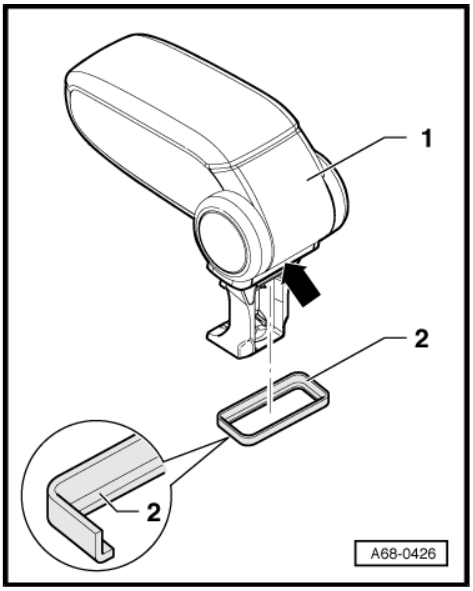
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.4 Removing and installing trim section

Removing

– Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 32 .

– Prise trim section -2- out of side cap -arrow- in centre armrest -1- with a small screwdriver.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure trim section is correctly positioned in side caps -arrow- in centre armrest.

4.5 Removing and installing side caps

Audi
cted by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

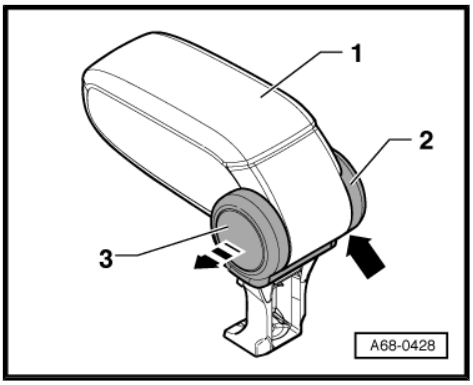
– Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 32 .

– Remove trim section ⇒ page 33 .

– Use a small flat screwdriver to carefully prise off side cap (right-side) -2-, starting at bottom -right arrow-.

– Detach side cap from centre armrest -1-.

– Pull side cap (left-side) -3- off centre armrest -left arrow-.



Installing

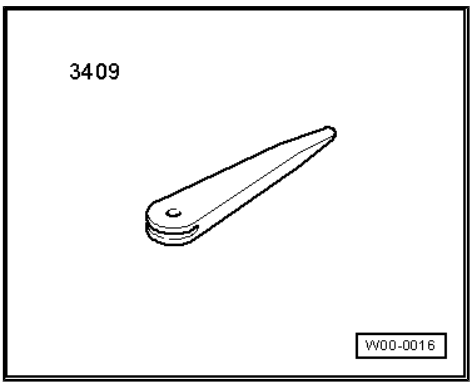
Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

– Make sure that all components engage audibly.

4.6 Removing and installing cover (rear)

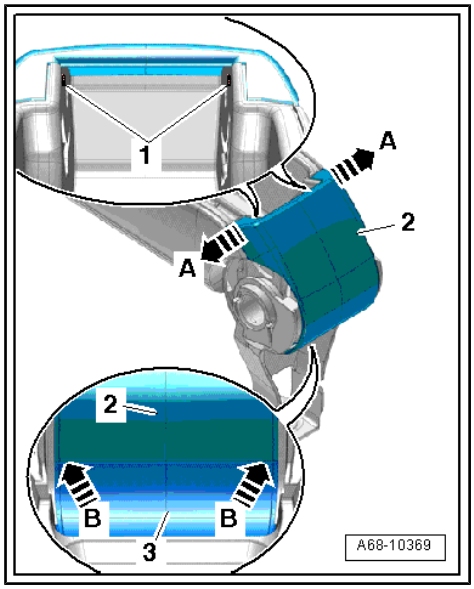
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

- Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 32 .
- Remove padding for centre armrest ⇒ page 32 .
- Remove side cap ⇒ page 33 .
- Remove bolts -1-.
- Unclip cover (rear) -2- from trim -3- -arrows B-.
- Disengage cover (rear) at support -arrows A- and detach.



Installing

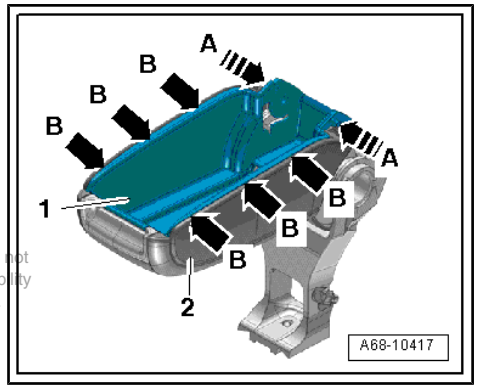
Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

- Make sure that all components engage audibly.

4.7 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removing

- Remove centre armrest (front) ⇒ page 32 .
- Remove padding for centre armrest ⇒ page 32 .
- Remove side caps ⇒ page 33 .
- Remove cover (rear) ⇒ page 33 .
- Simultaneously squeeze together sides of storage compartment -1- at mounting bushes -arrows A-.
- At the same time apply a small flat screwdriver to side of storage compartment and prise storage compartment out of trim -2- -arrows B-.
- Disengage storage compartment from support and pull out diagonally forwards.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

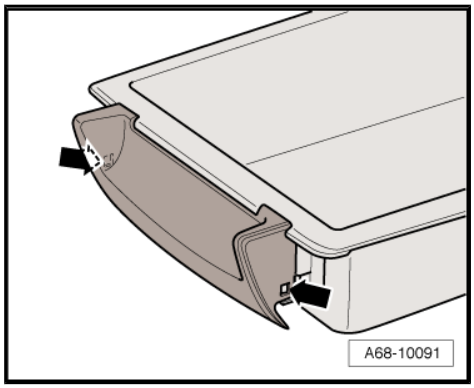
Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

- Make sure that all components engage audibly.

4.8 Removing and installing handle for centre armrest (front)

Removing

- Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 34 .
- Detach handle for centre armrest (front) from storage compartment by pressing retaining tabs -arrows-.



Installing

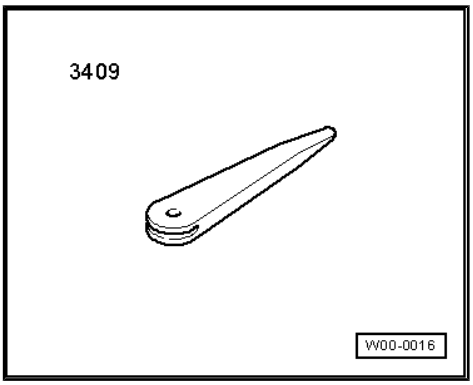
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Make sure handle engages completely on storage compartment.

4.9 Removing and installing trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-

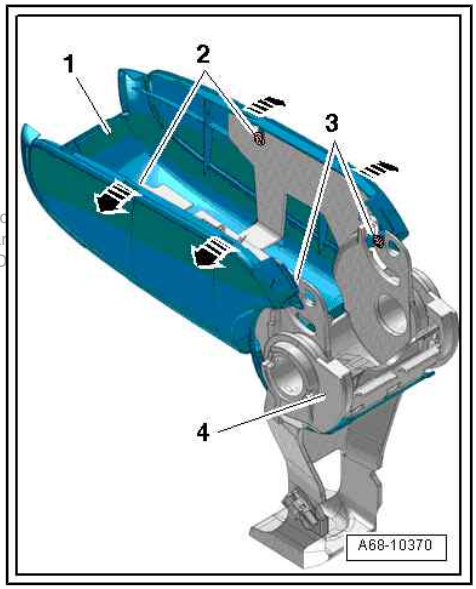


Removing

– Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 34 .

– Remove bolts -2- and -3-.

– Disengage side trim -1- from support for centre armrest -4- -arrows- using removal wedge -3409- and remove side trim.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

– Make sure that all components engage audibly.

5 Interior mirror

5.1 Exploded view of interior mirror

1 - Interior mirror

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 37

2 - Retaining spring

3 - Rain and light sensor - G397-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 64

4 - Trim cover (top)

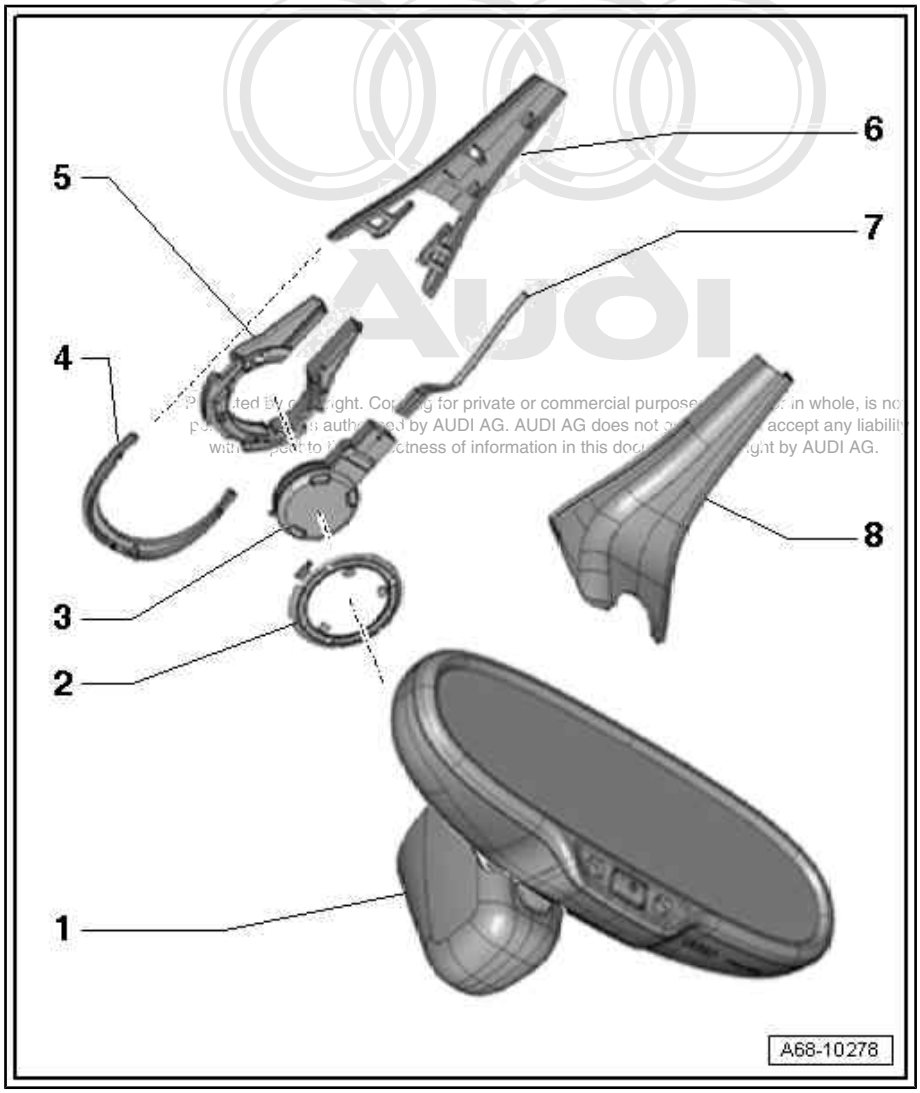
5 - Retaining plate

- ❑ Bonded to windscreen

6 - Trim cover (top)

7 - Electrical wiring

8 - Trim cover (bottom)



Audi
...ted by ...ght. Co...g for private or commercial purpose... in whole, is no...
...authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not a... accept any liabilit...
with ... to ...ctness of information in this doc... ...ght by AUDI AG.

5.2 Removing and installing manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

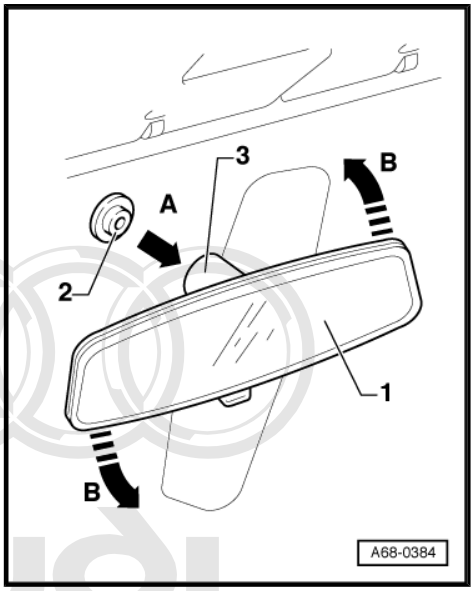
Removing

– Turn mirror -1- 60° ... 90° -arrows B- so that the retaining spring is disengaged.

– Detach mirror from retaining plate -2- -arrow A-.

Note

Never separate mirror -1- from base -3-.



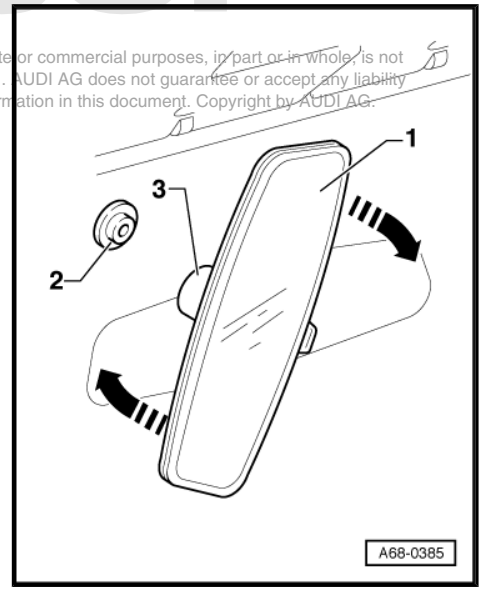
Installing

– Place mirror -1- on retaining plate -2- in such a way that it is 60° ... 90° turned out of its correct installation position.

– Twist mirror with base in direction of -arrow- so that it locks in position.

Note

Never separate mirror -1- from base -3-.



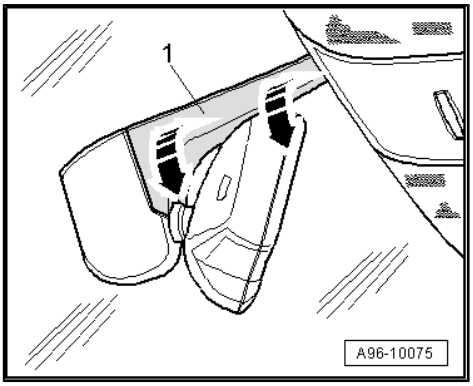
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Removing and installing automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

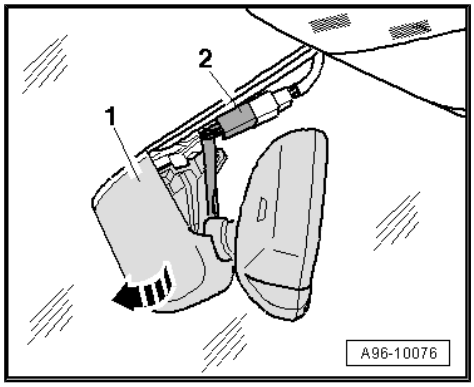
When removing and installing the mirror observe the safety regulations ⇒ page 38 and the general notes ⇒ page 38 .

Removing

– Prise off cover -1- at bottom of mirror base -arrows-.



– Take electrical connector out of its retainer.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Turn interior mirror at mirror base -1- as far as it will go in direction of -arrow-.
– Detach interior mirror from retaining plate.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position interior mirror at 30° angle to final position.
– Then turn interior mirror clockwise as far as it will go.

5.4 Safety regulations for interior mirror

WARNING

- *The glass used for the interior mirror consists of several layers and includes electrolyte. Beware of liquid electrolyte escaping from a broken mirror.*
- *Liquid electrolyte can cause irritation to skin, eyes and respiratory organs.*
- *Should liquid electrolyte make contact with your skin or eyes rinse it off immediately with lots of water. If the irritation does not go away visit a doctor without delay.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. © Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

If liquid electrolyte escapes from the mirror glass it will damage all plastic surfaces with which it comes into contact. Make sure you clean away any leaked electrolyte immediately using clean water and a sponge.

5.5 General notes on interior mirror

There are different types of interior mirrors with different functions:

- Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror
- Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7-
- Interior mirror with digital compass
- Interior mirror with rain/light sensor
- Interior mirror with rain and light sensor -G397-
- Interior mirror with humidity sender -G355-

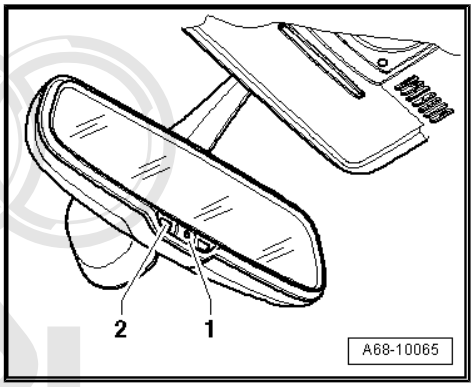
5.6 Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off

Switching automatic anti-dazzle function on and off:

– Press button -1- briefly (up to 3 seconds) to switch automatic anti-dazzle function on or off.

Automatic anti-dazzle function “On”: Indicator lamp -2- lights up.

Automatic anti-dazzle function “Off”: Indicator lamp -2- goes out.



- The automatic anti-dazzle function is activated every time the ignition is switched on.
- If you deactivate the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror this will also deactivate the anti-dazzle function for the exterior mirrors.
- When in anti-dazzle mode, the mirror will become lighter as soon as the interior light is switched on or reverse gear is engaged.
- Please note that the automatic anti-dazzle function for the interior mirror can only function correctly if the rear window blind is retracted.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

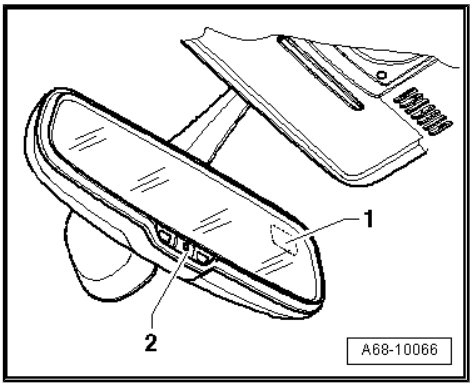
5.7 Switching compass display on and off

Switching compass display on and off:

– Press button -2- for 3 to 6 seconds. The compass display will be switched “on” or “off”.

Compass display -1- “on” - direction is indicated.

Compass display -1- “off” - direction is not indicated.

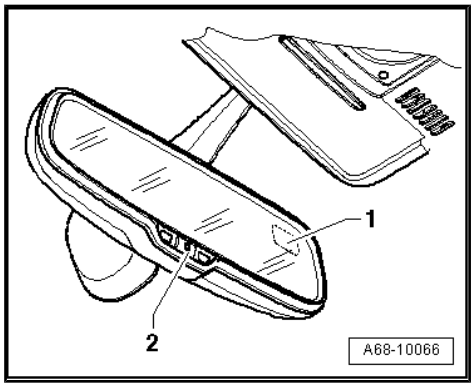


5.8 Setting magnetic deflection zone

It is necessary to set the magnetic deflection zone if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.
- You should set a different magnetic deflection zone if you have reached a distance more than two zones away from the preset reference zone after travelling long distances.

Setting magnetic deflection zone:



– Press and hold button -2- for 6 to 9 seconds until compass display shows “Z” and a number for the magnetic deflection zone.
– Press button -2- repeatedly until the number of the desired magnetic deflection zone appears.
– Refer to the maps to select the applicable deflection zone:

- Europe ⇒ page 41
- North America ⇒ page 42
- South America ⇒ page 43
- Asia ⇒ page 44
- Africa ⇒ page 45
- Australia ⇒ page 46

After a few seconds the compass display will switch from the magnetic deflection zone to the current direction/point of the compass.

– Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 39 after setting the magnetic deflection zone.

5.9 Calibrating digital compass

It is necessary to calibrate the digital compass if:

- The directions the digital compass shows are inaccurate,
- The compass display shows a “C” instead of a point of the compass, or if the display remains blank.
- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.

In exceptional circumstances, the digital compass may also have to be calibrated, for example if:

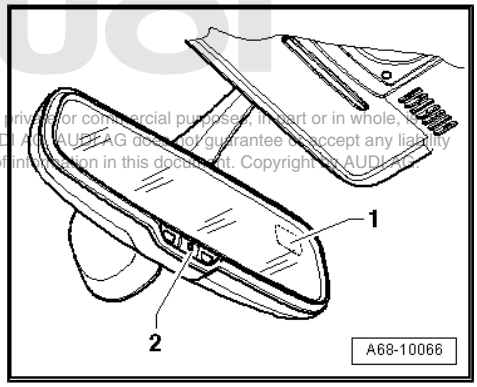
- The vehicle battery is reconnected after being disconnected for a long period,
- A new audio system or component of an audio system has been installed.

Calibrating digital compass:

– Switch on ignition.

Compass display -1- should show “C”.

– If display does not show “C”, press and hold button -2- for 9 to 12 seconds until letter “C” appears in compass display -1-.
– Drive the vehicle in a circle two or three times at a speed of approx. 5 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is indicated on the compass display -1-.
– Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 39 after completing the calibration process.

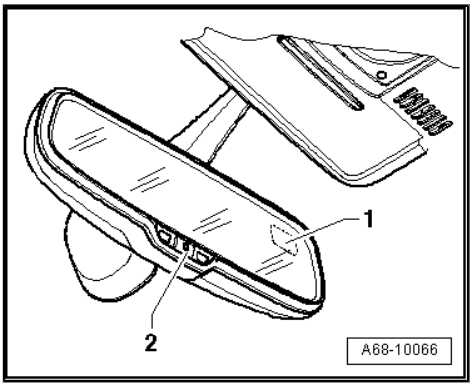


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.10 Adjusting automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- for right-hand drive or left-hand drive vehicles

It is necessary to adjust the mirror to right-hand or left-hand drive if:

- A new automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror -Y7- is installed.



Note

- *On recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors -Y7- , the sensor for the magnetic deflection zone is no longer fitted in the mirror base, but in the mirror housing. Only these mirrors can and MUST be adjusted to right-hand or left-hand drive.*
- *Recently manufactured automatic anti-dazzle interior mirrors -Y7- can be identified by pressing and holding button -2- for longer than 12 seconds; "L" or "A" will appear on the display of these mirrors.*

– Press and hold button -2- for 12 to 15 seconds until display shows "L" (for left-hand drive vehicles) or "A" (for right-hand drive vehicles).

– Press button -2- again briefly to change the setting for right-hand or left-hand drive.

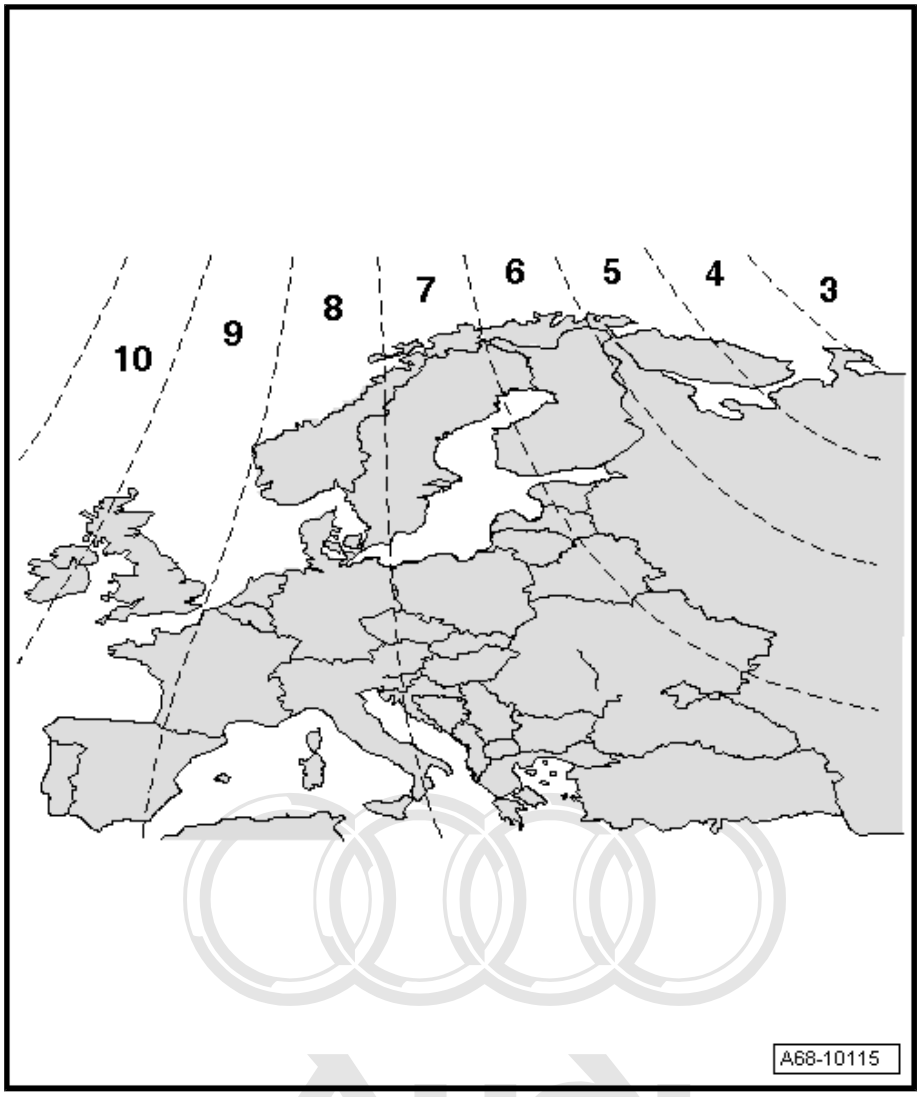
– After a short while, the display will automatically show "C" (for calibration). The digital compass must now be calibrated ⇒ page 40 .

– Make sure you switch the anti-dazzle function of the interior mirror back on ⇒ page 39 after adjusting the mirror for right-hand or left-hand drive.

5.11 Selecting the applicable deflection zone from the map

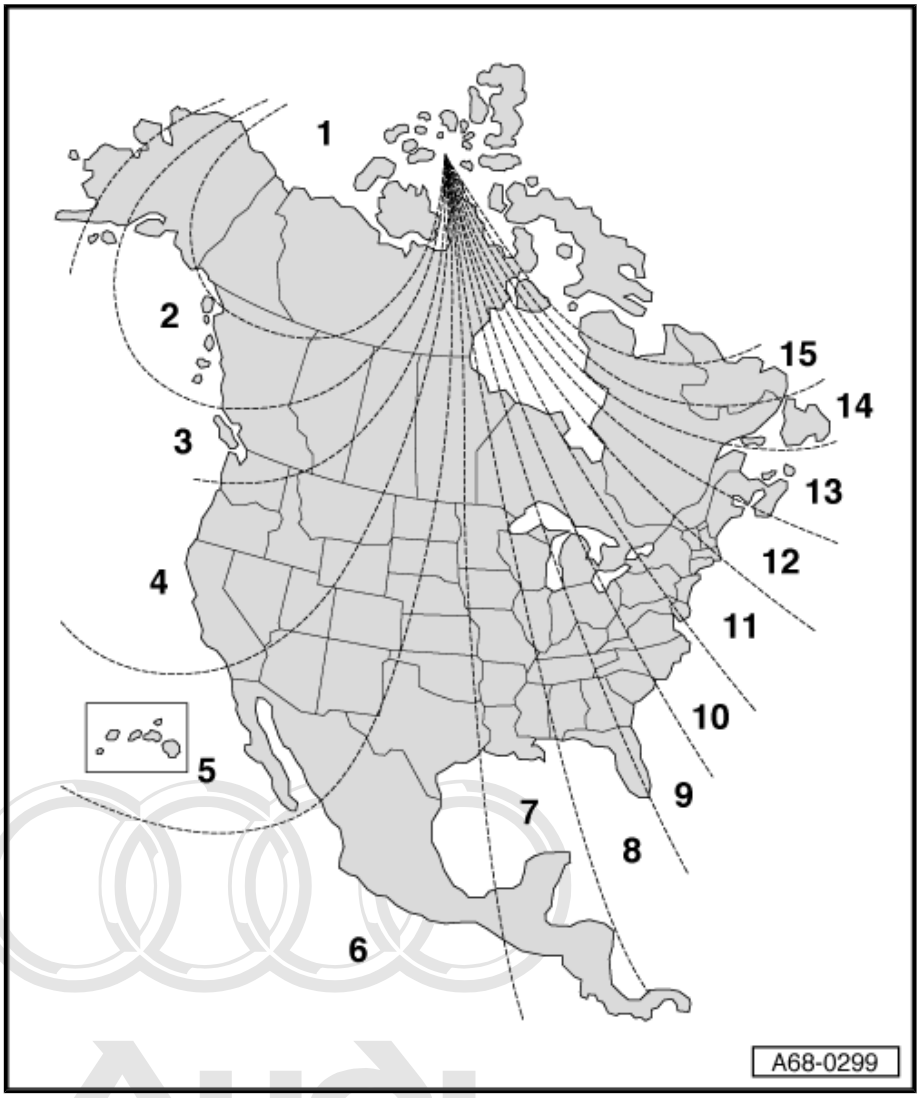
Europe

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



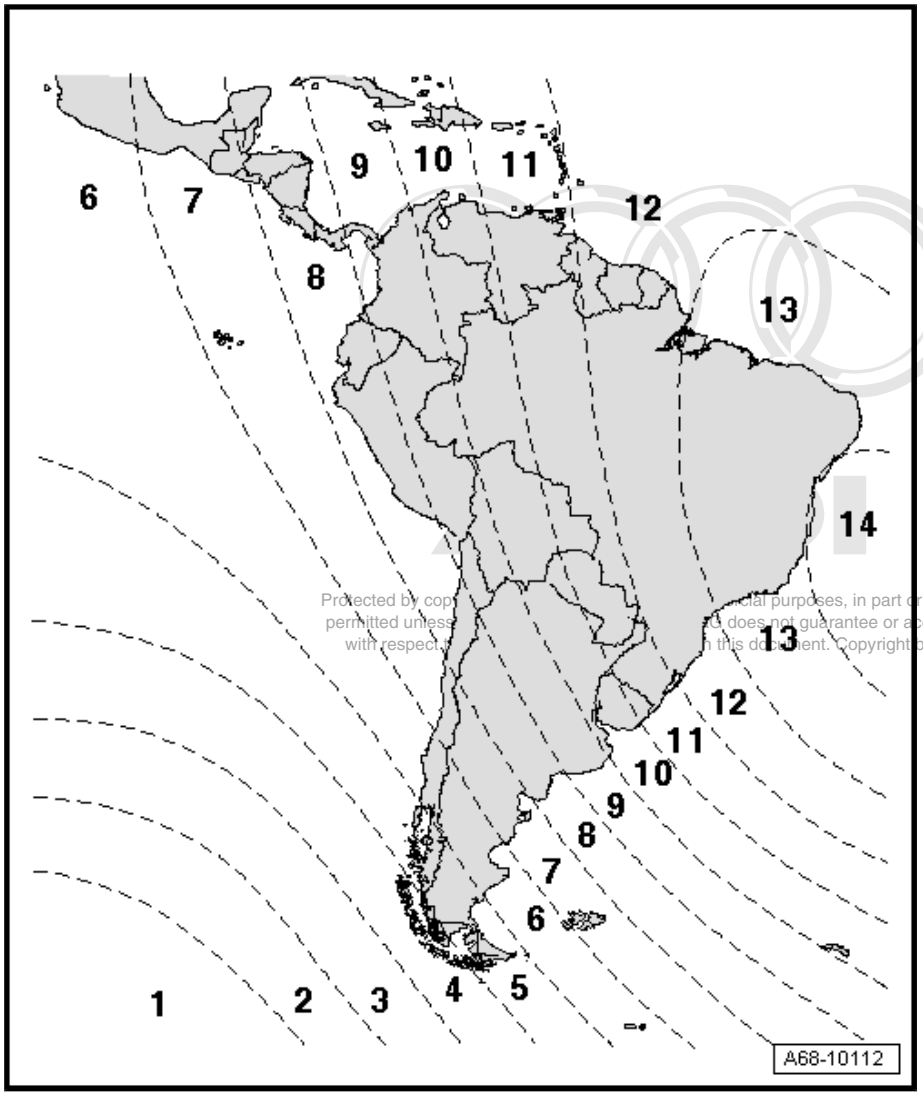
North America

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



South America

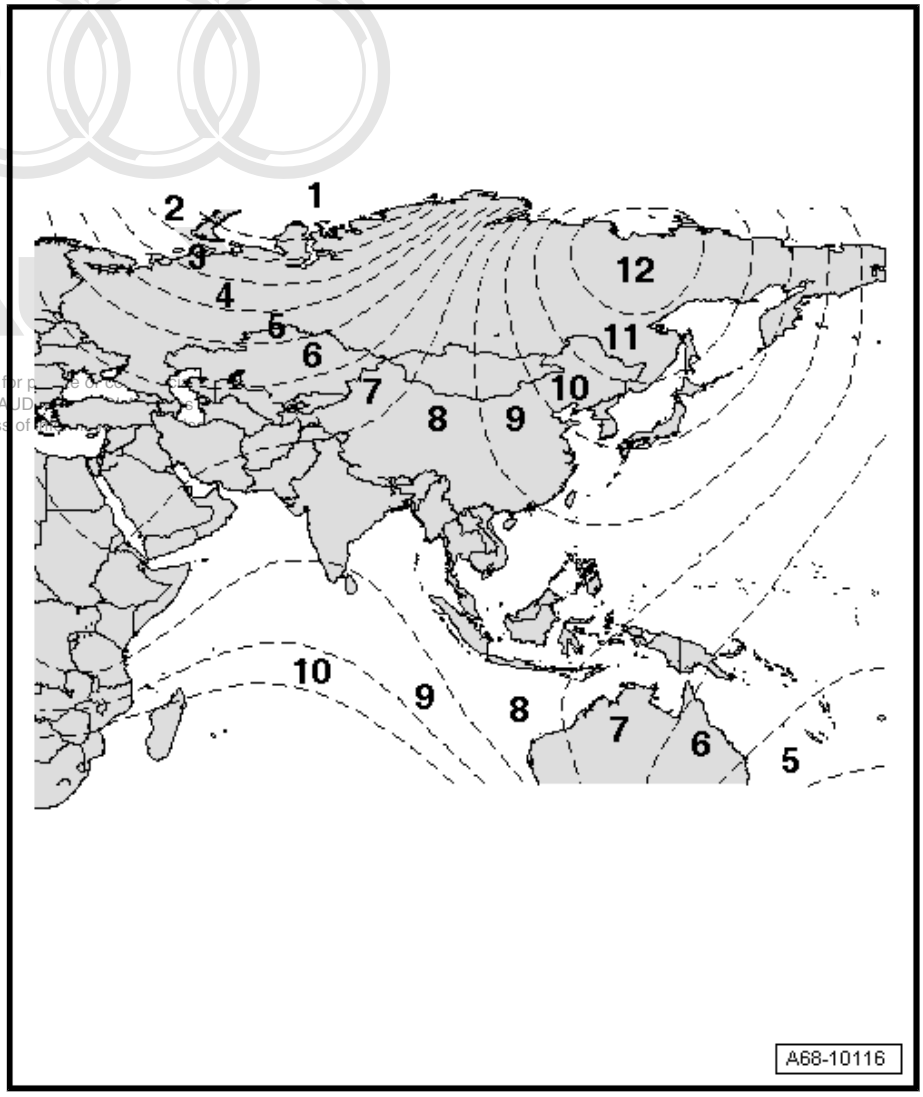
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



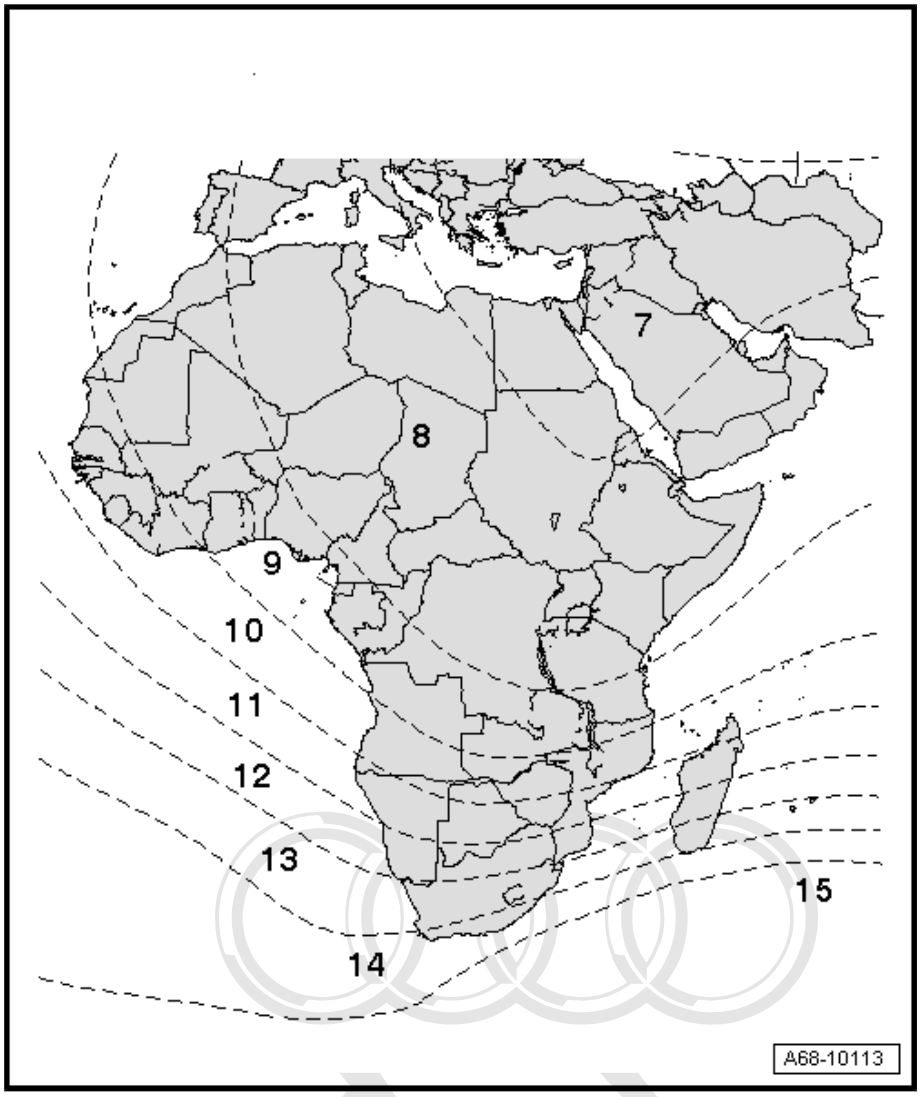
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the accuracy of the information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Asia

Protected by copyright. Copying for p
permitted unless authorised by AUD
with respect to the correctness of

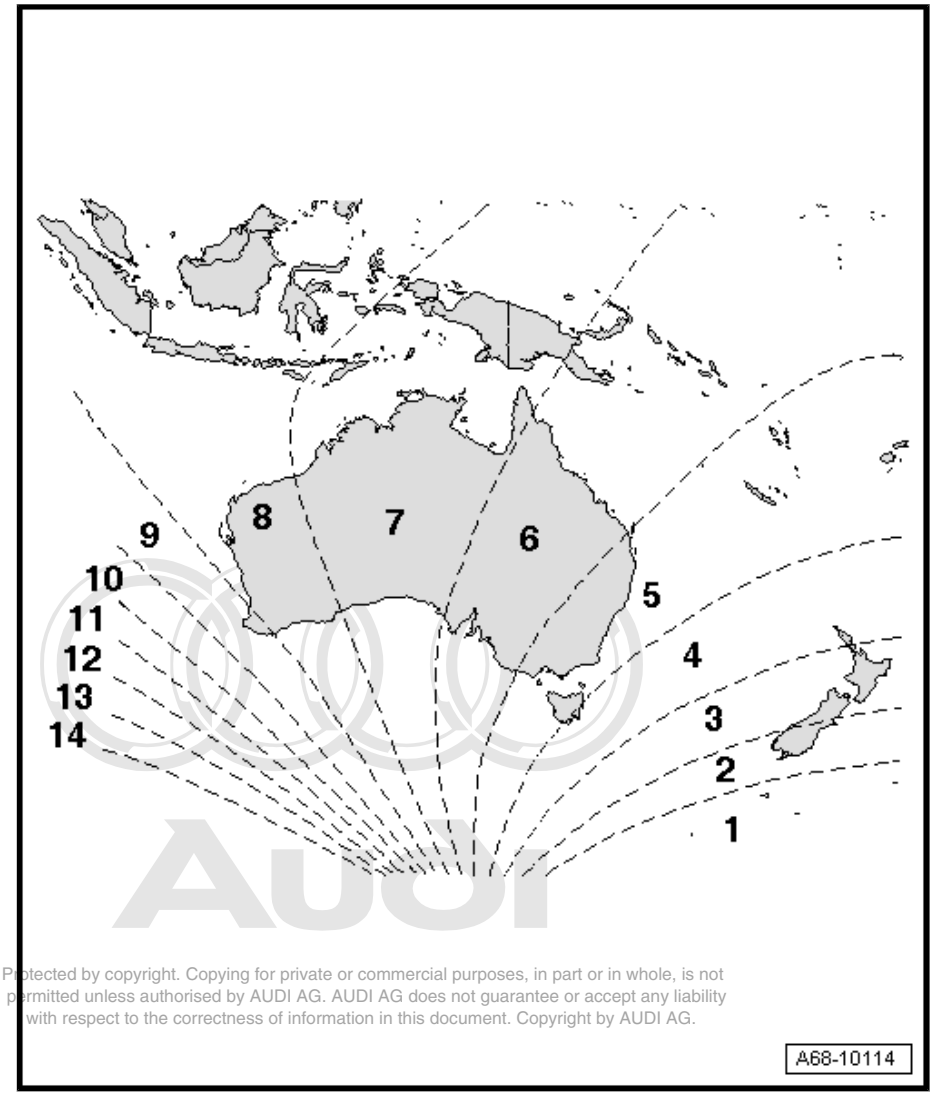


Africa



Australia

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.12 Checking operation of automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

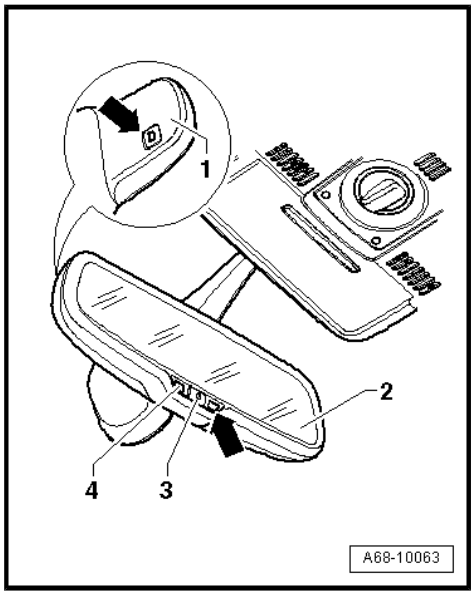
The test can only be carried out if the following conditions are met:

- Interior mirror is fitted.
- Ignition is switched on.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Automatic anti-dazzle function is switched on, indicator lamp must be lit.

Test sequence

– Cover or mask photosensor -arrow- on housing side -1-.
– Aim beam of a torch (or similar) at photosensor -arrow- on mirror side -2-.

Interior mirror should darken quickly.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

69 – Passenger protection

1 Safety regulations and test methods for pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system

1.1 General safety regulations

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Pyrotechnic components are:

- Airbag units
- Belt tensioners
- Belt force limiters (depending on equipment version)
- Battery isolation elements (depending on equipment version)

General notes

- Testing, removing, installing and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- There are no specified intervals for renewing airbag units.
- Never perform tests with a test lamp, voltmeter or ohmmeter.
- Only check pyrotechnic components when they are installed in the vehicle and always use suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information systems which have been approved by the manufacturer.
- When working on pyrotechnic components and on the airbag control unit -J234- always disconnect the battery earth strap with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Subsequently cover negative terminal.
- After disconnecting the battery, you must wait for 10 seconds.
- The battery must be connected with the ignition SWITCHED ON. Make sure there is no one in the vehicle. Exception: Vehicles on which the battery is in the passenger compartment; in this case, please keep away from the operating range of the seat belts and airbags.
- Observe measures following battery connection ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
- Before handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity, for example by briefly touching grounded metal components such as the door striker plate.
- Always wash hands after handling pyrotechnic components of the restraint system which have been triggered.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be opened or repaired; always use new parts (risk of injury).
- Pyrotechnic components which have been dropped onto a hard surface or which show signs of damage must not be used.

- Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately after removing them from their packaging.
- If the work is interrupted, the pyrotechnic component should again be placed in its packaging.
- The pyrotechnic component must never be left unattended.
- When connecting pyrotechnic components of the restraint system, there should be no-one in the vehicle other than the person performing the work.
- Pyrotechnic components must never be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar.
- Always renew airbag unit if fabric is contaminated by oil, grease, paint, solvent or similar.
- Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures higher than 100 °C even for brief periods of time.

Special notes for driver's and front passenger's airbags

- Following removal, driver's and front passenger's airbag units must be stored with the cushioned side facing upwards.

Always keep to the following sequence when renewing airbag units:

1 - Remove old airbag unit and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

2 - Take new airbag unit out of transportation container and set it down with cushioned side facing upwards.

3 - Immediately place old airbag unit in packaging.

4 - Install new airbag unit in vehicle.

Special notes for belt tensioners

- When removing and installing belt tensioners, proceed very carefully. If belt tensioner units are not handled correctly, there is an increased danger and injury risk.
- Belt tensioner units which are mechanically damaged (dents, fractures) must always be renewed.
- Never point the open end of a belt tensioner at another person.
- When connecting the belt tensioner unit, all mechanical components (including those of the three-point seat belt) must be secured properly. Should there not be enough space to connect the belt tensioner unit, the belt must be retracted completely before connecting the tensioner unit. In this case, there is no increased safety risk if you observe the safety precautions, i.e. most importantly the mechanic must disconnect the battery and discharge static electricity before connecting the belt tensioner unit.
- Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered WITHOUT the belt force limiter being triggered. These components must be handled in the same way as non-ignited components.

1.2 Storing, transporting and disposing of airbag units, belt tensioner units and battery isolation units (pyrotechnic components)

- Storage must be in accordance with the statutory regulations of the countries in question.

Reproduction by copying or copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Transportation must be in accordance with the national and international guidelines which regulate the details of the packaging, marking, labelling and accompanying documents.
- Non-ignited pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in their original packaging and in accordance with national regulations. Please contact your importer if you require further information.
- Only pyrotechnic components that have been triggered completely may be disposed of with commercial refuse.

WARNING

- *This does not apply to belt tensioners which are Wankel-powered. These must be treated in the same manner as non-ignited pyrotechnic components (for example air-bags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery isolators).*
- *Reason: The workshop does not have the means to check whether the Wankel-type belt tensioners have ignited fully (in all ignition stages).*

1.3 Additional safety regulations for side airbags

- We recommend using genuine seat covers (same as original equipment).
- It is NOT permissible to use seat covers or protective covers which have not been approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags.
- The backrest foam fill must not be cut away in the area of the side airbag.
- When installing, make sure seam for side airbag is straight.
- All upholstery clips (metal and plastic clips) must be renewed.
- We recommend using only genuine upholstery clips (same as original equipment).
- When installing, all new upholstery clips must be fitted in the same positions as the original ones.
- For safety reasons, the cover should always be renewed if it is damaged (tears, burn marks, etc.) in the area of the side airbag, as otherwise the side airbag will not inflate properly.
- Never repair backrest cover in area of side airbag (due to special thread and precisely defined seam).
- Always renew backrest padding after side airbags have been triggered.
- All damaged components must be renewed after an accident. The original airbag unit can still be used if no signs of damage are found.
- If side airbag units are renewed, remove sticker with airbag number from new side airbag unit and stick it over old sticker on seat pan.
- Never pierce upholstery needles or any other sharp objects through the seat cover fabric in the vicinity of the airbag and sensor mat.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.4 Additional safety regulations for curtain airbags

- Before carrying out any installation work always visually inspect trim for damage.
- Trim repairs (A-pillar (top), B-pillar, C-pillar and D-pillar trim) are not permitted.
- When installing, make sure that trim panels are fitted securely.
- When carrying out repairs behind the curtain airbag always remove the complete unit.
- When removing and installing curtain airbag units, proceed very carefully to prevent possible damage.
- After removal, store old curtain airbag units in their transport containers or on a clean, level surface (on a blanket).
- After performing body repairs in area of curtain airbag, check body for welding spatter, deformation and abrasion by comparing with opposite side.
- It is important that you hold the gas generator at all times when handling it (during transportation, removing and installing etc.) until it has been bolted on.
- Never twist, turn, knot, throw, pull, hang, pinch, press or clamp curtain airbag unit.
- It might be possible to fold it, as long as you are careful not to damage it (and in particular its protective cover).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.5 Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front)

The crash sensors for side airbags are very sensitive to pressure changes and must therefore be handled with great care. Please note the following:

- Always observe correct installation position: ONLY install in correct fitting location in door.
- Protect crash sensor from jolts and knocks. Crash sensors which have been dropped must NOT be used. Remove crash sensor to perform body repairs at door.
- The crash sensor is adapted to the air volume inside the door: If the door is deformed, causing the air volume in the door to be reduced, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.
- Make sure the crash sensor is not badly soiled: Do not use compressed air near the crash sensor. Protect the crash sensor against filings or drilling swarf (e.g. on service installation of door loudspeakers). Do not use cavity sealant or oil sprays near crash sensor.
- Protect against heat and cold: Protect crash sensor against heat, e.g. when painting or carrying out other body work. Crash sensors should never be exposed to temperatures of less than –40 °C (e.g. in non-air-conditioned aircraft cargo holds).
- The crash sensor must be protected against moisture, both during storage and when installing.

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor may not function correctly. Please note the following:

- Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.

- The door trim clips provide a seal for the system. If necessary, renew door trim clips.

1.6 Additional safety regulations for working on seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag - country-specific version

- Following any repair work on the front passenger's seat during which the seat and/or backrest cover are/is “disengaged”, the basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must always be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.
- The mat for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- The mat must be renewed if it is damaged (service kit).
- The pressure hose for the seat occupied sensor must not be bent or kinked.
- Make sure that the components of the seat occupied recognition (service kit) do not fall onto hard surfaces, do not come into contact with grease and cannot be damaged by sharp objects.
- Make sure that the mat, the fabric layer and all covers are not creased when they are installed.
- Make sure that the seat padding and seat cover are in the correct installation position.
- Renew all staples/clips and make sure they are correctly positioned on the seat.
- The system's basic setting is only possible at temperatures between 0°C and + 40°C if airbag units 8.R and 9.* are installed, and only between 5°C and 35°C if airbag unit 10.* is installed.
- Make sure there are no objects lying on the seat before or while you are performing the basic setting.
- The use of loose seat covers - such as cushions or similar - impairs the function of the seat occupied recognition system and thus the function of the airbag system.

1.7 Procedure for dealing with seat occupied sensor controlling deactivation of front passenger airbag following an accident - country-specific version

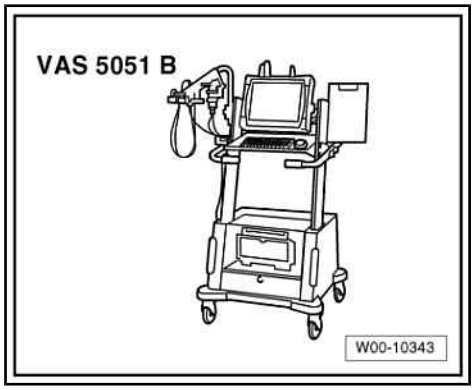
- The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must be performed whenever the airbag and/or front passenger's belt tensioner has/have been triggered ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.
- If the seat rail and/or seat pan have to be renewed after a crash due to deformation, the seat occupied sensor must be renewed using the “seat occupied recognition service kit”. The basic setting for the seat occupied recognition control unit must then be performed ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.8 Renewing pyrotechnic, electrical and mechanical components of the restraint system following an accident

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Use a suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system such as the vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .



Note

- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 8.* "not 8.R" for up to two side airbag and/or belt tensioner triggering operations.*
- *The airbag control unit can be used with airbag generation 9.*, 10.* and 8.R for up to two triggering operations of the side airbags, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag and/or belt tensioners.*
- *After the third activation the fault display will show "Control unit defective".*

Airbag control unit must be renewed:

- If driver's/front passenger's airbag has been triggered (however not with airbag generation 9.*, 10.* and 8.R) ⇒ page 54
- After three side airbag, driver's airbag, front passenger's airbag or belt tensioner triggering operations
- If housing is damaged
- In the event of a tunnel deformation within 200 mm radius of control unit

Always renew the following:

- All triggered airbag units
- Battery isolation igniter -N253-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Dash panel
- Supports for front passenger's airbag unit which have become deformed (must not be bent back into shape)
- All front airbag sensors at front end
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If driver's airbag has been triggered, also renew:

- Return ring with slip ring
- All front airbag sensors at front end

- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

If side airbag(s) has/have been triggered, also renew:

- Pressure sensors on the side on which the airbag was triggered
- Lateral acceleration sensors on the side on which airbag was triggered
- Seat cover
- Padding
- Remaining lateral acceleration sensors (if anchorage points around sensor have become deformed)

Additionally:

- All automatic belt retractors with belt tensioners which have been triggered
- All automatic belt retractors with belt force limiters (depending on equipment version) which have been triggered

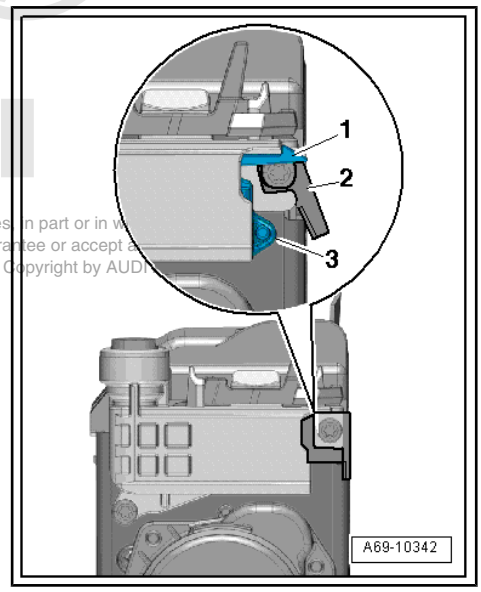
– If you suspect that belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) has/have been triggered, connect a suitable vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system such as the vehicle diagnostic, testing and information system -VAS 5051B- .

– In “15 - Airbag” of the “Guided Fault Finding” function, check whether there is an entry recording a crash in the airbag control unit.

– Check whether at the same time the fault “Resistance too high” is entered for belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s). Belt tensioner(s) and/or belt force limiter(s) which have been triggered must fulfil both conditions. “Condition: The airbag control unit has not yet been renewed”.

Note

- *The fault “Resistance too high” can also be entered if there is an open circuit. In this case, there should usually be no crash entry.*
- *Depending on the accident, the belt tensioner might have been triggered without the belt force limiter being triggered. In this case, observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components* ⇒ page 50 .
- *When removed, triggered belt force limiters can be identified by the following characteristics:*
- *The pin -1- and the lug -3- have come out of the housing of the belt force limiter on the automatic belt retractor.*
- *The tab -2- is no longer in a vertical position, but is facing outwards at an angle.*
- *Also observe the notes on checking seat belts* ⇒ page 56 .



– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.

– In addition, the following must also be renewed if necessary (visual check): all damaged components

– After renewing airbag units or the control unit, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the appropriate Sales Centre or to the importer for registration.

Copyright by AUDI

1.9 Checking airbag mounting components following an accident

It is essential to always renew all damaged mounting components - it is not permissible to “reshape” or rework damaged components.

The following components must be checked after an airbag has been triggered.

If front passenger's airbag has been triggered:

- Central tube for dash panel: It must be possible to install front passenger's airbag supports and front passenger's airbag unit so that they are free of stress. Otherwise central tube should also be renewed.
- Check glove box for damage. Renew glove box if it is damaged.

tected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

If driver's airbag has been triggered:

- Steering wheel: Remove steering wheel and place it on a level surface (resting on rim). The full area of the rim must lie flat. If it does not, the steering wheel has to be renewed.
- Check steering wheel for smoke marks. Renew steering wheel if such marks are found.

1.10 Accident in which airbag was not triggered

- Pyrotechnic components do not have to be renewed if airbag warning lamp -K75- does not indicate a fault. The seat belts must be checked separately.

1.11 Checking seat belts

WARNING

A systematic check of the seat belt system must be carried out after every accident. If any damage is identified (see section on points to check), the customer must be informed that one or more of the seat belts have to be renewed.

Points to check:

- Check belt webbing ⇒ page 57 .
- Check automatic belt retractor (locking action) ⇒ page 57 .
- Visual inspection of belt buckle ⇒ page 58 .
- Functional check of belt buckle ⇒ page 58 .
- Check guide fittings and latch plate ⇒ page 58 .
- Check securing components and anchorage points ⇒ page 58 .
- Check child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt) - country-specific version ⇒ page 59 .

Caution

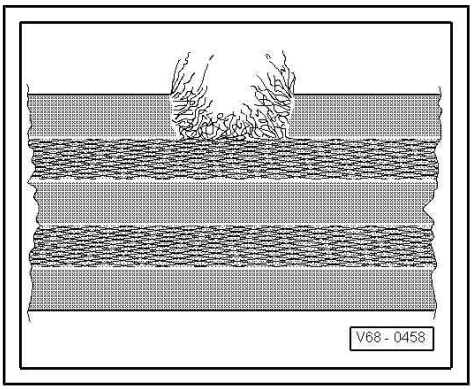
If customers refuse to have damaged seat belts renewed, this must be noted accordingly in the Service Schedule.

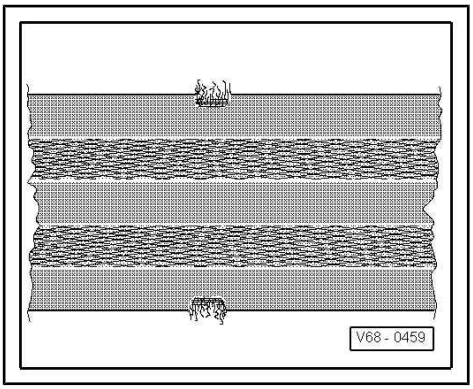
1.12 Checking belt webbing

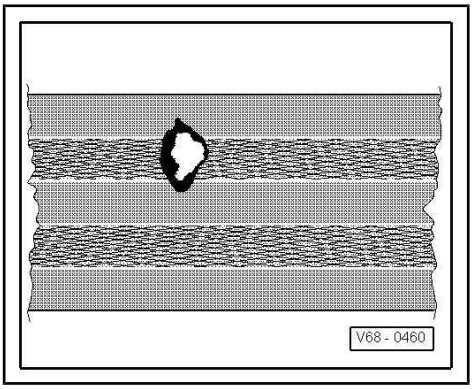
– Pull belt as far as it will go out of belt retractor or lap belt adjuster.

– Inspect belt for dirt and, if necessary, wash it with mild soap solution ⇒ Owner's Manual .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.







- If the following type of damage (shown in illustrations 1 and 2) is identified on a vehicle following an accident you must renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.
- If damage as shown in illustrations 1, 2 or 3 is identified on a vehicle which has not been involved in an accident, it is sufficient to only renew the damaged belt.
- 1– Belt is cut, torn or chafed
- 2– Frayed fabric at edge of belt
- 3– Burn marks caused by cigarettes or similar

1.13 Checking automatic belt retractor (locking action)

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

The first locking function is triggered by pulling the belt quickly out of the belt retractor.

Checking

– Pull belt out of belt retractor in a sharp quick movement.

- No locking effect - renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- If you encounter difficulties when pulling belt out or retracting it, first check whether position of belt retractor has changed.

The second locking function is triggered if vehicle motion changes (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Checking

> **WARNING**
>
> *For safety reasons, test drive must be performed on a road with no traffic to avoid putting other road users at risk.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Fasten seat belt.

– Accelerate vehicle to 20 km/h and then press foot brake firmly (emergency braking).

• If braking does not activate seat belt locking mechanism, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.14 Visual inspection of belt buckle

– Inspect belt buckle for cracks and fracturing.

• If you identify any damage, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

1.15 Functional check of belt buckle

Checking belt buckle

– Push latch plate into belt buckle until you hear it engage. Pull belt firmly to check whether locking mechanism has engaged.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate does not engage properly in belt buckle in one or more of the tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

Checking release function:

– Release seat belt by pressing button on belt buckle. Latch plate must be automatically ejected from belt buckle when belt is slack.

• Carry out test at least 5 times. If latch plate is not ejected in one or more of these tests, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.

> **WARNING**
>
> *Under no circumstances apply lubricant to belt buckle to eliminate noises or to stop buttons sticking.*

1.16 Checking guide fittings and latch plate

When a seat belt has been under strain in an accident the plastic-covered guides will show fine parallel scoring. (By contrast, a guide fitting which is worn because of frequent use will have a smoothly worn surface, but no scoring).

– Inspect for deformation, fracturing and cracks in the plastic.

• If you identify any scoring and/or damage, renew the complete seat belt including the belt buckle.

1.17 Checking securing components and anchorage points

♦ Latch plate deformed (strained)

- ♦ No height adjuster operation
- ♦ Anchorage points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) deformed or thread damaged
- • If you identify any damage on these parts, renew complete seat belt including belt buckle.
- • If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
- • Renew anchorage points.

Note

In the event of damage not resulting from an accident (for example wear) only the corresponding damaged part must be renewed.

1.18 Checking child seat restraint function of seat belt for additional child seats (not for driver's seat belt; country-specific version)

To check this function fit the complete belt assembly (including side panel trim).

Activating locking function of retractor mechanism:

copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ♦ Pull out belt as far as it will go.

Correct function:

- ♦ The belt should retract with an audible clicking sound.
- ♦ Once you stop the belt retracting any further, it should no longer be possible to pull the belt out.

Deactivating

- ♦ Allow the belt to retract as far as the last 100 mm (approx.).
- ♦ The locking function of the retractor mechanism should be deactivated at the latest by the time the belt has been retracted as far as the last 100 mm. The belt then functions as "normal" again.
- • If child seat restraint function of seat belt is not operating properly, seat belt must be renewed.

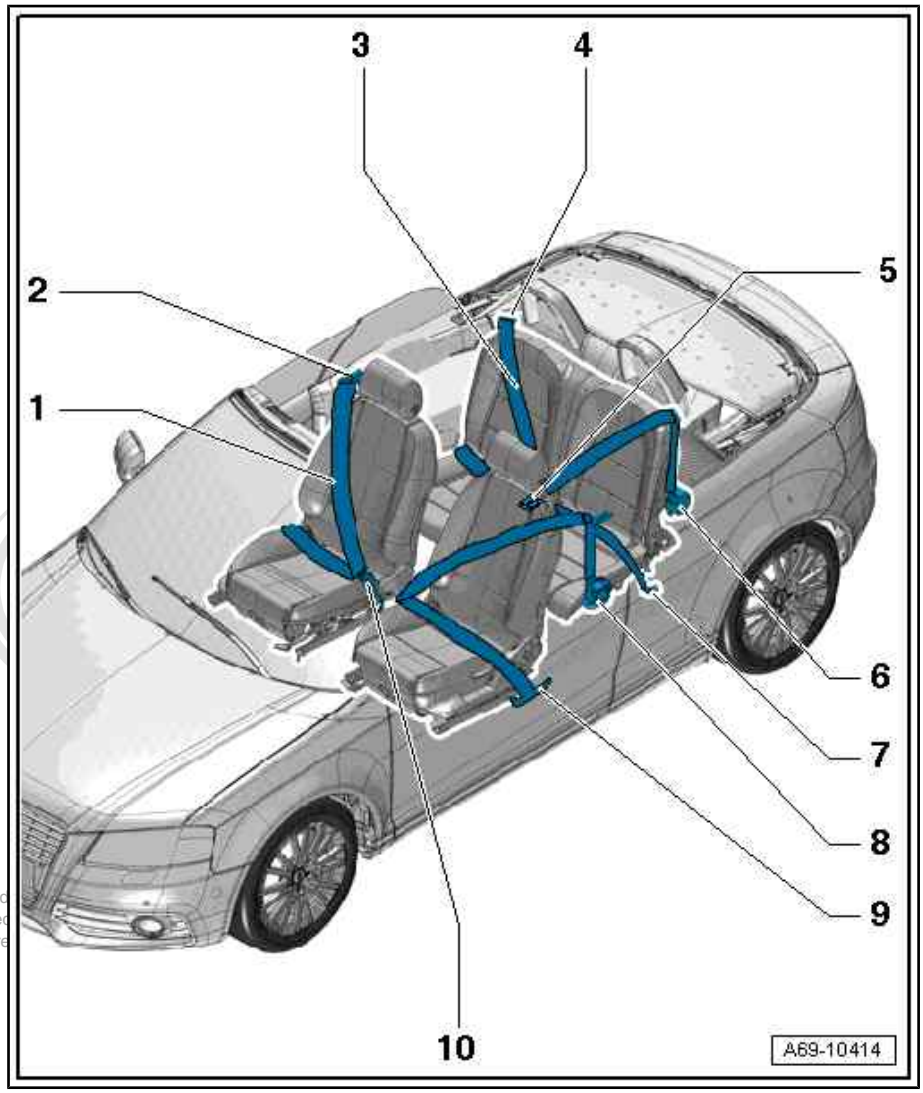
1.19 Checking child seat anchors following an accident (ISOFIX, Top Tether)

Points to check:

- ♦ After an accident, child seat anchors must be checked for damage and deformation.
- ♦ Child seat anchors welded or bolted to body or seats/backrests must not be repaired or straightened.
- ♦ Child seat anchors bolted to the body or seats/backrests must be renewed if they are damaged or deformed.
- ♦ Bolts for securing child seat anchors must be renewed if retainer is damaged.

2 Seat belts

2.1 Overview of seat belts and anchorage points



1 - Three-point seat belt (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 61
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 62

2 - Belt guide fitting (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 62

3 - Three-point seat belt (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 67
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

4 - Belt guide fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ “2.7 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (rear)”, page 67

5 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 69
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

6 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 67
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

7 - Belt end fitting (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 67
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69

8 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ For three-point seat belt (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 61
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 62

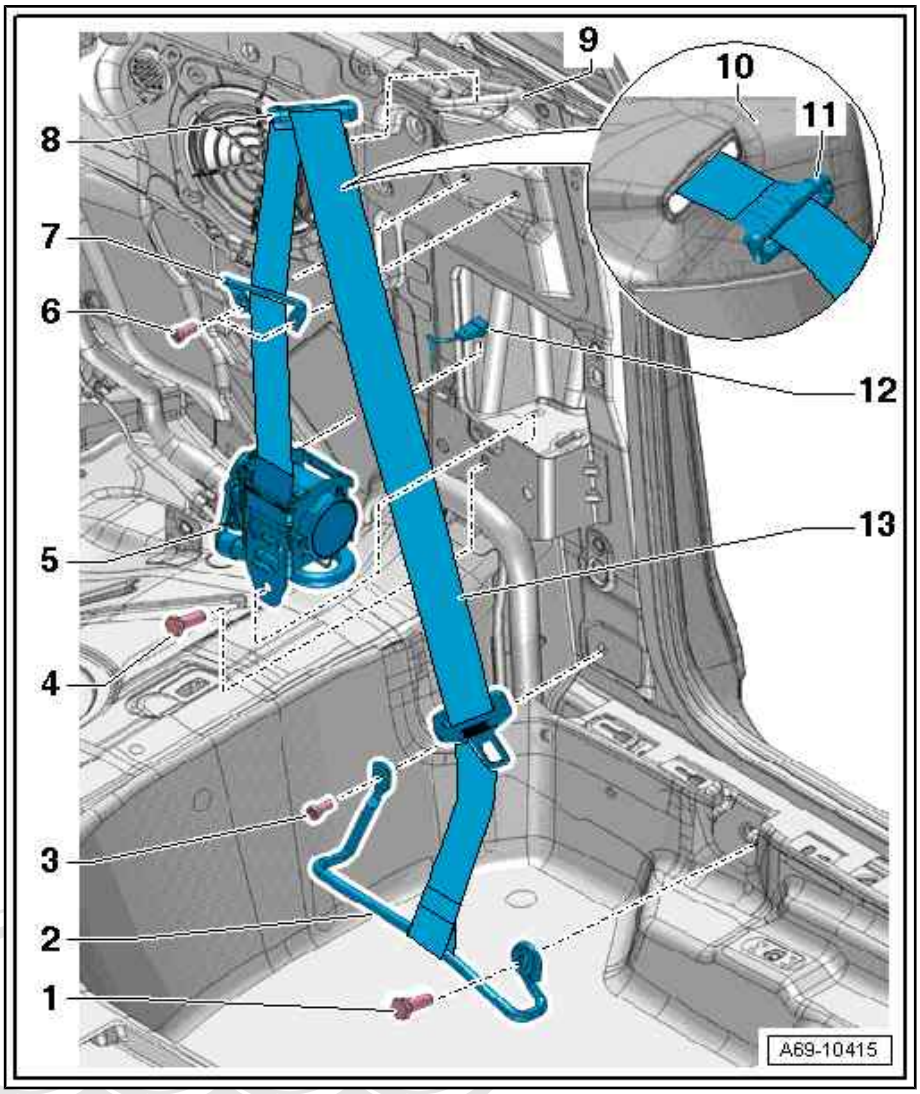
9 - Guide rail for belt strap (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ “2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front)”, page 61
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 64

10 - Belt buckle (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 64
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 65

2.2 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (front)



1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 55 Nm

2 - Guide rail

- ❑ For belt strap (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 64

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 21 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

5 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ With driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N153-
- ❑ With front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N154-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 62

6 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

7 - Belt guide

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 62

8 - Cover

- ❑ For belt guide fitting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)”, page 62

9 - Belt guide fitting

10 - Side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

11 - Belt exit point trim (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

12 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For driver seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N153-
- ❑ For front passenger seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -N154-
- ❑ Unplugging and plugging in ⇒ page 62

13 - Belt

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.3 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (front)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 50 .*

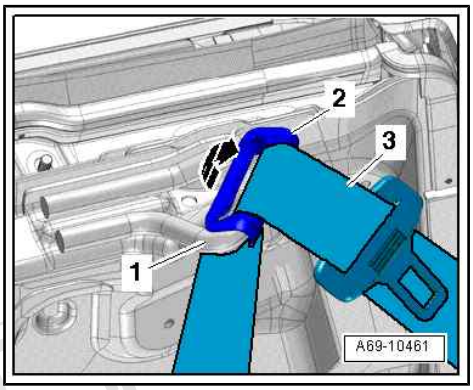
– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove belt end fitting (front) ⇒ page 64 .

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 148 .

– Unclip cover -2- for belt guide fitting -arrow-.

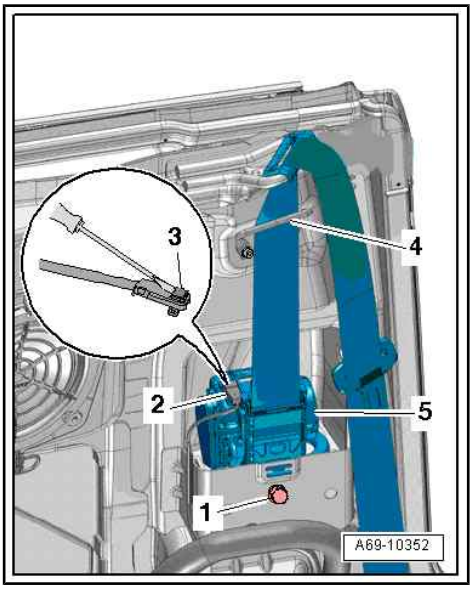
– Guide cover and belt -3- with latch plate through belt guide fitting -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Release connector locking element -3- with a small screwdriver and unplug electrical connector for belt tensioner igniter -2-.
– Remove belt guide -4-.
– Remove bolt -1- and take automatic belt retractor -5- out of mounting.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

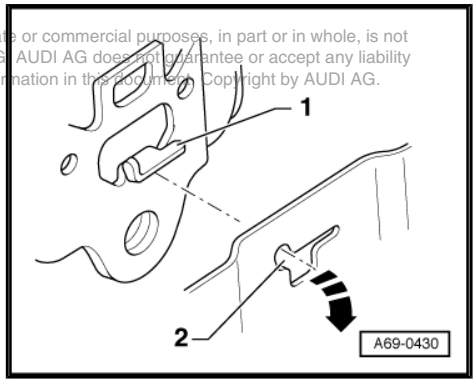
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Insert automatic belt retractor with locating element -1- in mounting -2- -arrow- and tighten bolt.
– Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
– After installing three-point seat belt (front passenger side), check child seat restraint function (country-specific version) of belt ⇒ page 59 .

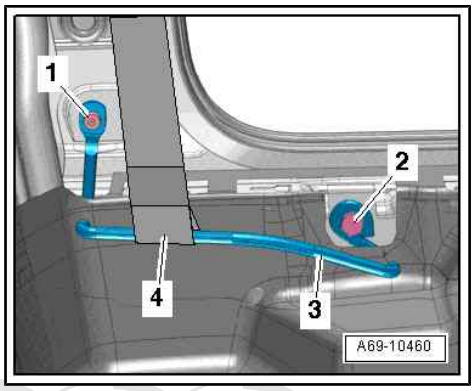
Tightening torque ⇒ page 61

2.4 Removing and installing guide rail for belt strap (front)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing



- Move front seat forwards as far as it will go.
- Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 145 .
- Remove bolts -1- and -2-.
- Thread guide rail -3- through openings in floor covering.
- Pull out belt strap -4- and detach guide rail.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- If guide rail -3- has been removed following an accident, renew bolts -1- and -2-.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 61

2.5 Exploded view of belt buckle (front)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Belt buckle (front)

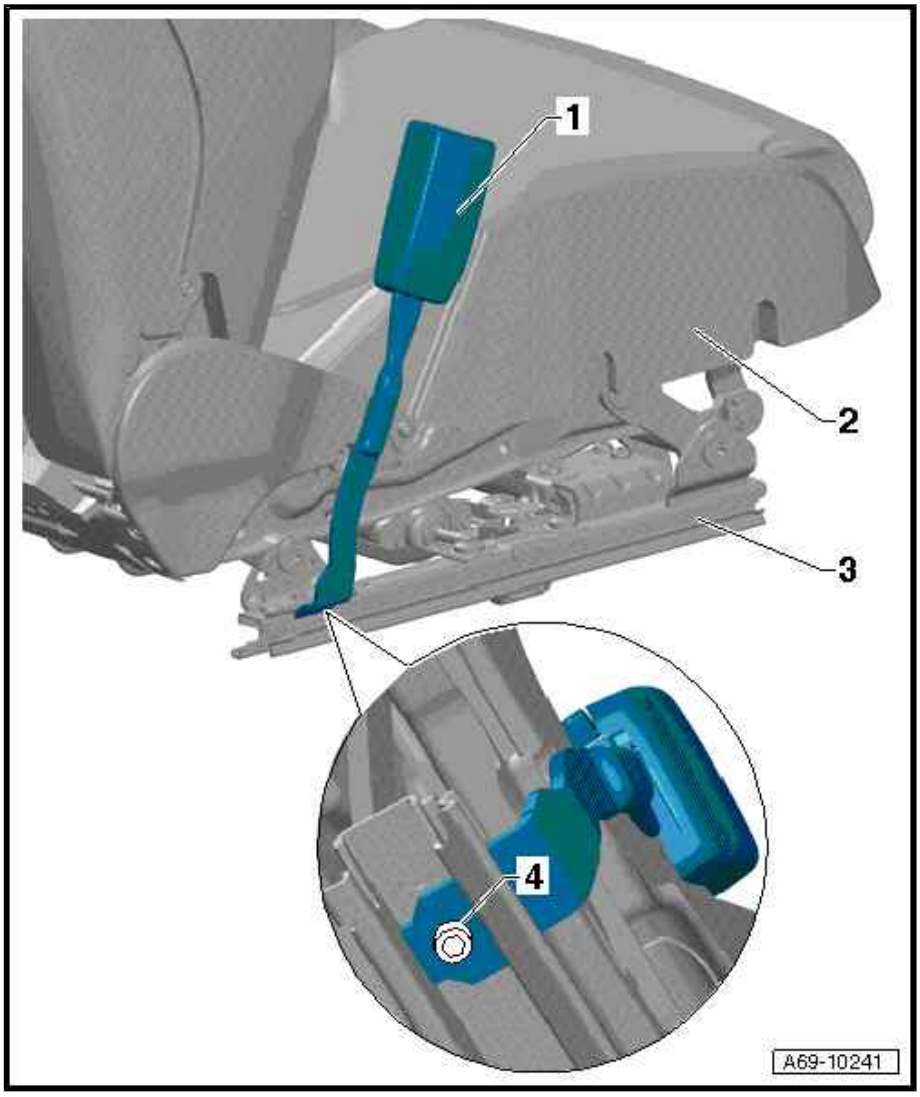
- ❑ Driver side: With driver side belt switch -E24-
- ❑ Passenger side: with front passenger side belt switch -E25- (country-specific version; belt buckle version not shown in illustration)
- ❑ Removing and installing belt buckle ⇒ page 65

2 - Front seat

3 - Seat frame

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 33 Nm



2.6 Removing and installing belt buckle (front)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

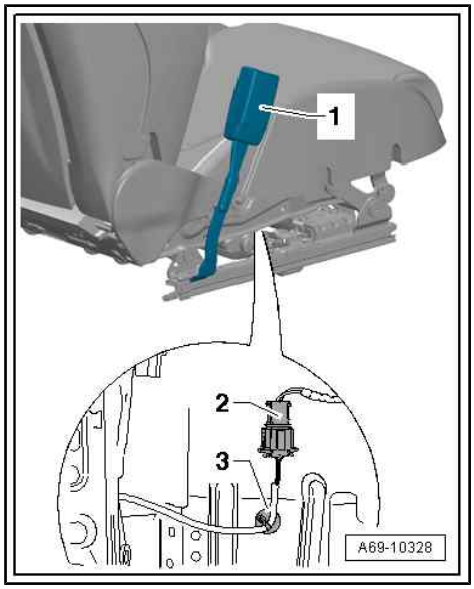
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

WARNING

The belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag must ALWAYS be renewed when the front passenger's belt tensioner has been triggered.

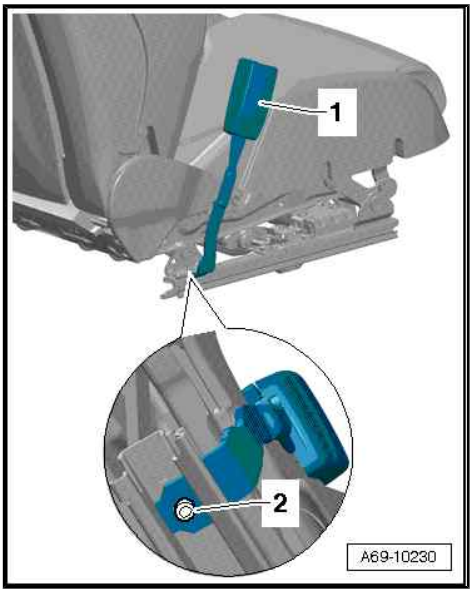
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Unfasten cable tie clip -3- and move clear electrical wire to belt buckle -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unscrew bolt -2- and detach belt buckle -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Always clean threaded hole for bolt, using e.g. a thread tap.

– Renew bolt for belt buckle.

Country-specific version with seat occupied recognition controlling deactivation of front passenger's airbag:

– If the belt buckle for the seat occupied recognition system controlling the deactivation of the front passenger's airbag is renewed, you must complete the form for the seat occupied recognition system stating the serial number and including the bar code sticker of the new belt buckle, and then send the form to the importer.

All vehicles (continued):

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 64

2.7 Exploded view of three-point seat belt (rear)

1 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 45 Nm

2 - Automatic belt retractor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

3 - Belt

4 - Cover

- ❑ For belt guide fitting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 68

5 - Belt guide fitting

6 - Back panel trim (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 155

7 - Belt exit point trim (rear)

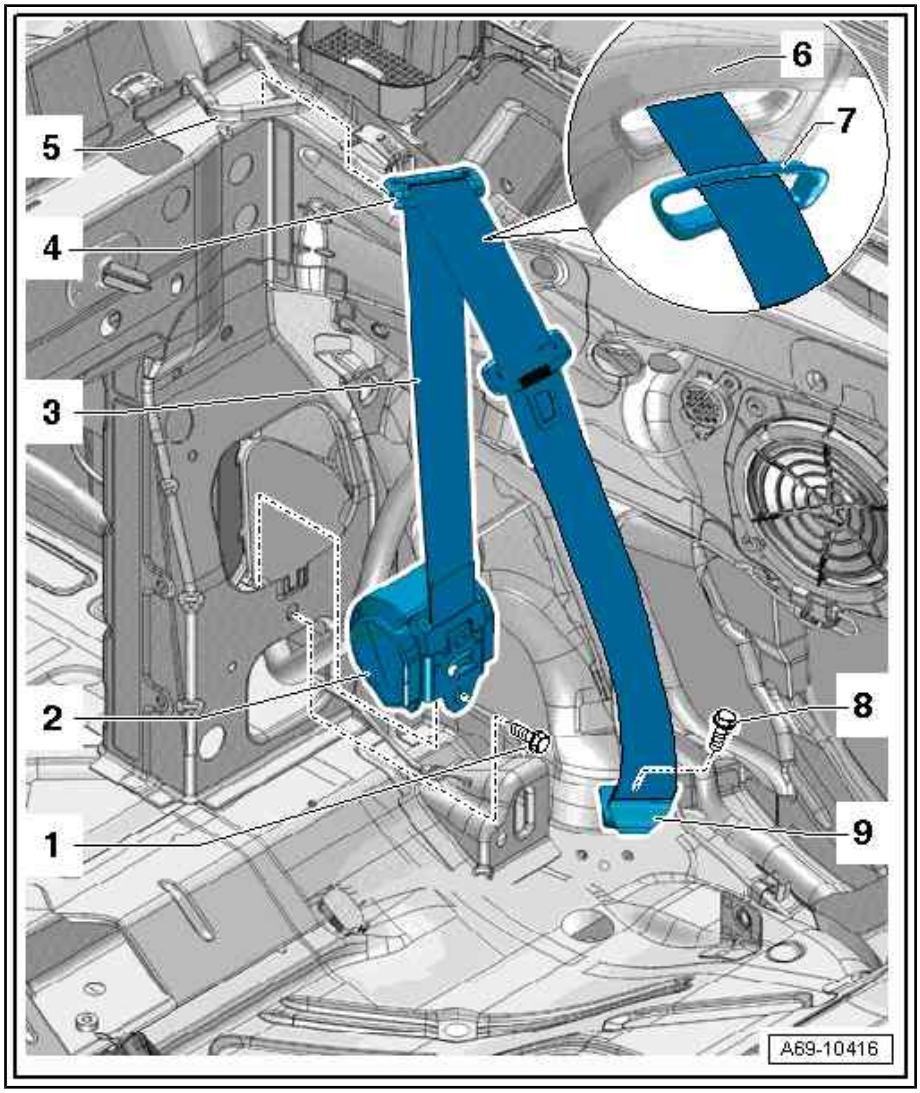
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

8 - Bolt

- ❑ Renew bolt if removed following an accident
- ❑ 55 Nm

9 - Belt end fitting

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69



2.8 Removing and installing three-point seat belt (rear)

Note

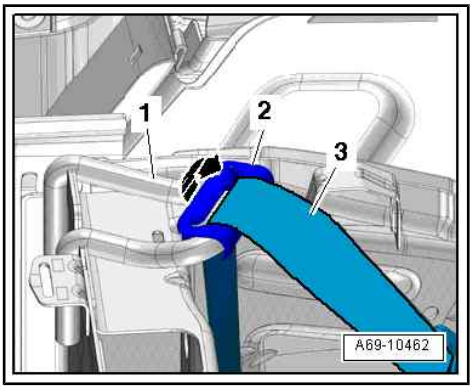
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

– Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 69 .

– Remove back panel trim (top) ⇒ page 155 .

– Thread belt out of back panel trim (top).
– Unclip cover -2- for belt guide fitting -arrow-.
– Guide cover and belt -3- with latch plate through belt guide fitting -1-.



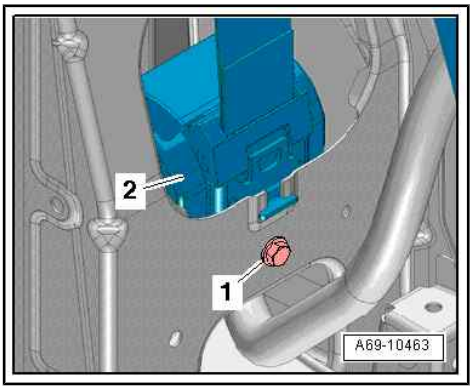
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Disengage three-point seat belt -2- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert three-point seat belt with locating element in mounting and tighten bolt.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 67



2.9 Removing and installing belt end fitting (rear)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

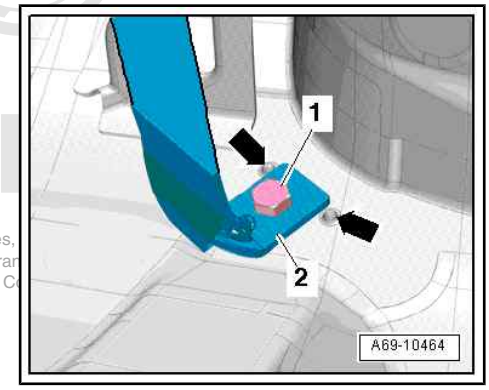
Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 261 .
– Unscrew bolt -1- and detach belt end fitting -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– If components of the belt system are removed following an accident, renew the securing bolts for the belt system.
– Apply belt end fitting -2- between studs -arrows- on floor panel so that end of belt faces towards vehicle exterior.



Tightening torque ⇒ page 67

2.10 Exploded view of belt buckle (rear)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in whole or in part, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

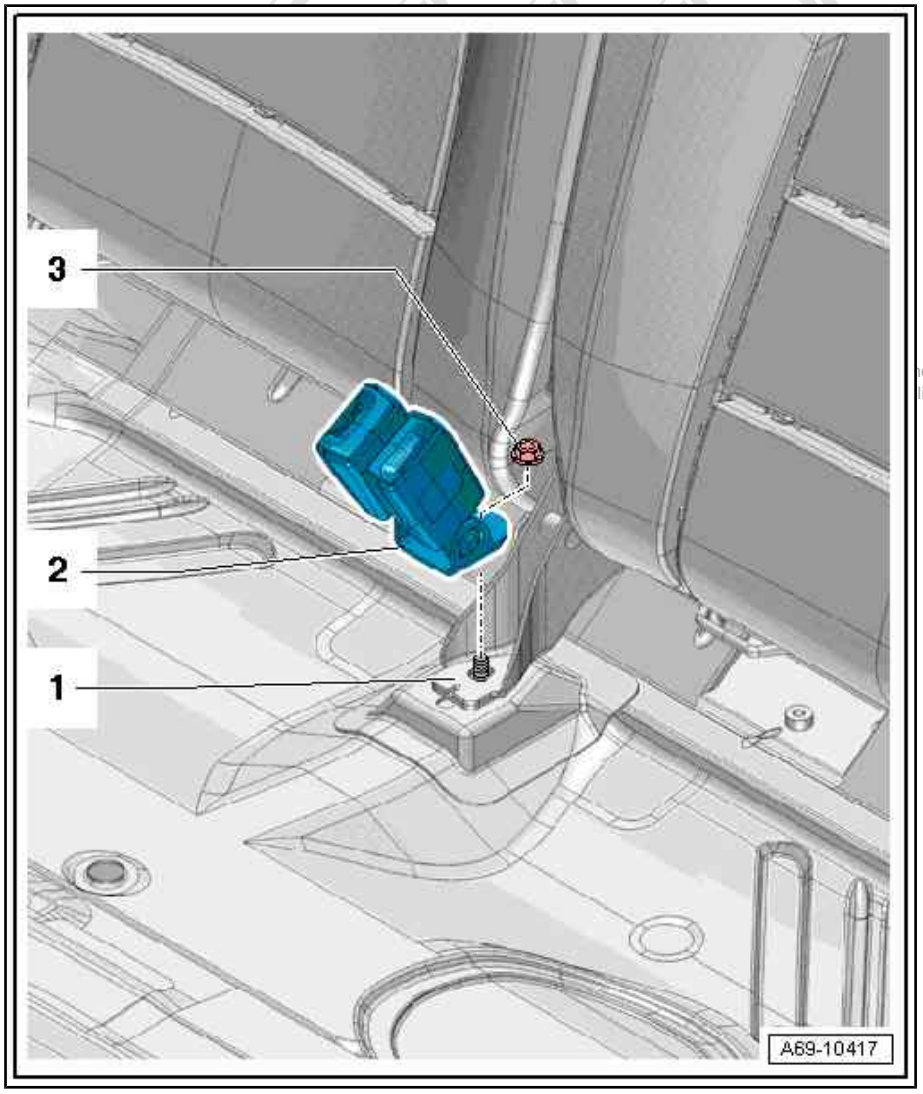
1 - Backrest frame

2 - Belt buckle (rear)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

3 - Nut

- ❑ Renew nut if removed following an accident
- ❑ 55 Nm

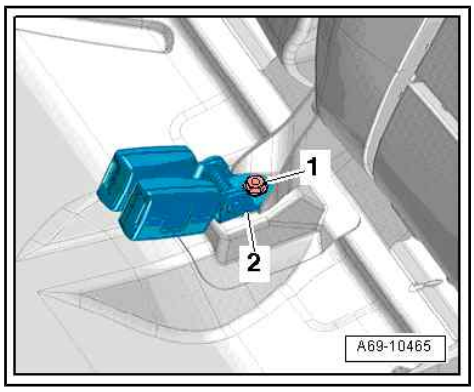


2.11 Removing and installing belt buckle (rear)

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 261 .

– Unscrew nut -1- and detach belt buckle (rear) -2-.

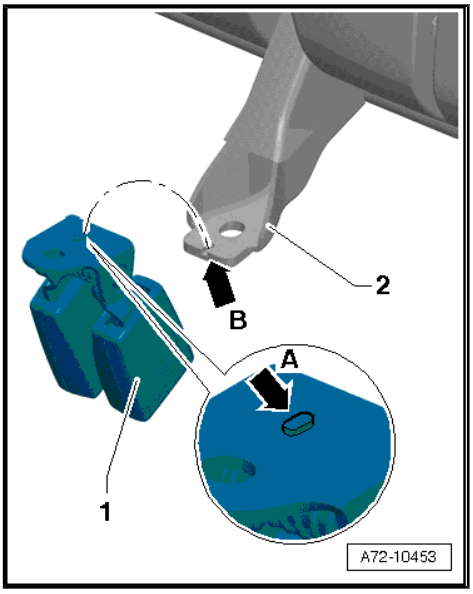


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that locating element -arrow A- on underside of belt buckle -1- is inserted in recess -arrow B- of centre bracket -2-.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 69



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Child seat anchors (ISOFIX, Top Tether)

3.1 Exploded view of child seat anchor (ISOFIX) for front seat

Note

For greater clarity, the seat cover is not shown in the illustration.

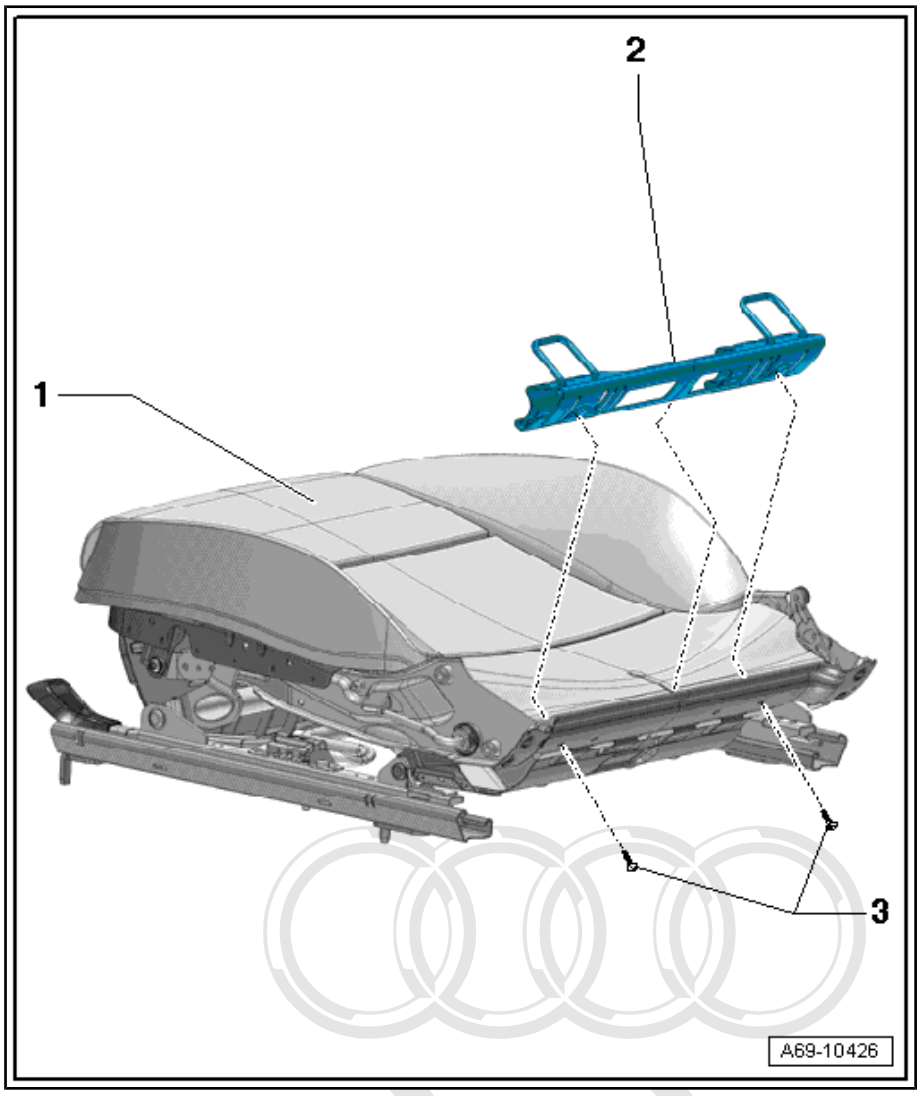
1 - Seat pan

2 - ISOFIX retainer

- ❑ Front passenger's seat only
- ❑ Attached to seat pan and bolted on
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 59
- ❑ Renew if damaged
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 72

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 12 Nm
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew if retainer is damaged



3.2 Removing and installing ISOFIX retainer

Removing

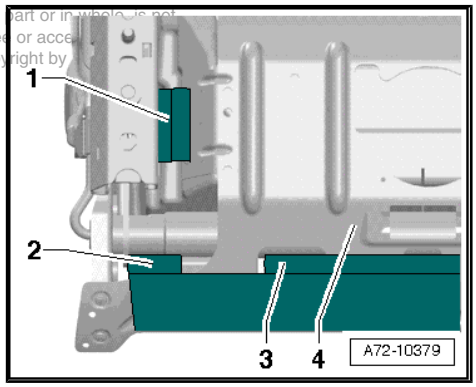
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front passenger's seat ⇒ page 196 .
– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .
– Disengage fastening strips -1, 2, 3- on back of seat pan -4-.

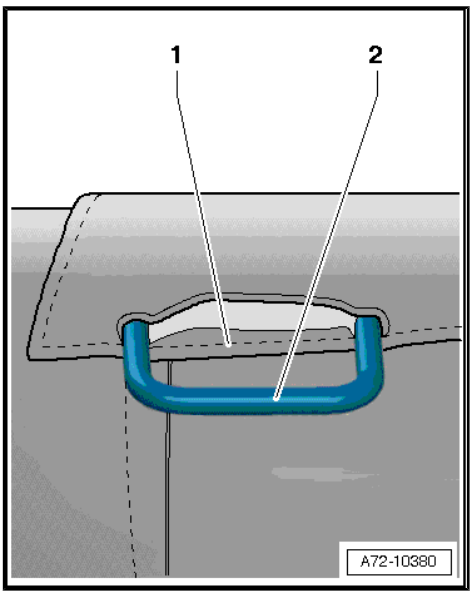
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



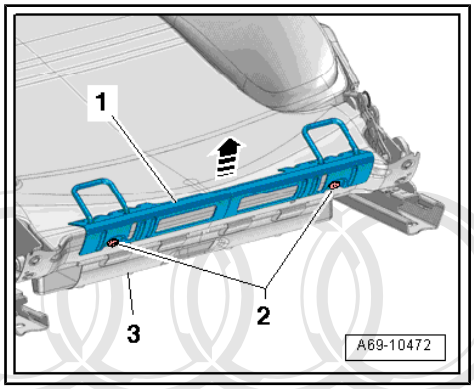
Caution

Make sure the cover does not tear at the opening for the ISO-FIX bracket.

– Pull cover -1- to front off ISOFIX brackets -2-.



– Remove bolts -2-.



Note

For greater clarity, padding is shown without cover in illustration.

– Lift ISOFIX retainer -1- off seat pan -3- -arrow-.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 72

3.3 Exploded view of child seat anchors (ISOFIX) for rear seats

1 - ISOFIX child seat anchor

- ❑ Welded to backrest frame. To renew, remove backrest frame ⇒ page 270

2 - Backrest frame

- ❑ With ISOFIX child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270

3 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 268
- ❑ 16x

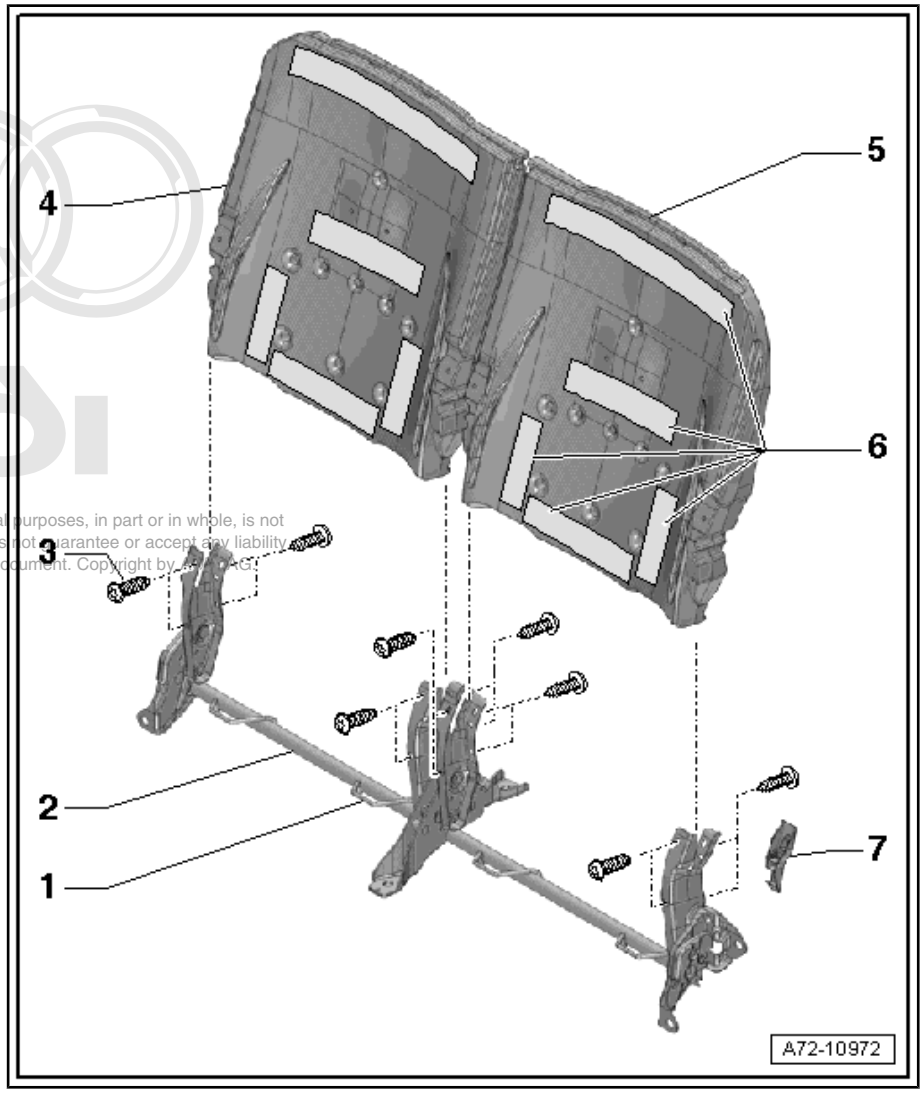
4 - Backrest pan (right-side)

5 - Backrest pan (left-side)

6 - Double-sided adhesive tape

- ❑ Bonded onto front of backrest pan

7 - Filler piece



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.4 Exploded view of child seat anchor (Top Tether) for rear seats - country-specific version

1 - Rear seat backrest

2 - Inner trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 76

3 - Bracket

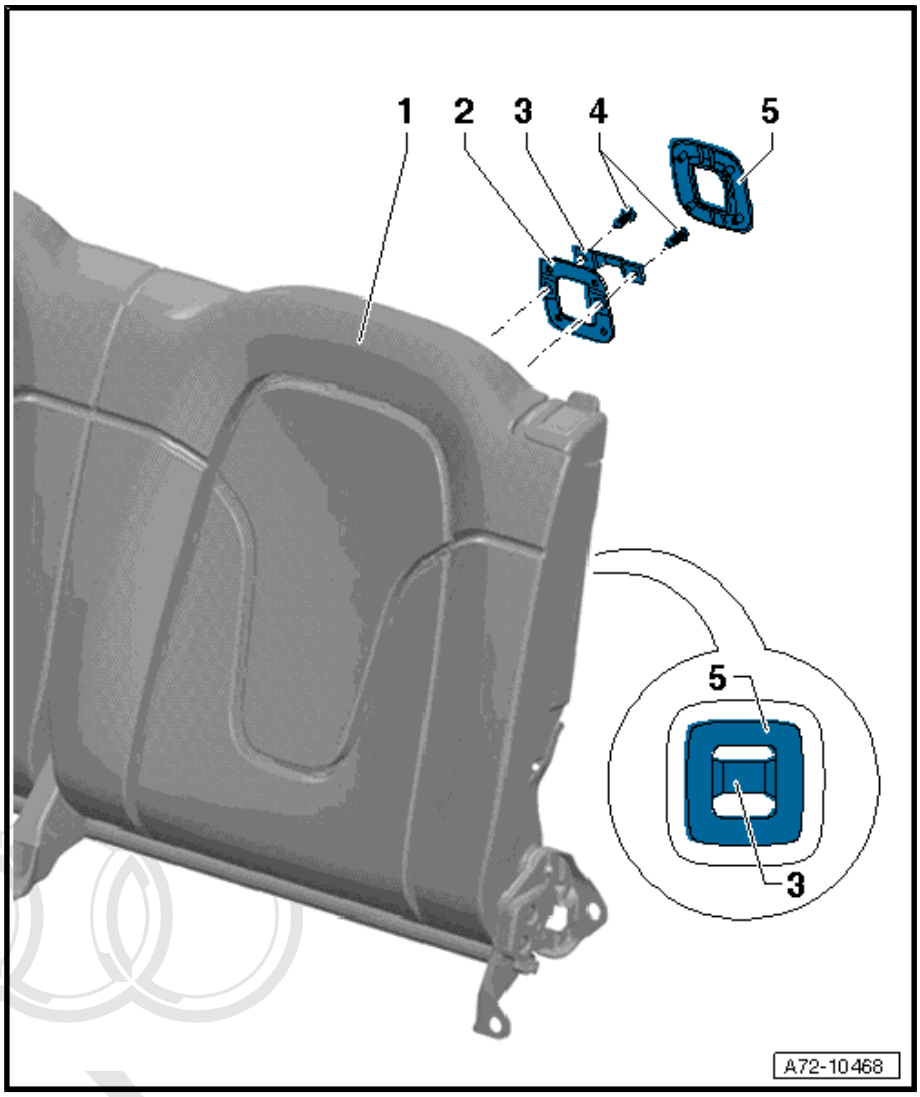
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 76

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 4 Nm
- ❑ 4x

5 - Outer trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 76



3.5 Removing and installing child seat anchor (Top Tether)

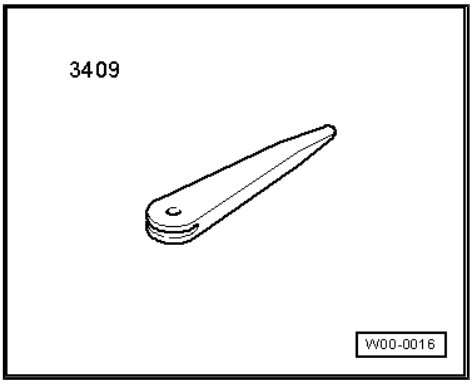
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

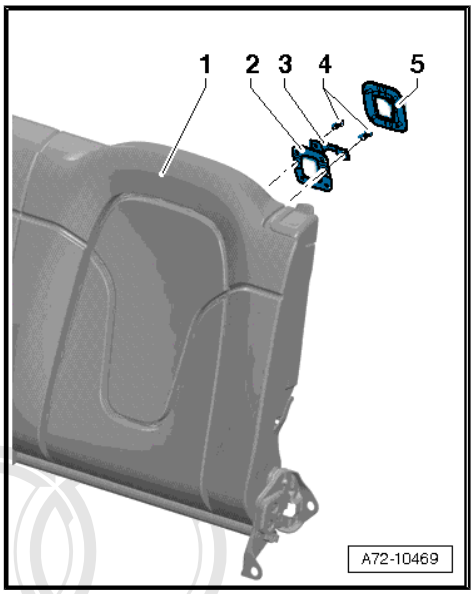
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

– Unclip outer trim -5- using removal wedge -3409- .
– Remove bolts -4-.
– Detach bracket -3- and inner trim -2- from rear seat backrest -1-.



Installing

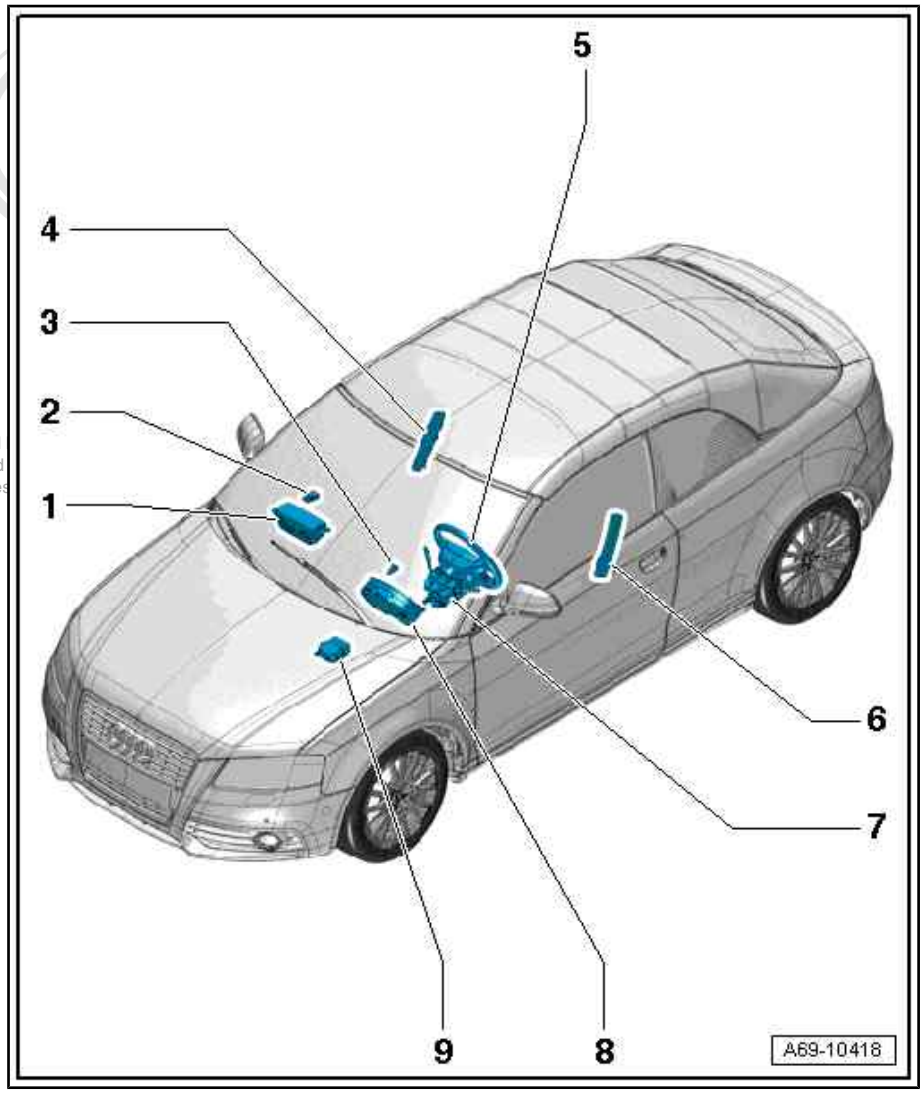
Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 76

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 Airbags

4.1 Overview of fitting locations



1 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 87
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 89
- Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

2 - Key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

3 - Warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145-

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 94

4 - Side airbag (front passenger side)

- With side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N200-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 96
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

5 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side -N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side -N250-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 82
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 83

6 - Side airbag (driver side)

- With side airbag igniter on driver side -N199-
- Exploded view ⇒ page 96
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

7 - Steering column electronics control unit -J527-

- With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring -F138- and steering angle sender -G85-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 94

8 - Airbag warning lamp -K75-

- Fitting location: in instrument cluster ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90
- Cannot be renewed separately

9 - Airbag control unit -J234-

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 79
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 80

4.2 Exploded view of airbag control unit -J234-

1 - Threaded pins

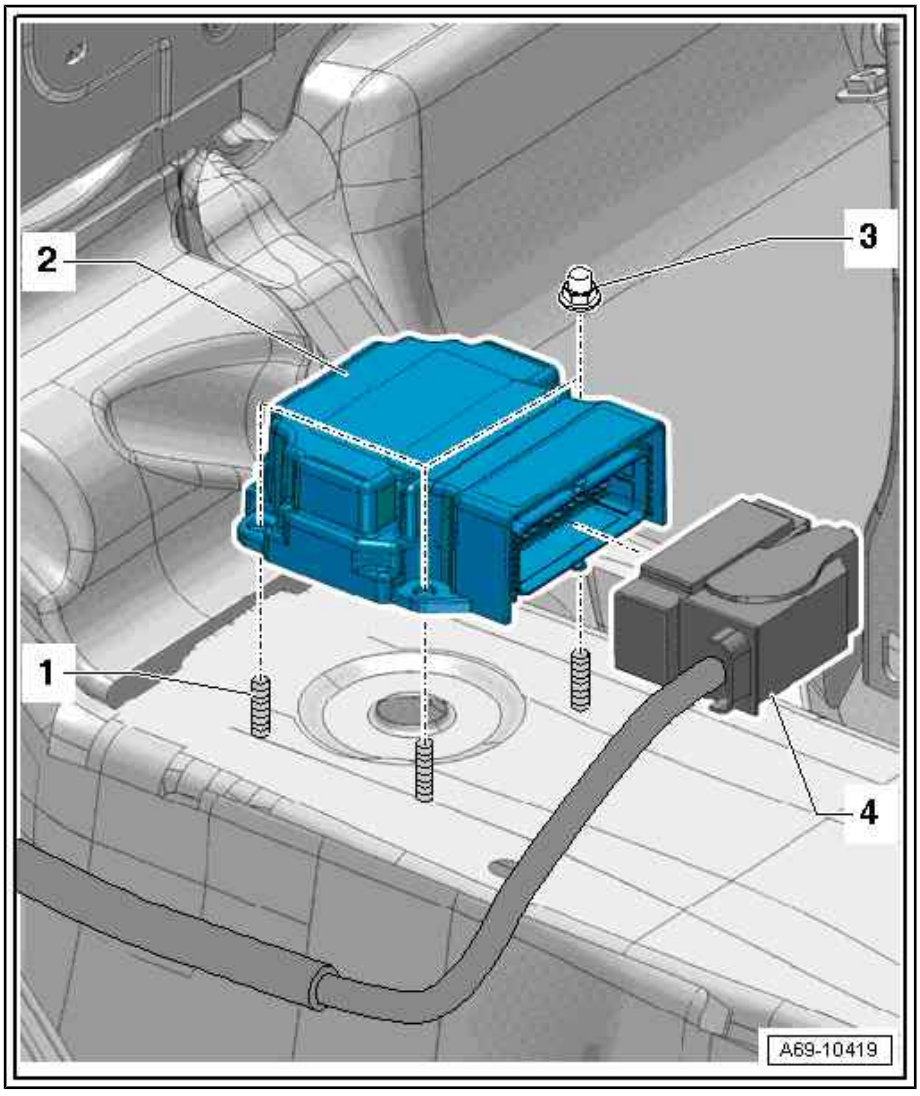
2 - Airbag control unit -J234-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 80

3 - Nut

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 10 Nm

4 - Electrical connector

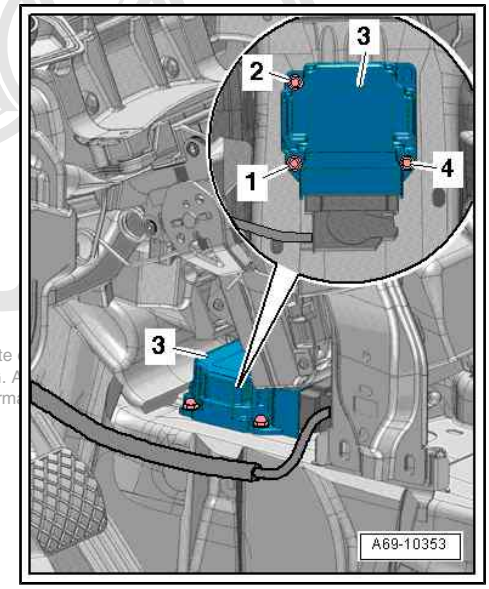


4.3 Removing and installing airbag control unit -J234-

Removing

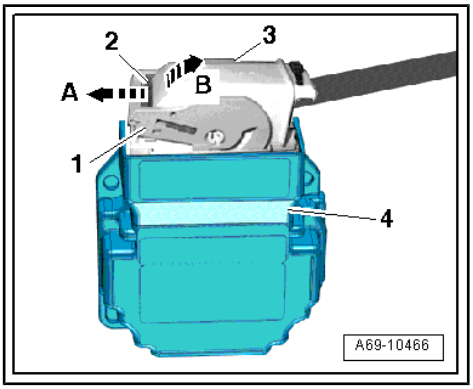
WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .



- With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
- Remove centre console ⇒ page 20 .
- Remove brackets for centre console ⇒ page 22 .
- Unscrew nuts -1, 2, 4-.
- Detach airbag control unit -3- from studs and take out to side towards driver's footwell.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG.
to the correctness of inform



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull out locking element -2- at connector in direction of -arrow A-.

– Unfasten retaining clip -1- at connector -arrow B- and unplug electrical connector -3- from airbag control unit -4-.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

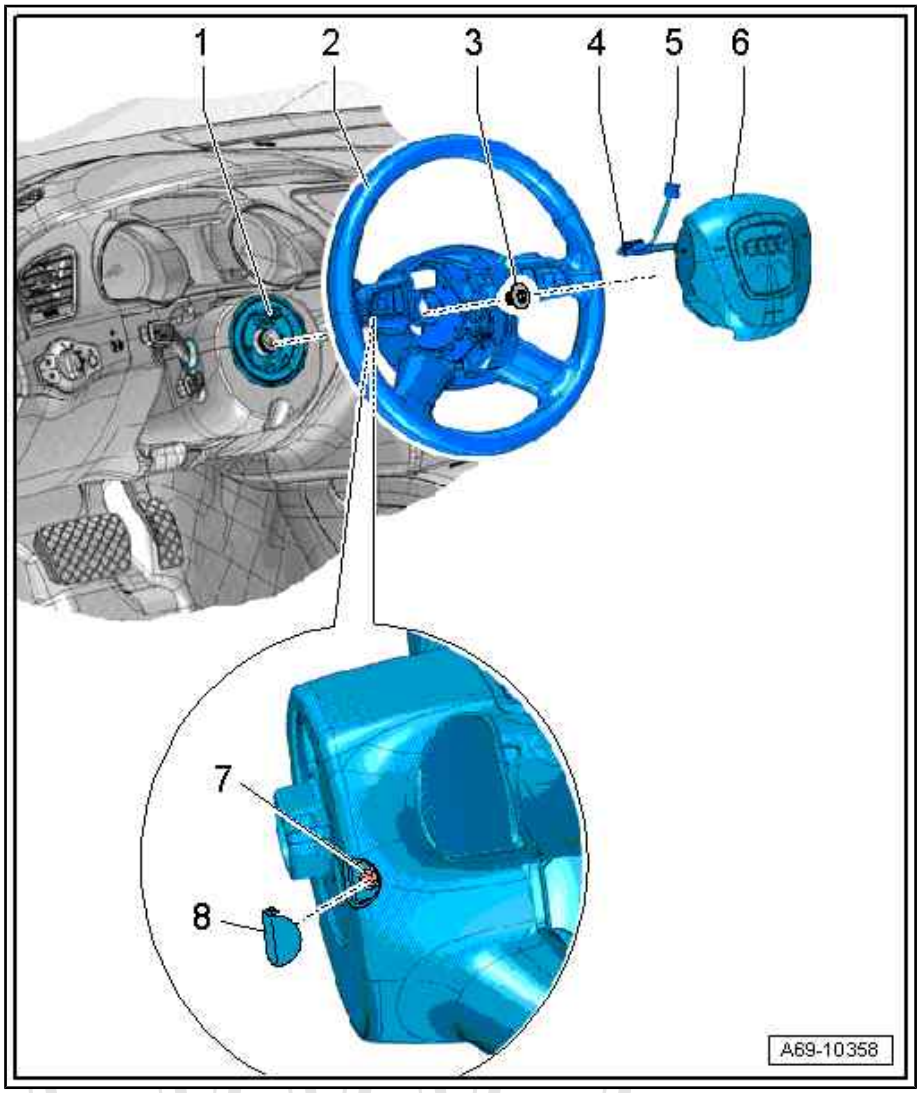
Note

- *If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.*
- *Control unit must be encoded after renewal ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.*
- *Earth connection for airbag control unit -J234- is provided by securing housing to body.*

Tightening torque ⇒ page 79

5 Airbag (driver side)

5.1 Exploded view of airbag (driver side)



1 - Steering column electronics control unit -J527-

- With airbag coil connector and return ring with slip ring -F138- and steering angle sender -G85-
- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 94

2 - Steering wheel

- Depending on equipment version
- Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

3 - Bolt

- Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

4 - Electrical connector

- For airbag igniter on driver side -N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side -N250-
- Renewing ⇒ page 86

5 - Electrical connector

- Depending on equipment version
- Renewing ⇒ page 86

6 - Airbag (driver side)

- With airbag igniter on driver side -N95- and airbag igniter 2 on driver side -N250-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

- Removing and installing ⇒ page 83

7 - Bolt

- 2x
- 7 Nm

8 - Cap

- 2x
- For securing bolt for airbag (driver side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.2 Removing and installing airbag unit with airbag igniters -N95- and -N250-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 50 .*

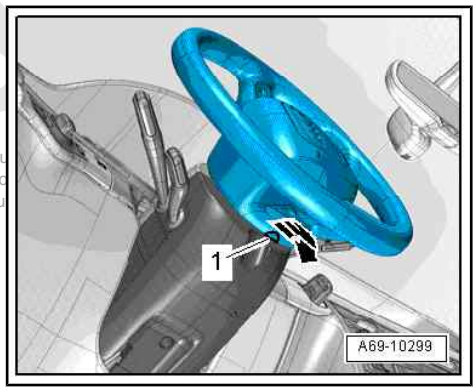
– Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Turn steering wheel so that cap -1- on back of steering wheel is pointing straight downwards and is aligned exactly with recess on bottom trim for steering column switch module.

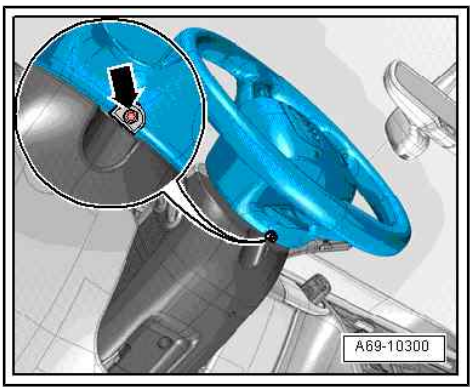
– Prise off cap -arrow-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pu
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does no
with respect to the correctness of information in this docu

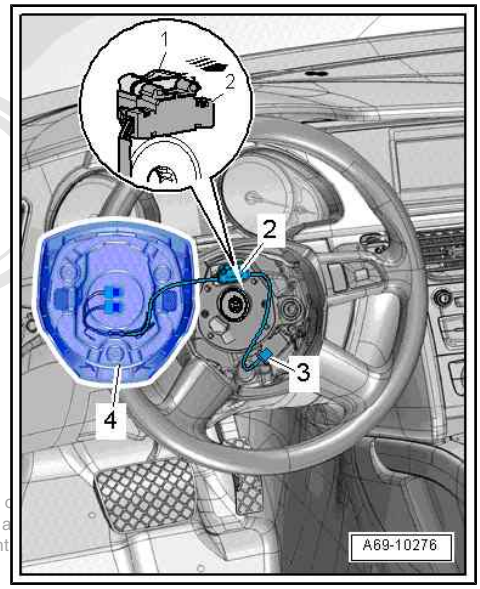


– Unscrew bolt -arrow- for airbag (driver side).

– Turn steering wheel by 160° and repeat procedure on opposite steering wheel side.



– Return steering wheel to centre position (wheels straight ahead).



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Pull airbag (driver side) slightly away from steering wheel.

– Pull connector locking element -1- as far as stop -arrow-. This will release electrical connector -2- which can then be unplugged.

– Equipment version with multi-function and tiptronic steering wheel: Unplug electrical connector -3-.

– Detach airbag -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or a
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright

WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components*** ***⇒ page 49*** ***.***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

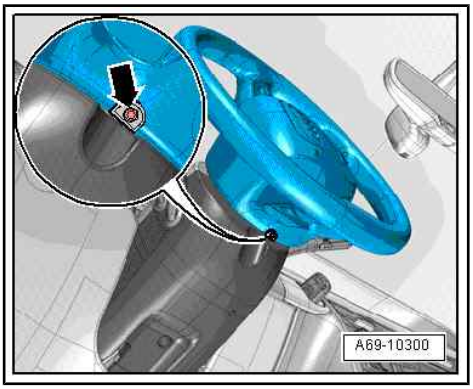
Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Connect electrical plug for coil connector to airbag coupling at return ring with slip ring.

– Position airbag (driver side) in steering wheel.

- The centring pins on the airbag unit must be inserted in the holes in the centring plate on the steering wheel.



– Turn steering wheel so that bolt -arrow- for securing airbag (driver side) is pointing straight downwards and is aligned exactly with recess on bottom trim for steering column switch module.
– Screw in bolt approx. 2 turns.
– Turn steering wheel by 160° and tighten bolt on opposite steering wheel side.
– Turn steering wheel by 160° and tighten bolt -arrow-.
– Press caps into openings in steering wheel.
– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 82

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.3 Renewing connector at airbag

Removing

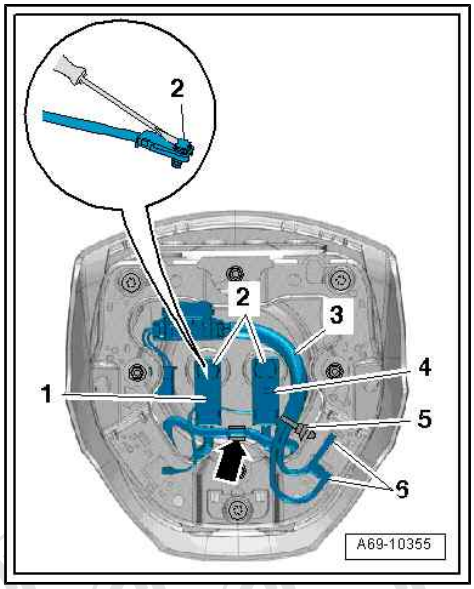
WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

– Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ page 83 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connectors -6-.
– Use a small screwdriver to release connector locking elements -2- and unplug electrical connectors -1- for airbag igniter on driver side -N95- and -4- for airbag igniter 2 on driver side -N250- .
– Release electrical wiring -3- from bracket -arrow- and cable tie -5- and detach.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

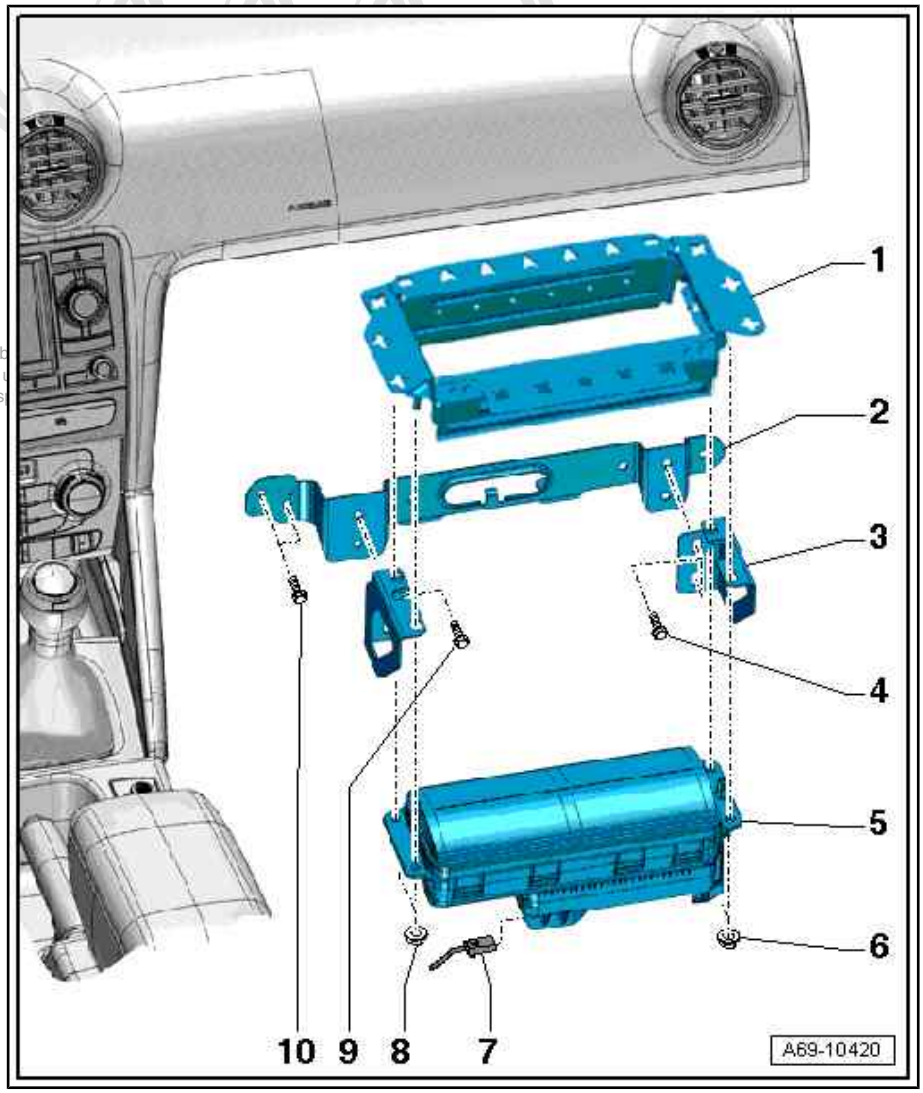
Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Install airbag unit (driver side) ⇒ page 84 .

Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Airbag (front passenger side)

6.1 Exploded view of airbag (front passenger side)



1 - Guide

- ❑ For airbag unit
- ❑ Attached to dash panel
- ❑ Cannot be renewed as a separate unit

2 - Support

- ❑ For airbag unit
- ❑ Bolted to central tube

3 - Bracket

- ❑ For airbag unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 92

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Airbag (front passenger side)

- ❑ With airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side - N131-

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Front passenger's airbag units with plastic housing (introduction approx. from January 2009 onwards) have an earth connection (not shown in illustration).
- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

6 - Nut

Caution

Approx. in September 2008 the front passenger's airbag units and the corresponding securing nuts were modified.

The old front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the old nuts; the new front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the new nuts.

To find out whether an old or a new front passenger's airbag unit is installed, read off the unit's part number and check it against the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

7 - Electrical connector

- ❑ For airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131-

8 - Nut

Caution

Approx. in September 2008 the front passenger's airbag units and the corresponding securing nuts were modified.

The old front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the old nuts; the new front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the new nuts.

To find out whether an old or a new front passenger's airbag unit is installed, read off the unit's part number and check it against the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 9 Nm

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew

❑ 9 Nm

10 - Bolt

❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 129

6.2 Removing and installing airbag unit (front passenger side) with airbag igniter -N131-

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 50 .*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag unit refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Caution

Approx. in September 2008 the front passenger's airbag units and the corresponding securing nuts were modified.

The old front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the old nuts; the new front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the new nuts.

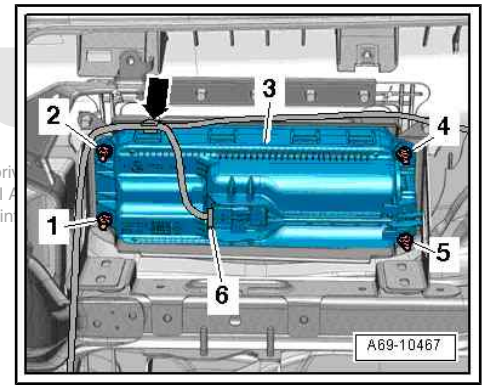
To find out whether an old or a new front passenger's airbag unit is installed, read off the unit's part number and check it against the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove glove box ⇒ page 11 .

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate or similar.



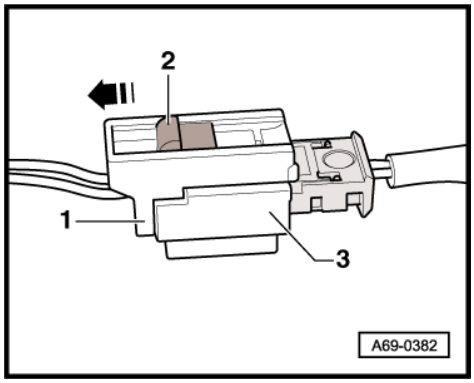
Only for front passenger's airbag unit with plastic housing (introduction approx. from January 2009 onwards):

– Detach earth wire from front passenger's airbag unit (not shown in illustration).

All vehicles:

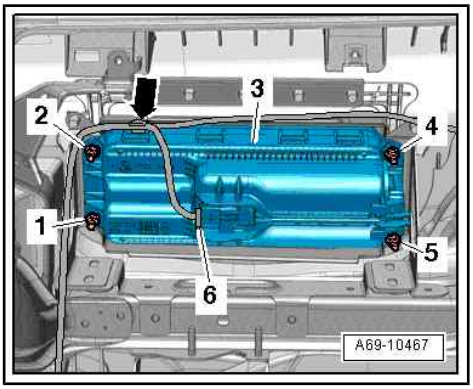
– Unplug electrical connector -6- for airbag igniter 1 on front passenger side -N131- .

– To do so, pull catch -2- in direction of -arrow- and disconnect electrical connectors -1- and -3-.
– Unclip cable retainer -arrow- at guide for airbag unit.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove nuts -1, 2, 4, 5-.
– Take out airbag (front passenger side) -3- downwards.



WARNING

Set down airbag with impact cushion facing upwards.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Caution

Approx. in September 2008 the front passenger's airbag units and the corresponding securing nuts were modified.

The old front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the old nuts; the new front passenger's airbag units must be secured with the new nuts.

To find out whether an old or a new front passenger's airbag unit is installed, read off the unit's part number and check it against the ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Renew dash panel after airbag triggering ⇒ page 124 .
– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Any unauthorised copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

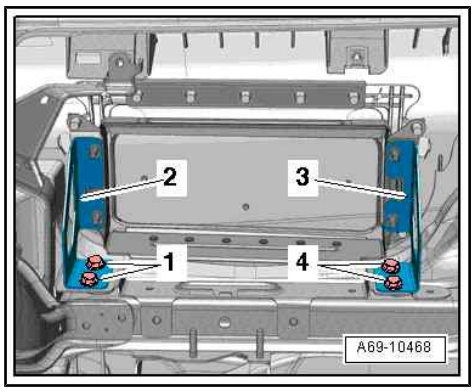
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 87

6.3 Removing and installing brackets for airbag unit (front passenger side)

Removing



– Remove airbag unit (front passenger side) ⇒ page 89 .
– Remove bolts -1- and -4-.
– Disengage brackets -2- and -3- at guide for airbag unit.
– Detach brackets for airbag unit.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Install airbag unit (front passenger side) ⇒ page 89 .

Tightening torque ⇒ page 87

6.4 Removing and installing key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224-

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

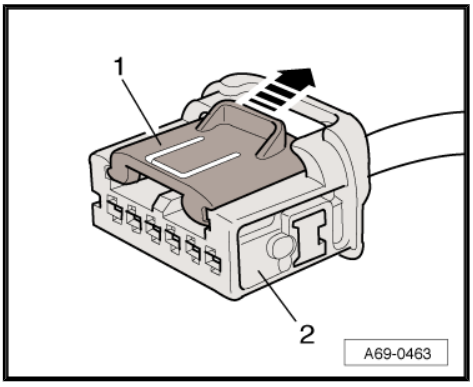
– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 11 .

WARNING

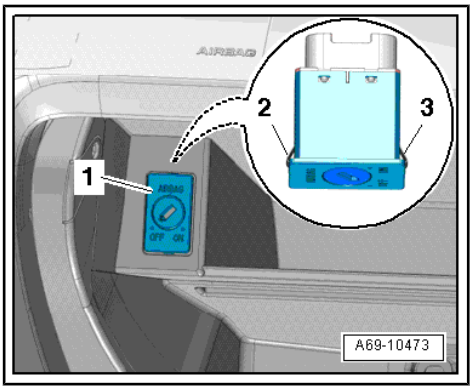
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug electrical connector.
– To do so, press catch -1- in direction of -arrow- until connector is disengaged.
– Unplug electrical connector -2-.



– Release retaining springs -2- and -3- (left and right) and slide key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- -item 1- out of housing for key-operated switch.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Make sure that key-operated switch to deactivate airbag on front passenger side -E224- engages audibly in housing.
– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

6.5 Removing and installing warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145-

Removing

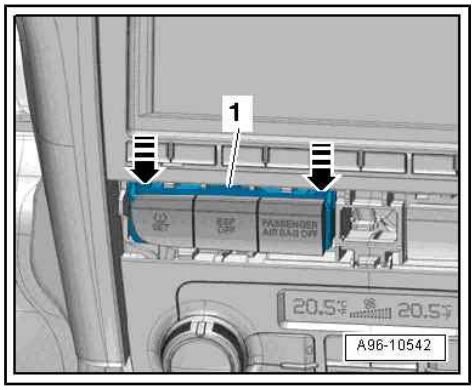
WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove trim for switch module ⇒ page 123 .

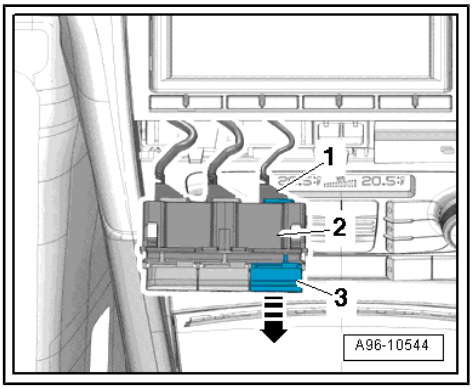
– Release retaining clips -arrows- and pull out switch mounting -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Unplug electrical connector -1-.
– Press warning lamp for airbag deactivated on front passenger side -K145- -item 3- out of switch mounting -2- in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Press warning lamp into switch mounting and engage.
– Press switch mounting into mounting frame until it engages audibly.
– Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

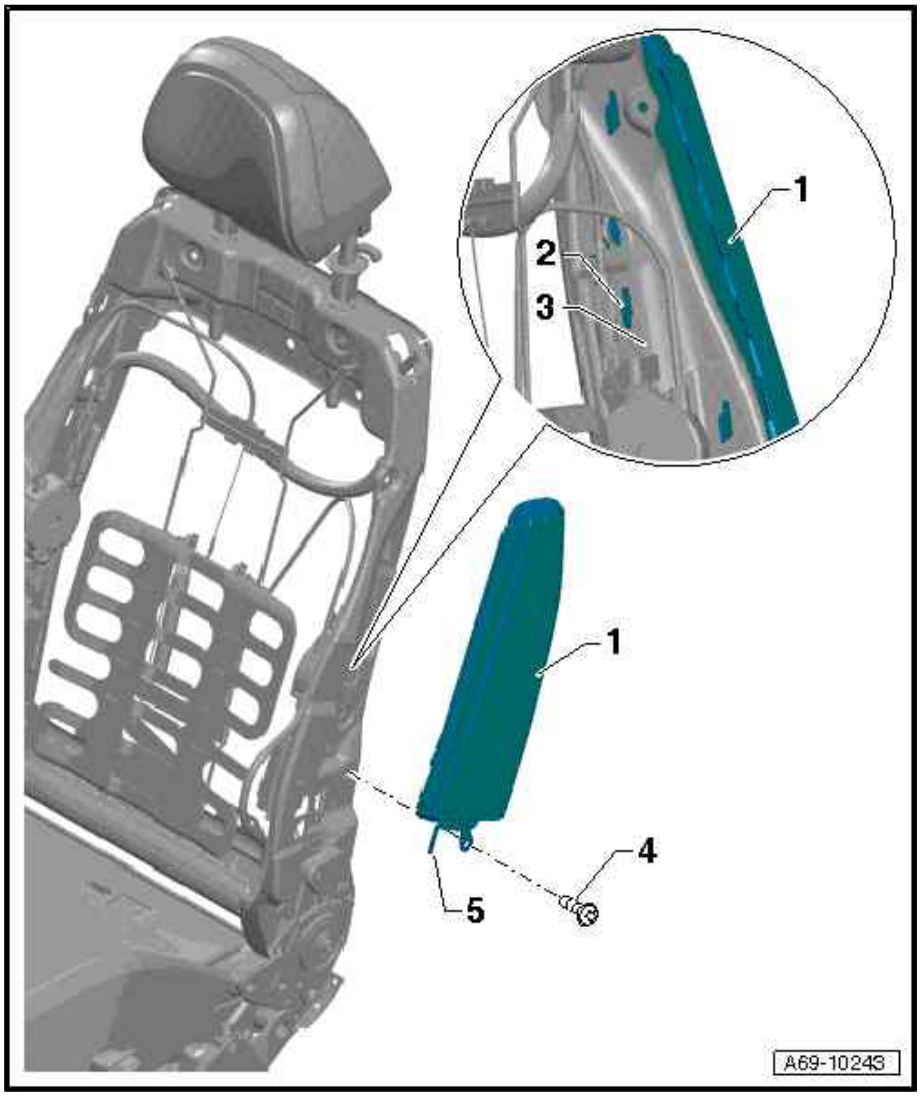
– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

7 Side airbags

7.1 Exploded view of side airbag (front)



1 - Side airbag (front)

- ❑ Driver side: With side airbag igniter on driver side -N199-
- ❑ Passenger side: With side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N200-

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Inserted in pouch (pouch not shown)
- ❑ Pouch stitched to seat cover

2 - Hook

- ❑ For securing side airbag to backrest frame

3 - Backrest frame

4 - Bolt

- ❑ Always renew after removing
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ Insert with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ 10 Nm

5 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Leading from side airbag igniter on driver side -N199- / side airbag igniter on front passenger side -N200- to connector point in one section

7.2 Removing and installing side airbag (front) with airbag igniter -N199- / -N200-

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Observe additional safety regulations for side airbags ⇒ page 51 .*
- *Observe disposal regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 50 .*

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

– Move clear continuous wiring harness for side airbag -4- leading from connector point to side airbag.

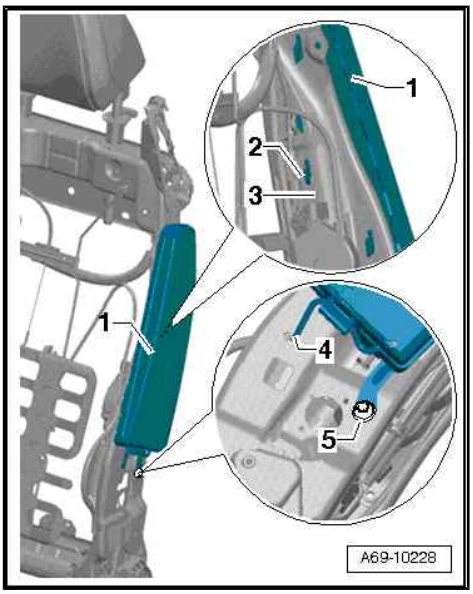
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Detach backrest padding (front) ⇒ page 279 until you can unscrew bolt -5-.

– Disengage side airbag -1- with hook -2- from backrest frame -3-.

– Guide out wiring harness for side airbag and detach side airbag from front seat backrest.



Installing

WARNING

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

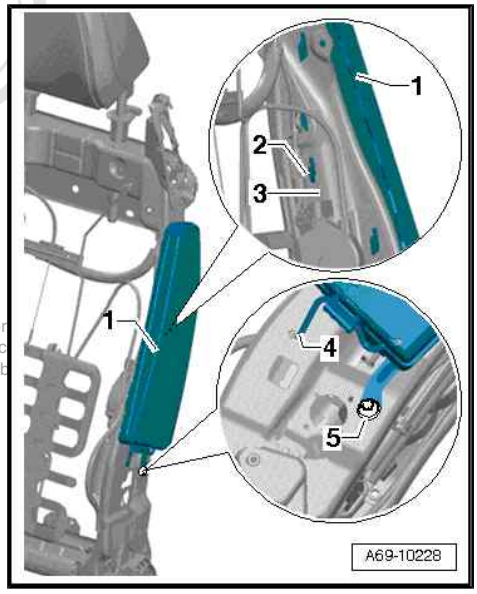
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

- Always clean threaded hole for bolt -5-, using e.g. a thread tap.
- Always renew bolt -5- after removal.
- Insert bolts with locking fluid; locking fluid ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .
- Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or
For more information see Audi AG's Terms and Conditions. No guarantee or ac
www.audi-mediacenter.com/en/terms-and-conditions.html Copyright b

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

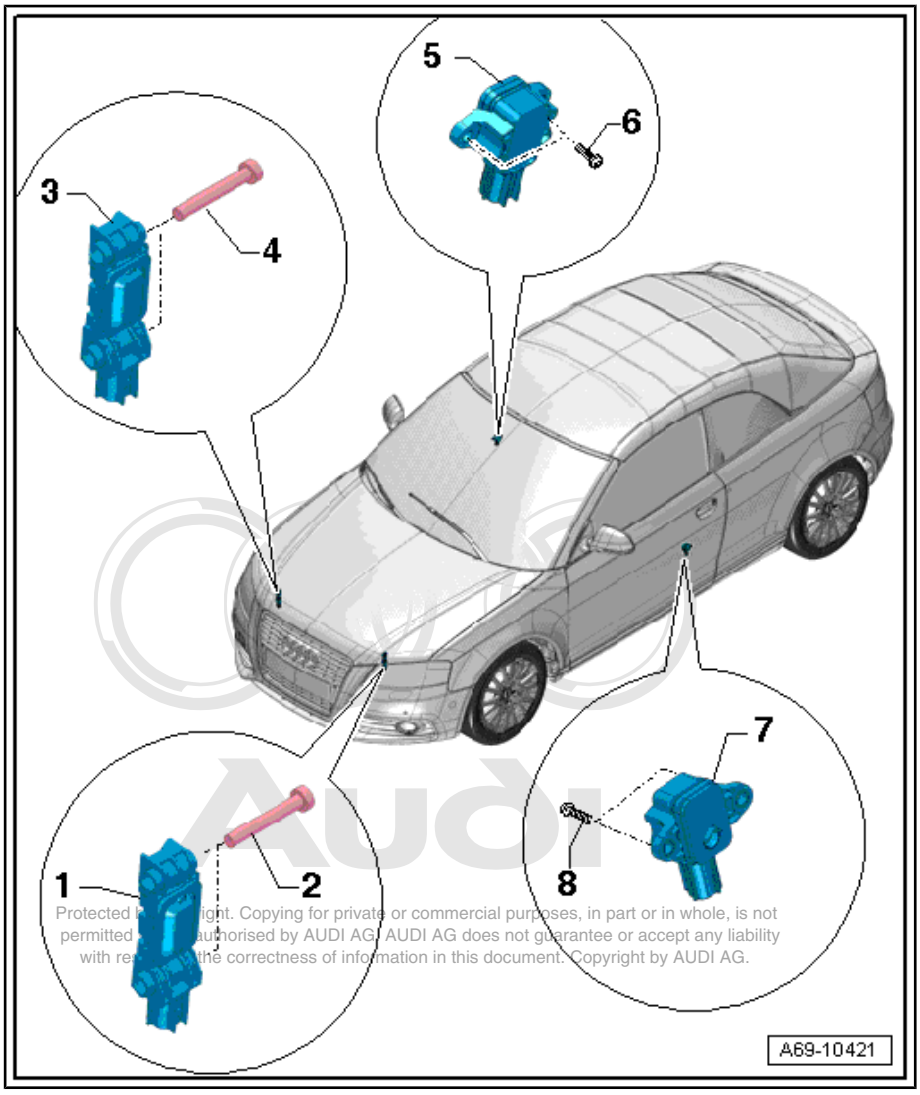
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 96

8 Crash sensors for airbags

8.1 Overview of crash sensors for airbags



1 - Front airbag crash sensor for driver side -G283-

- ❑ Fitting location: On lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 100

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Front airbag crash sensor for front passenger side -G284-

- ❑ Fitting location: On lock carrier
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 100

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

5 - Side airbag crash sensor on front passenger side -G180-

- ❑ Fitting location: In door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 102
- ❑ Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 52

6 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

7 - Side airbag crash sensor on driver side -G179-

- ❑ Fitting location: In door
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 102
- ❑ Safety regulations for crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 52

8 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 5 Nm

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

8.2 Removing and installing crash sensor for front airbag

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

– Open bonnet.

WARNING

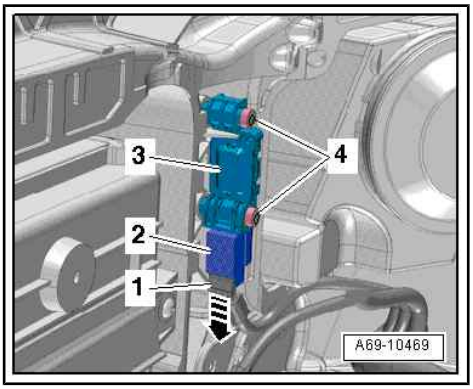
Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.



– Release catch -1- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolts -4- and detach crash sensor -3- for front airbag.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 99

8.3 Removing and installing crash sensor for side airbag (front)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

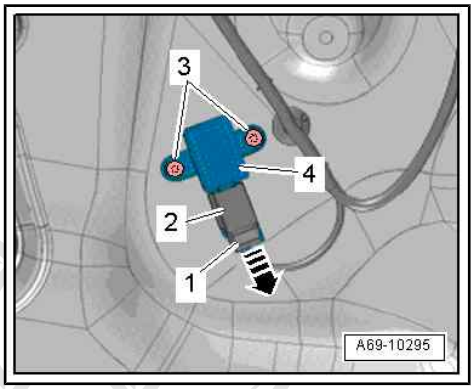
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 52 .*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 110 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Release catch -1- -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -2-.

– Remove bolts -3- and detach crash sensor -4- for side airbag.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag (front) ⇒ page 52 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Audi
Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.*
- *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *Make sure that all components (e.g. cover panel, loudspeaker, door trim) are fitted correctly.*
- *The door trim clips provide a seal for the system. Renew door trim clips if necessary.*
- *Make sure that wiring is not trapped.*

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 99

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 Roll-over protection

9.1 Exploded view of roll-over protection system

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 10x
- ❑ Tightening torque and sequence ⇒ page 106
- ❑ 55 Nm

2 - Head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 271

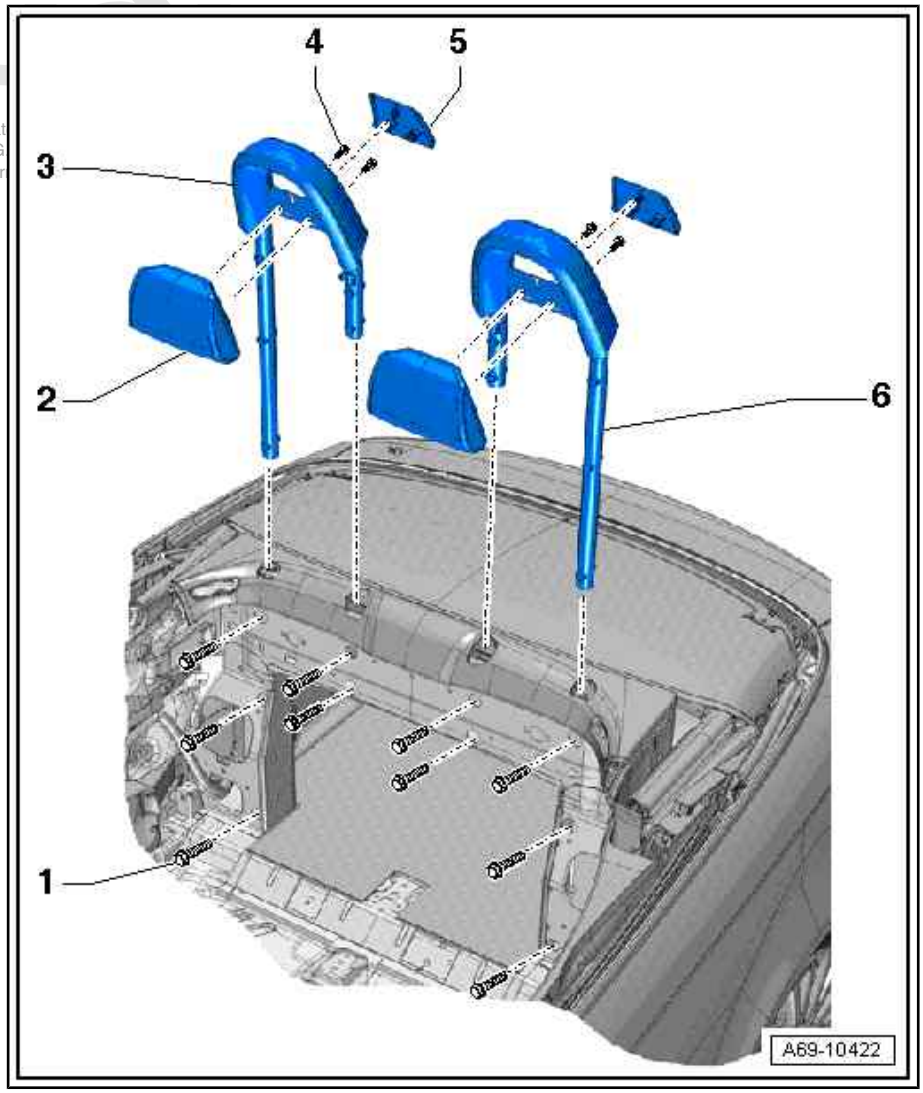
3 - Roll-over bar (right-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106

4 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 271

5 - Cover
- ❑ For head restraint

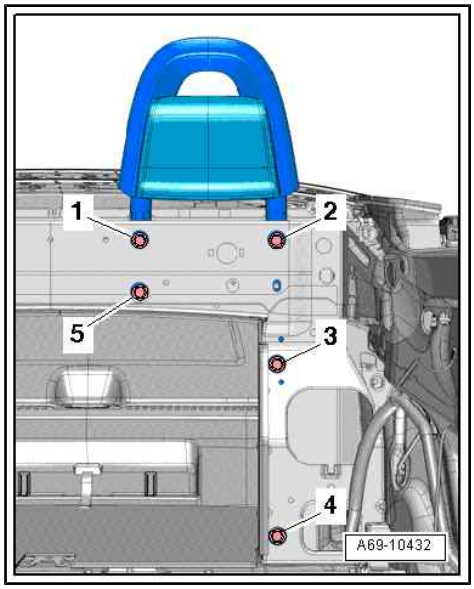
6 - Roll-over bar (left-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 106

Protected by copyright. Copying for privat
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of infor



Tightening torque and sequence for roll-over bar

– Tighten bolts for roll-over bar to 55 Nm in sequence -1 … 5-.



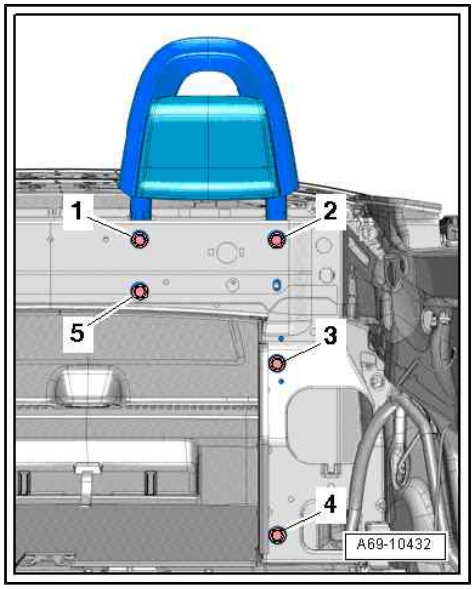
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9.2 Removing and installing roll-over bar

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing



– Release backrests (rear) and fold them down.
– Remove back panel trim (front) ⇒ page 153 .
– Lever out clips for back panel side trim. It is not necessary to remove back panel side trims ⇒ page 154 .
– Press back panel side trim to side and unscrew bolt -4- using long socket. Change position of backrest if necessary to access bolt.
– Unscrew bolts -1, 2, 3 and 5- and lift out roll-over bar.

Installing

Note

Attachment point -4- is visible through seat belt area.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Tighten bolts for roll-over bar in the specified sequence ⇒ page 106 .

Tightening torque ⇒ page 105

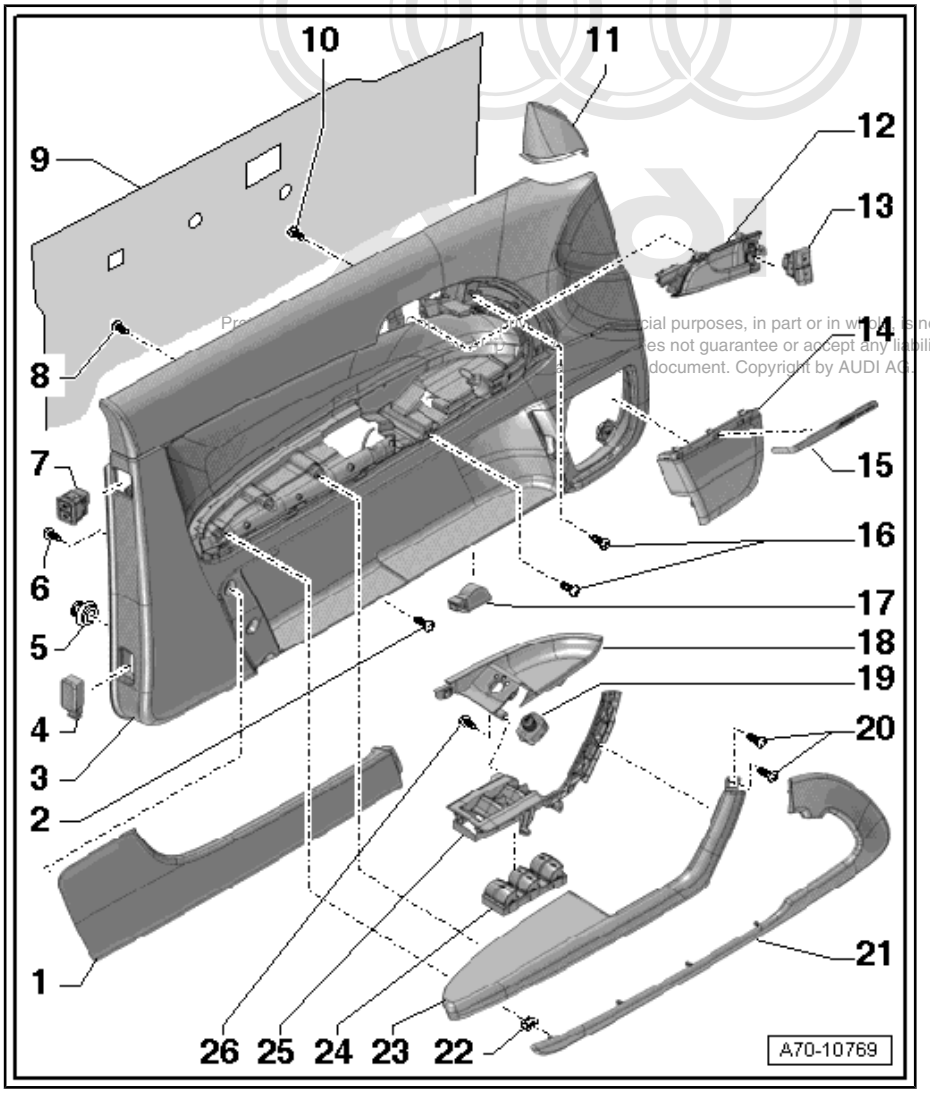
70 – Trim, insulation

1 Door trim (front)

1.1 Exploded view of door trim

Note

Illustration shows door trim on driver side.



1 - Storage pocket

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 112

2 - Bolt

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

3 - Door trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110

4 - Active or passive reflector

- ❑ Depending on equipment version

5 - Clip

- ❑ With seal
- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 8x

WARNING

Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.

Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag ⇒ page 52 .

6 - Bolt

- ❑ For storage pocket
- ❑ 10x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

7 - Interior monitoring switch -E183- / alarm system off switch -E217-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

8 - Bolt

- ❑ For armrest/door puller
- ❑ 6x

- ❑ 1.2 Nm

9 - Insulating mat

10 - Bolt

- ❑ For interior door handle
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

11 - Cover

- ❑ For mirror base
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 115

12 - Interior door handle

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 114

13 - Driver side interior locking button for central locking system -E308-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

14 - Loudspeaker trim

- ❑ For mid-range loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 109

15 - Trim strip

- ❑ For loudspeaker trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim”, page 109

16 - Bolts

- ❑ For door trim
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

17 - Entry light

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

18 - Trim

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Driver side: fitting location for mirror adjustment switch -E43- or adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature -E168-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.7 Removing and door puller with switch mounting”, page 113

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

19 - Mirror adjustment switch -E43- / adjustment switch for mirror with fold-in feature -E168-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

20 - Bolts

- ❑ For armrest/door puller
- ❑ 1.2 Nm

21 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 110

22 - Clip

- ❑ 8x
- ❑ Press into door trim

23 - Armrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

24 - Operating unit for window regulator in driver door -E512-

- ❑ Window regulator switch in front passenger door -E107-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

25 - Door puller

- ❑ With switch mounting
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 113

26 - Bolt

- ❑ 1.2 Nm

1.2 Removing and installing mid-range loudspeaker trim

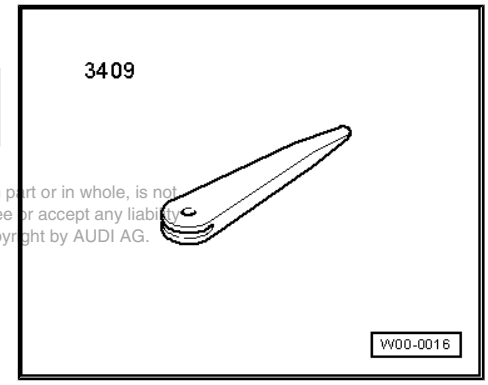
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

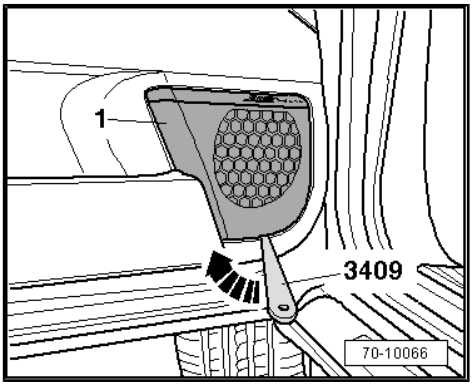
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-

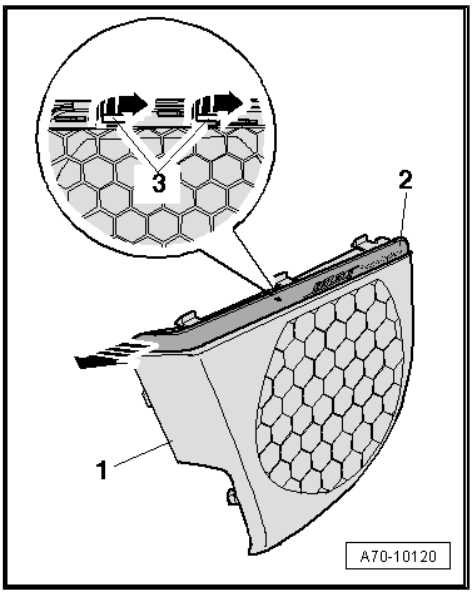


Removing

– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise loudspeaker trim -1- off door trim along gap -arrow- and detach.



– If fitted, lift locking springs -3- on trim strip -arrows-.
– Carefully push trim strip -2- off loudspeaker trim -1- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Position trim strip and carefully slide it onto loudspeaker trim until it engages.
– First hook loudspeaker trim into storage compartment, then press evenly onto door trim until it engages audibly.

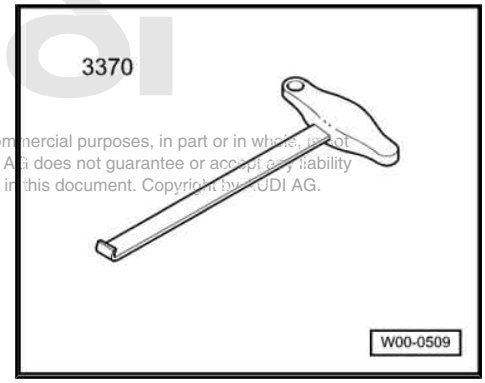
1.3 Removing and installing trim panel

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

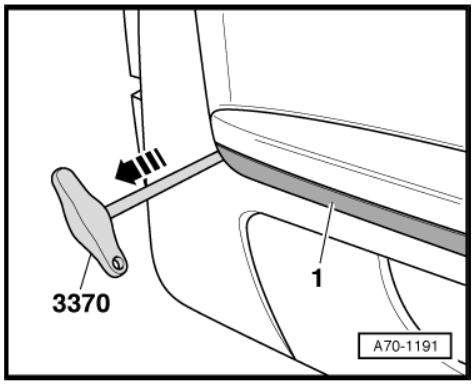
- Front-end hook -3370-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Use front-end hook -3370- to pull off trim panel -1- at door trim -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press trim panel onto door trim until it engages audibly.

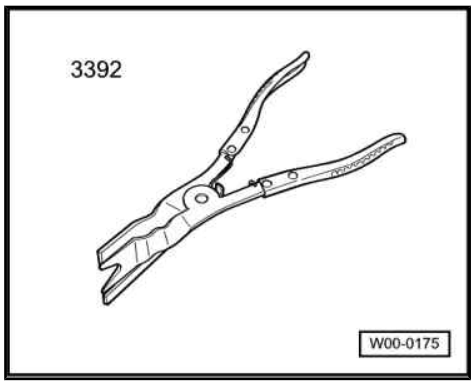
1.4 Removing and installing door trim

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal pliers -3392-

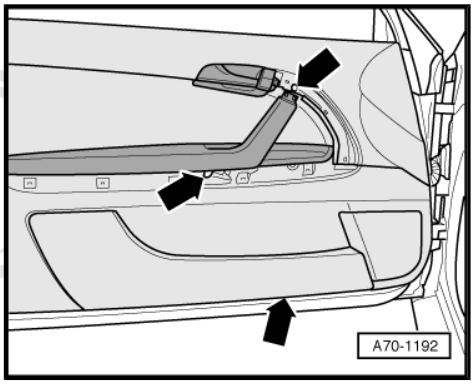


Removing

– Switch off ignition and remove ignition key.

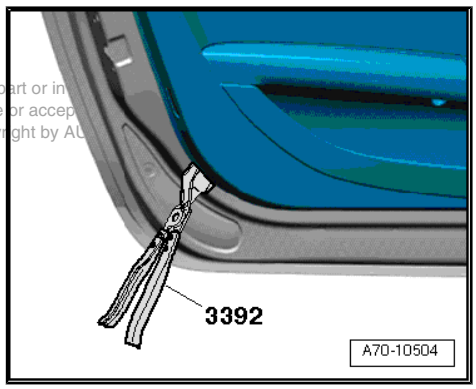
– Remove trim panel ⇒ page 110 .

– Remove bolts -arrows-.



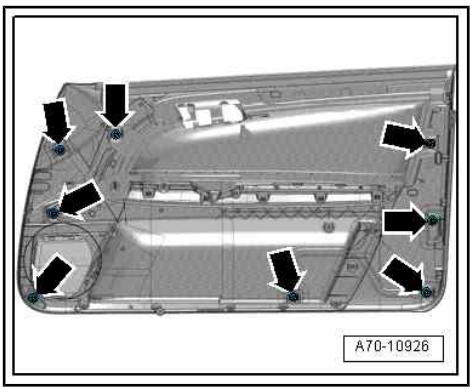
– Starting at bottom rear radius, unclip door trim from door using removal pliers -3392- . To do so, insert removal pliers between door trim and door in area of clips.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accep
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU

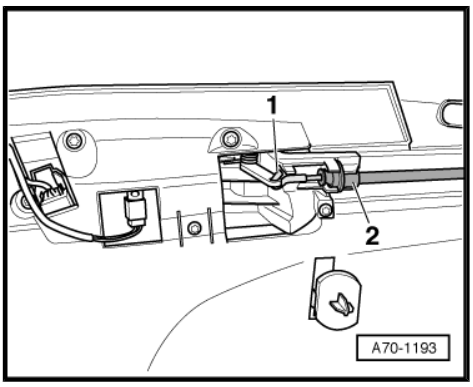


• Position of clips -arrows-

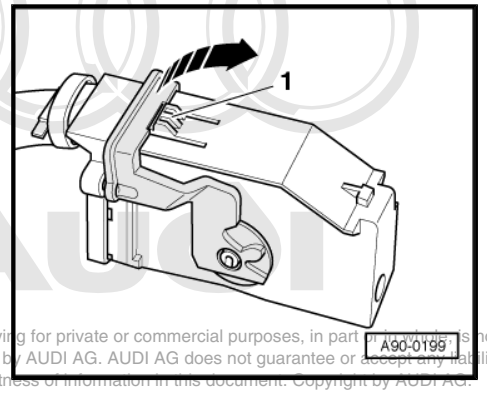
– Disengage door trim from door at top of window slot. To do so, pull door trim upwards.



– Pull out Bowden cable -2- for interior door handle at support bracket and disengage end of cable -1- at interior door handle.



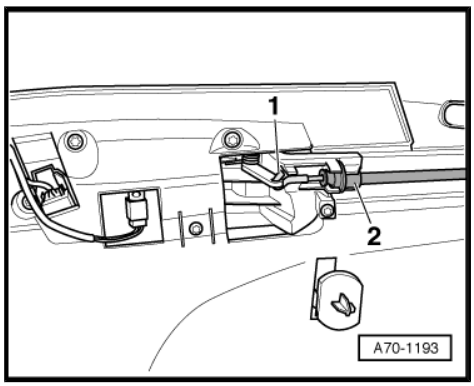
– Unplug electrical connector at door control unit; to do so, press catch -1-, turn retaining clip in direction of -arrow- and unplug connector.
– Detach door trim.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

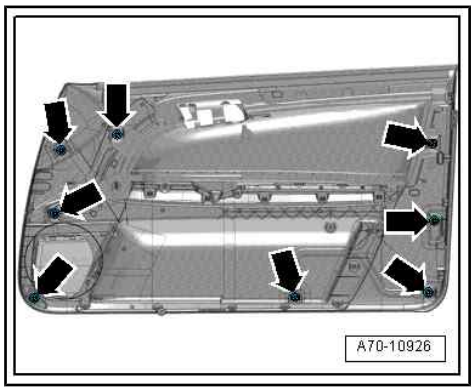
Installing

– Engage end of cable -1- in lever of interior door handle.
• Open side of eyelet at end of cable must face upwards.
– Insert Bowden cable -2- for interior door handle into support bracket.
• Bowden cable must engage audibly in support bracket.



WARNING

- *Make sure that the door is properly sealed when it is installed; otherwise the crash sensor (pressure sensor) may not function correctly.*
- *The door trim clips -arrows- provide a seal for the system. Renew door trim clips if necessary.*
- *Observe precautionary measures for handling crash sensors (pressure sensors) for side airbag ⇒ page 52 .*



– Plug in electrical connector at door control unit with window regulator motor.
– Position door trim at window slot and press on downwards.
– Carefully position clips for door trim on door and press door trim onto door until it engages audibly at anchorage points.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 107

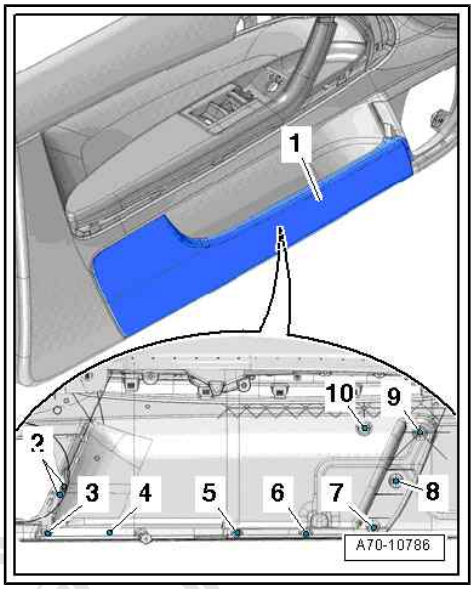
1.5 Removing and installing storage pocket

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 110 .
– Remove mid-range loudspeaker trim ⇒ page 109 .
– Detach insulating mat from bottom of door trim.
– Unscrew bolts -2 ... 10- for storage pocket on reverse side of door trim and detach storage pocket -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 107

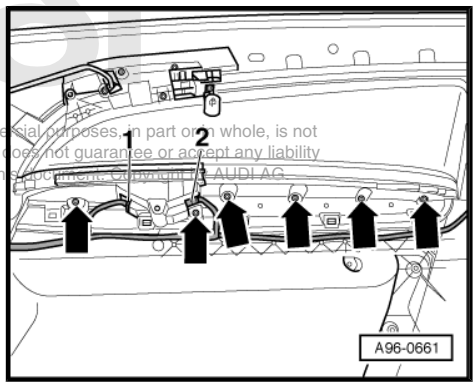
1.6 Removing and installing armrest

Note

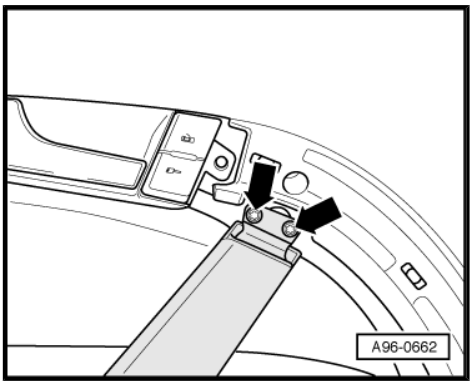
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 110 .
– Remove insulating mat from door trim.
– Unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2-.
– Unscrew bolts -arrows- on reverse side of door trim.



– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach armrest.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 107

1.7 Removing and door puller with switch mounting

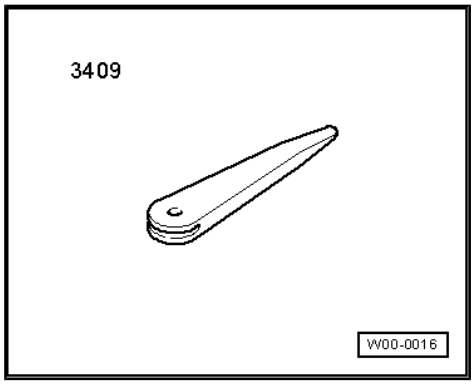
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

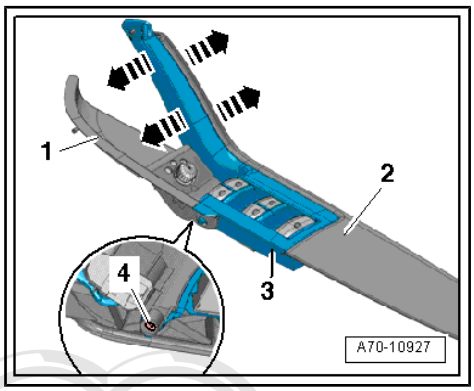
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Removing



– Remove door trim ⇒ page 110 .
– Remove armrest ⇒ page 113 .
– Unscrew bolt -4- and detach trim -1-.
– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully unclip door puller -3- from armrest -2- -arrows-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 107

1.8 Removing and installing interior door handle

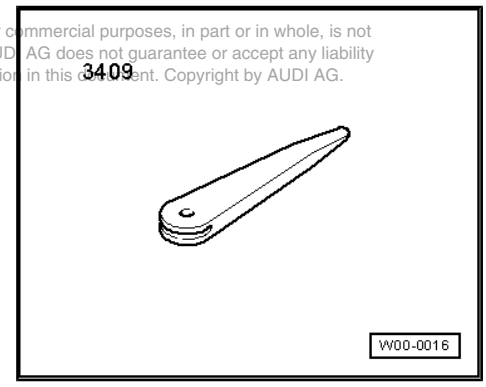
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

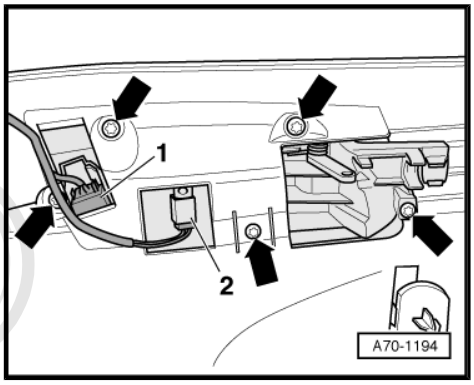
- Removal wedge -3409-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

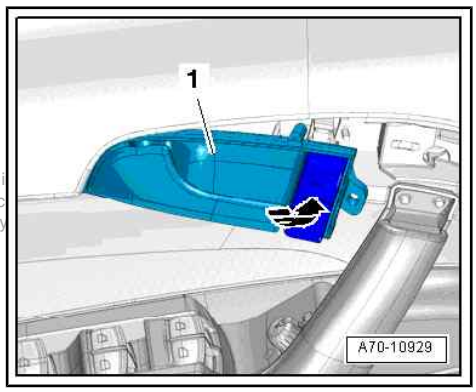


Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 110 .
– Detach insulating mat from top of door trim.
– If fitted, unplug electrical connectors -1- and -2-.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.



– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise interior door handle -1- out of door trim in direction of -arrow- and detach interior door handle.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 107

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or i
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acc
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

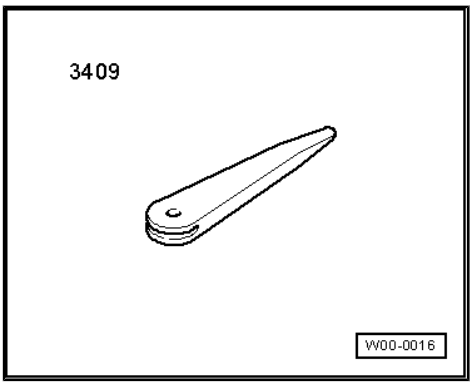
1.9 Removing and installing cover for mirror base

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

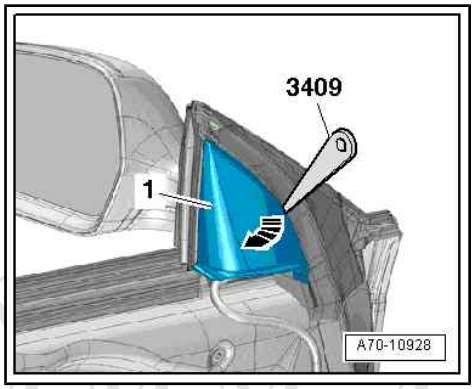
♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

– Remove door trim ⇒ page 110 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to carefully prise cover for mirror base -1- off bracket -arrow- and detach.



Installing

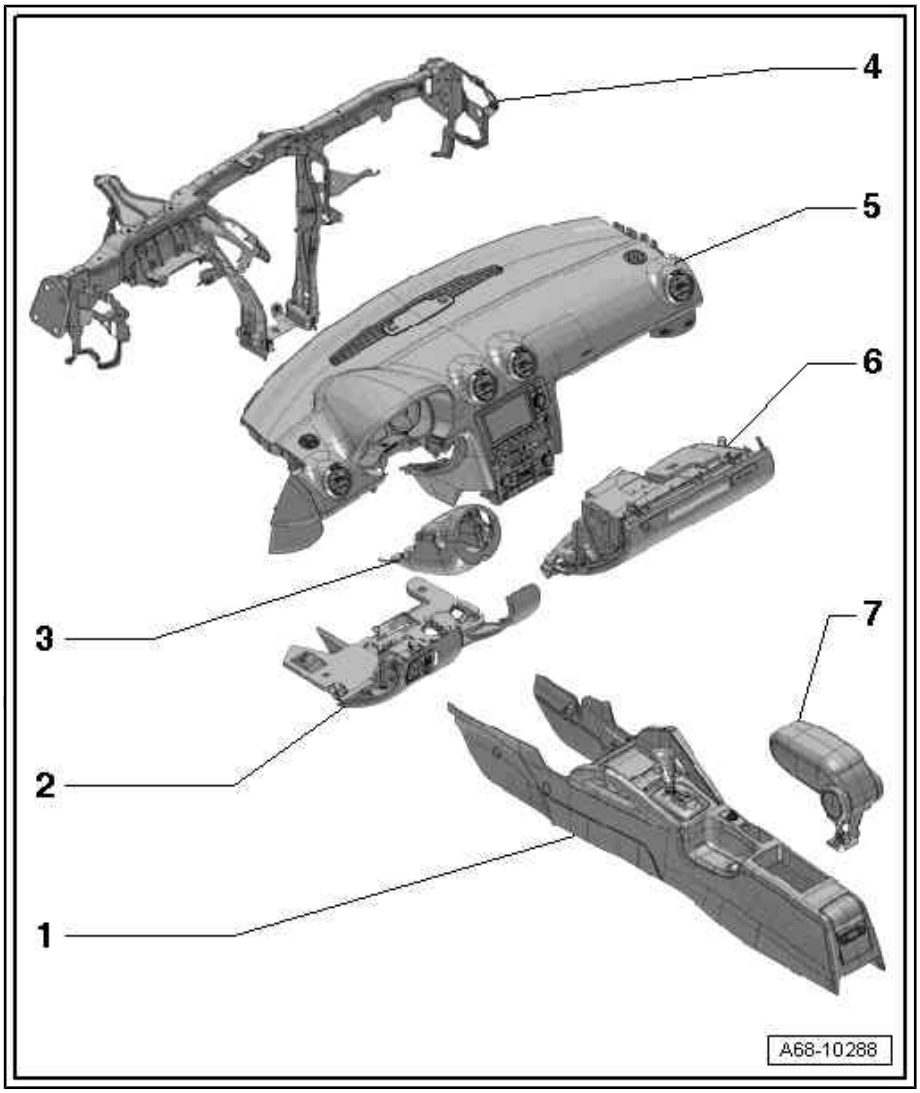
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on cover for mirror base until it engages audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Dash panel

2.1 Overview of dash panel



1 - Centre console

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 15
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 20

2 - Dash panel trim (driver side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 4
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 5

3 - Trim for steering column switch module

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 5
- ❑ Removing and installing trim (top) ⇒ page 7
- ❑ Removing and installing trim (bottom) ⇒ page 8

4 - Central tube for dash panel

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 129
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 133

5 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 118
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124

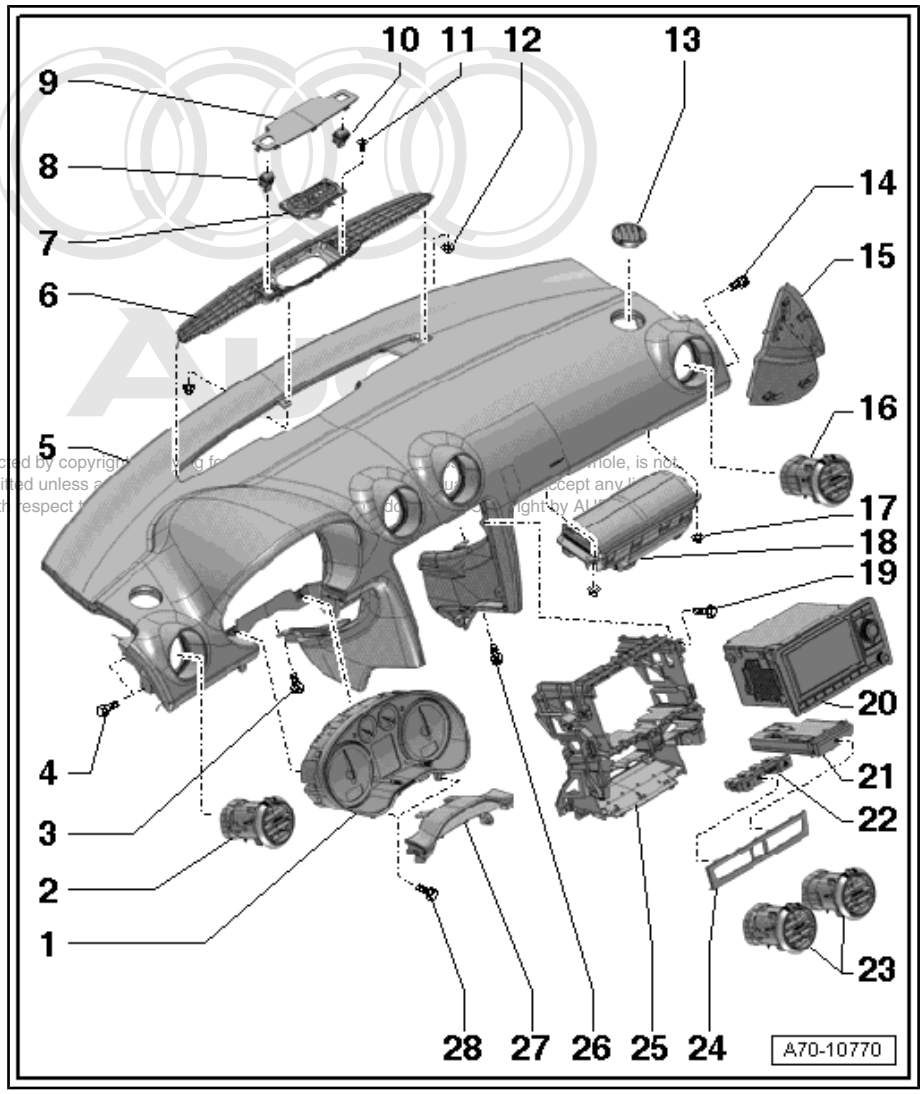
6 - Glove box

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 8
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 11

7 - Centre armrest (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 31
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 32

2.2 Exploded view of dash panel



1 - Instrument cluster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90

2 - Side dash panel vent (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

5 - Dash panel

> **WARNING**
>
> *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
>
> *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124

6 - Top defroster vent (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 128

7 - Mid-range and treble loudspeaker

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91

8 - Sunlight penetration photosensor -G107-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 87

9 - Loudspeaker trim (centre)

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

10 - Central locking deadlock function warning lamp -SAFE- -K133-

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

11 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91

12 - Nut

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ 0.5 Nm

Note

Tighten nuts carefully to prevent securing pins from shearing off at defroster vent.

13 - Side defroster vent (top)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

15 - End trim

- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 120

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

16 - Side dash panel vent (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 121

17 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 87

18 - Airbag (front passenger side)

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 87
- ❑ Can be disabled and activated via key-operated switch
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 89

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

20 - Radio/navigation system

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91

21 - Cup holder/storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 124
- ❑ May include a light, depending on equipment fitted

22 - Switch module

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96

23 - Dash panel vent (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

24 - Trim

- ❑ For switch module
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Clipped in

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 123

25 - Mounting frame

- ❑ For radio/navigation system
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 128

26 - Bolt

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

27 - Trim cover

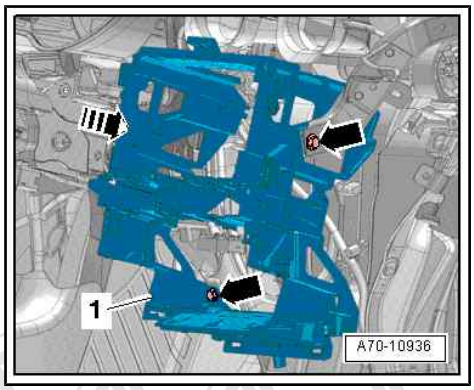
- ❑ For instrument cluster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 6

28 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90

Tightening torque for mounting frame

– Tighten bolts -arrows- to 3.5 Nm.



2.3 Removing and installing dash panel end trim

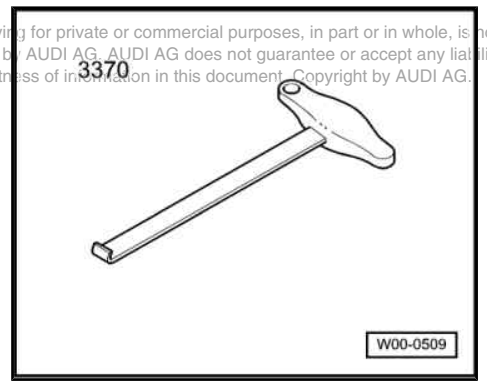
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

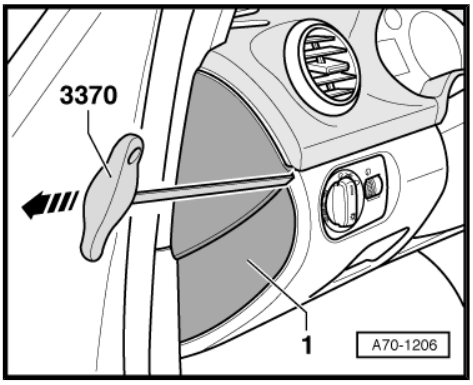
♦ Front-end hook -3370-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Removing

– Use front-end hook -3370- to detach dash panel end trim -1- in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on dash panel end trim until it engages audibly.

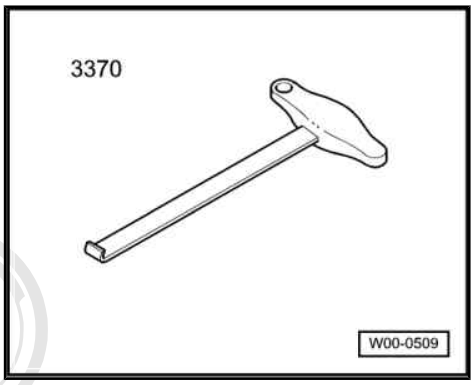
2.4 Removing and installing side defroster vent (top)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

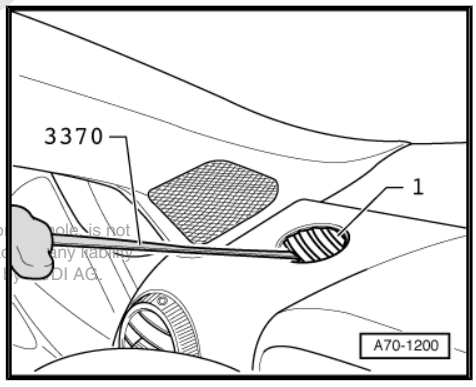
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Front-end hook -3370-



Removing

– Use front-end hook -3370- to carefully lift off defroster vent -1-.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

– Make sure lug at defroster vent is facing hole in dash panel.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

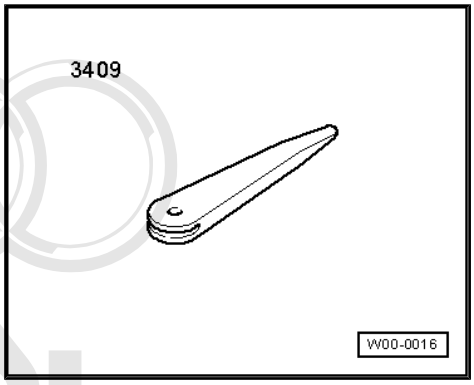
2.5 Removing and installing dash panel vent (side)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

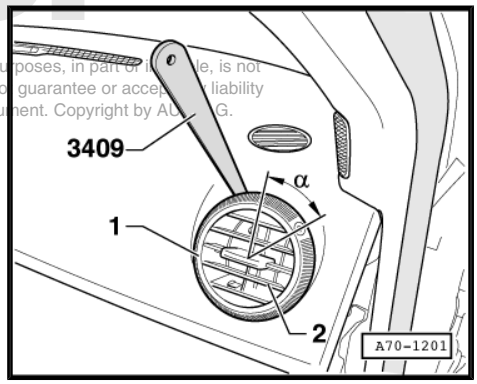
♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

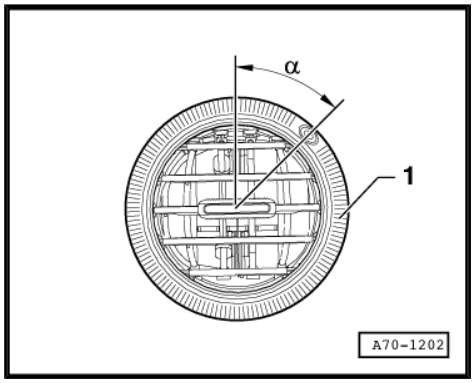
– Turn ring -1- -α-= 45° to right from vertical position.
– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise dash panel vent -2- off dash panel.
– Pull dash panel vent out of dash panel by hand.



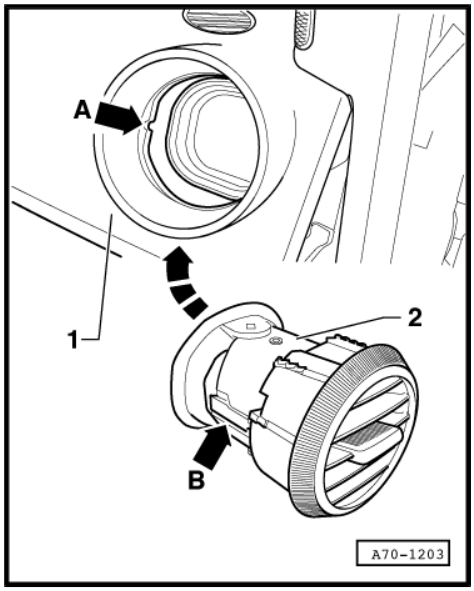
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Turn ring -1- -α-= 45° to right from vertical position.



– When inserting dash panel vent -2- in dash panel -1-, make sure guide -arrow B- engages in recess -arrow A-.
– Push dash panel vent into dash panel as far as it will go in direction of -arrow-.



2.6 Removing and installing dash panel vent (centre)

Removal and installation are described for the dash panel vent at the side. The procedures are similar for the centre dash panel vent.

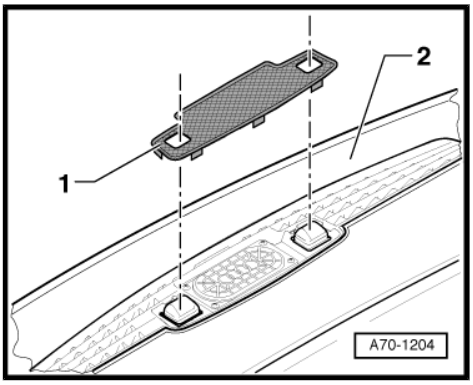
⇒ "2.5 Removing and installing dash panel vent (side)", page 121

2.7 Removing and installing centre loudspeaker trim

Removing

Caution

Proceed carefully when removing and installing the loudspeaker trim as it can break easily.



– Use a flat screwdriver to carefully prise cover -1- above loudspeaker in centre of dash panel off dash panel -2-.

Installing

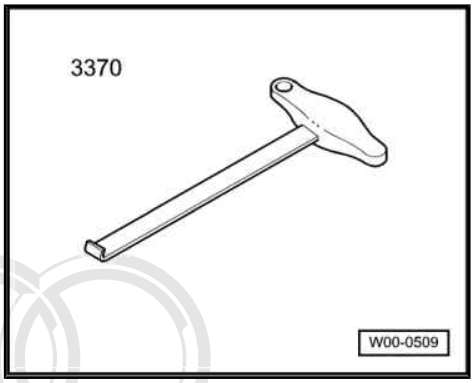
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert loudspeaker trim in dash panel and press on until it engages audibly.

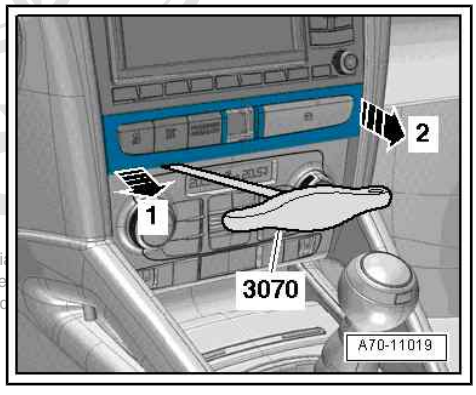
2.8 Removing and installing trim for switch module

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Front-end hook -3370-



Removing



– Remove hazard warning light switch -E3- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 .

– Unclip trim for switch module -arrow 1- and -arrow 2- with front-end hook -3370- .

– Detach trim for switch module.

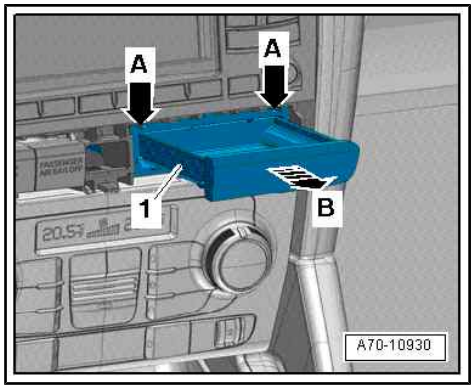
Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on trim for switch module until it engages audibly.

2.9 Removing and installing cup holder/storage compartment



Removing

- Switch off all electrical equipment.
- Remove ignition key.
- Remove trim for switch module ⇒ page 123 .
- Open cup holder/storage compartment -1- and press retaining tabs -arrows A- down with a small flat screwdriver.
- Pull cup holder/storage compartment as far as possible out of dash panel -arrow B-.
- Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector.
- Remove cup holder/storage compartment from dash panel.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Press cup holder/storage compartment on until it engages audibly.

2.10 Removing and installing dash panel

Removing

- Move steering wheel down and to rear as far as possible, using full range of steering column adjuster.
- Operate seat longitudinal adjustment handles, move front seats as far back as possible and move backrests to 45° position.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .*

- With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
- Remove airbag (driver side) ⇒ Rep. Gr. 69 .
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48 .
- Remove trim cover for instrument cluster ⇒ page 6 .
- Remove instrument cluster ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90 .
- Remove radio/navigation system ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91 .
- If fitted, remove telephone bracket -R126- from dash panel ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91 .
- Remove trim for switch module ⇒ page 123 .
- Remove cup holder/storage compartment ⇒ page 124 .
- Remove switch module ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 .
- Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ page 5 .
- Remove centre console ⇒ page 20 .

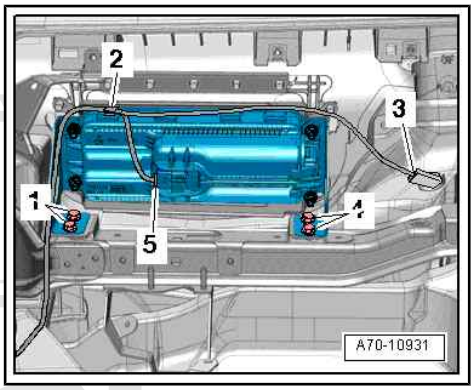
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove Climatronic control unit -J255- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 87 .
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (top) ⇒ page 139 .
– Remove glove box ⇒ page 11 .
– Remove support for dash panel ⇒ page 133 .

WARNING

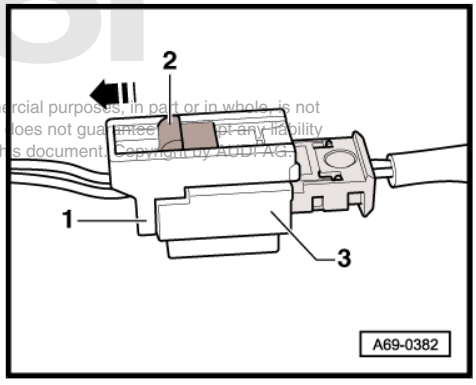
Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Unplug electrical connector -5- for airbag unit (front passenger side).

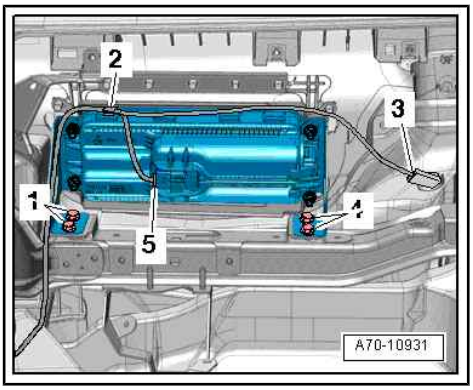


– To do so, pull catch -2- in direction of -arrow- and disconnect electrical connectors -1- and -3-.

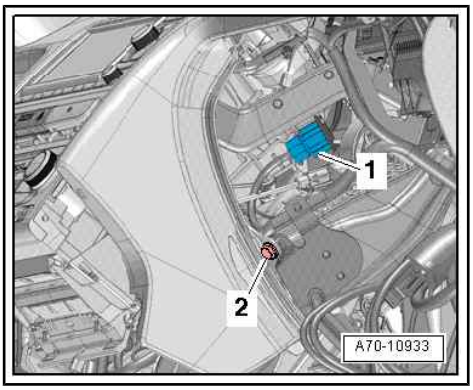
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



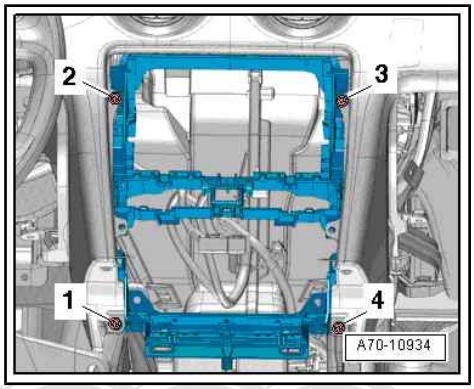
– Unclip cable retainer -2- at guide for airbag unit.
– Unplug electrical connector -3- for vent temperature sender at air duct (left and right).
– Unscrew bolts -1- and -4- from bracket for airbag unit (front passenger side).



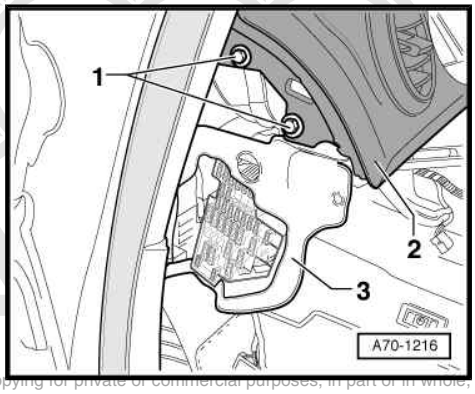
– Unplug electrical connector -1- for sunlight penetration photo-sensor -G107- , central locking deadlock function warning lamp -SAFE- -K133- and loudspeaker.
– Unscrew bolt -2- for dash panel (left and right).



– Remove bolts -1 ... 4- for dash panel at central tube for dash panel (centre).



– Unscrew bolts -1- (left and right) securing dash panel -2- to central tube -3-.



Note

A second mechanic is required for detaching the dash panel.

– Carefully detach dash panel from central tube for dash panel towards rear.

– Take dash panel out of passenger compartment and set it down on a soft surface.

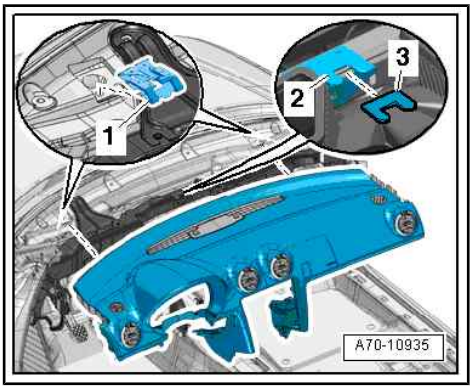
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

For correct allocation of dash panel and airbag refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue .



– Check whether plastic cap -3- has been fitted on centring element -2- at central tube (if not, attach plastic cap).
– When inserting dash panel, make sure clips -1- engage in box-shaped sections on underside of dash panel.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Align dash panel and tighten bolts.
– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

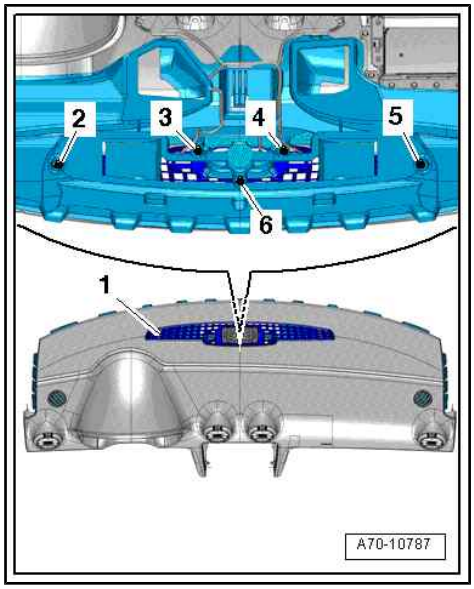
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 118

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.11 Removing and installing top defroster vent (centre)



Removing

- Remove dash panel ⇒ page 124 .
- Remove loudspeaker trim (centre) ⇒ page 123 .
- Equipment version with loudspeaker: Remove mid-range and treble loudspeaker (centre) in dash panel ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91 .
- Remove sunlight penetration photosensor -G107- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 87 .
- Remove central locking deadlock function warning lamp - SAFE- -K133- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 .
- Unscrew nuts -2 ... 6- on underside of dash panel.
- Lift top defroster vent (centre) -1- off dash panel.

Installing

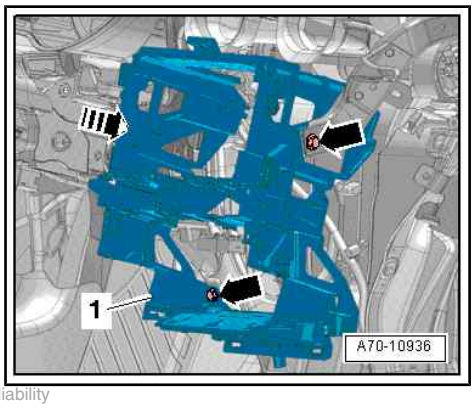
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

When tightening the nuts, make sure that the distance between the top of the dash panel and the top edge of the top centre defroster vent is the same and that gap width is the same all around.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 118

2.12 Removing and installing mounting frame for radio/navigation system



Removing

- Remove dash panel ⇒ page 124 .
- Remove bolts -arrows- and detach mounting frame -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

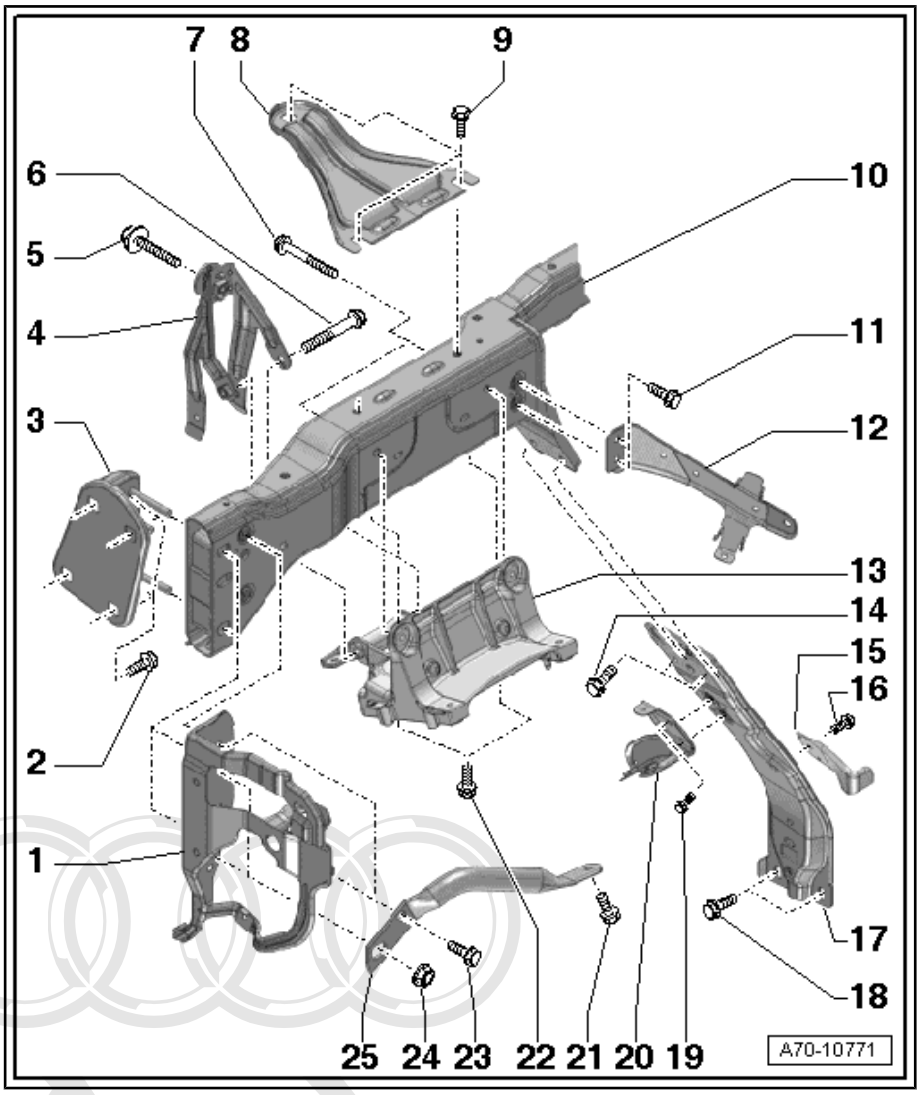
Tightening torque ⇒ page 120

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Central tube for dash panel

3.1 Exploded view of central tube for dash panel

Part 1 (left-side)



1 - Bracket
- ❑ For dash panel

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 26 Nm

3 - Retaining bracket
- ❑ For central tube
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 137

4 - Strut (bottom)
- ❑ With compensating element
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

5 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

6 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

8 - Strut (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ "3.3 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel", page 133

9 - Bolt
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 20 Nm

10 - Central tube
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 133

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Bracket (top)
- ❑ For mounting frame

13 - Mounting bracket
- ❑ For steering column
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

14 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

15 - Bracket (bottom)
- ❑ For mounting frame

16 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

17 - Support (left-side)
- ❑ For central tube

18 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 23 Nm

19 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

20 - Retaining bracket (driver side)
- ❑ For dash panel trim

21 - Bolt
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

22 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48

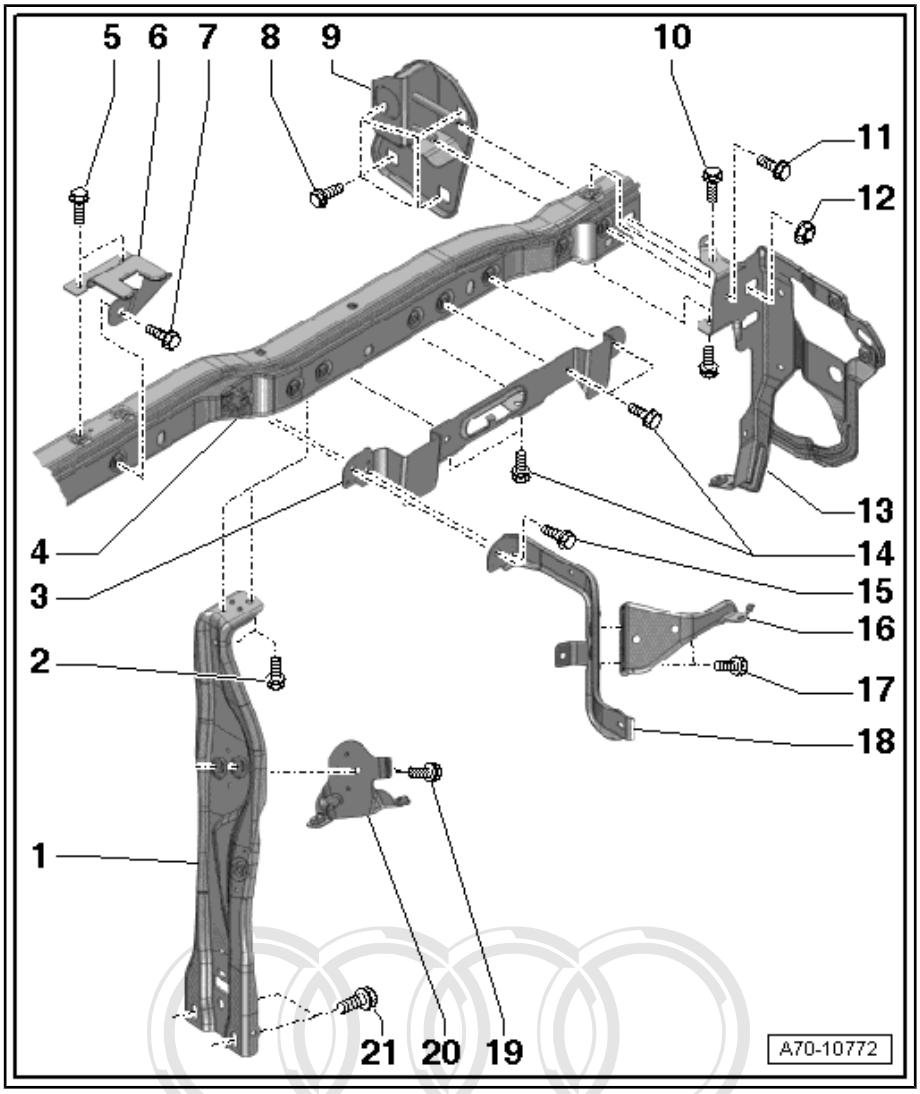
23 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

24 - Nut
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 23 Nm

25 - Brace

Part 2 (right-side)

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Support (right-side)
- ❑ For central tube

2 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

3 - Support
- ❑ For airbag unit (front passenger side)

4 - Central tube
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 133

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

6 - Centring element
- ❑ With plastic bearing

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

8 - Bolt
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 26 Nm

9 - Retaining bracket
- ❑ For central tube
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 137

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

11 - Bolt
- ❑ 9 Nm

12 - Nut
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 23 Nm

13 - Bracket
- ❑ For dash panel

14 - Bolts
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 9 Nm

15 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

16 - Support
- ❑ For dash panel
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 133

17 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- ❑ 3.5 Nm

18 - Bracket

- ❑ For mounting frame

19 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 9 Nm

20 - Retaining bracket

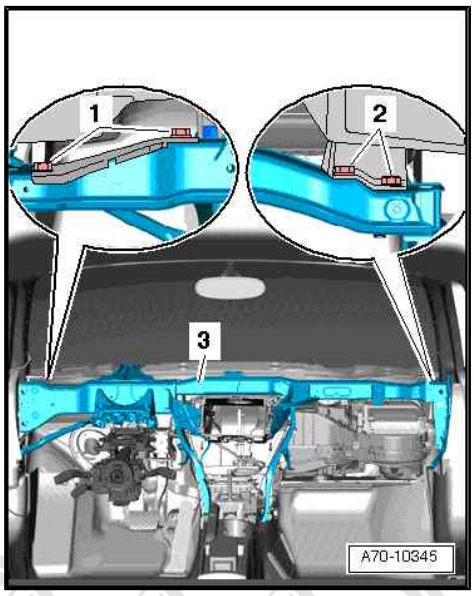
- ❑ For glove box

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 23 Nm

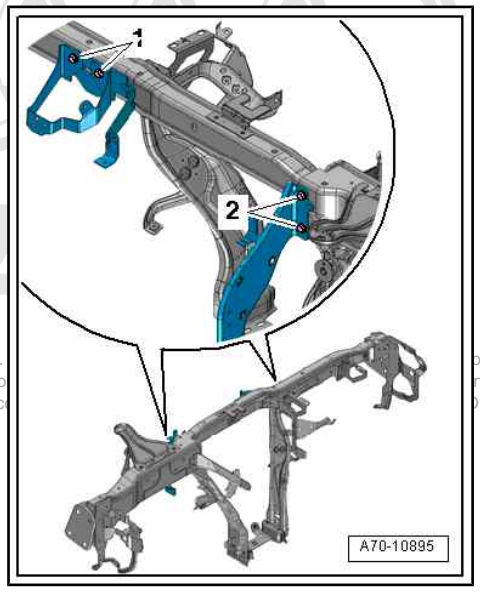
Tightening torque for cable guide to central tube

– Tighten bolts -1- and -2- to 4.5 Nm.



Tightening torque for retainer for air conditioning unit to central tube

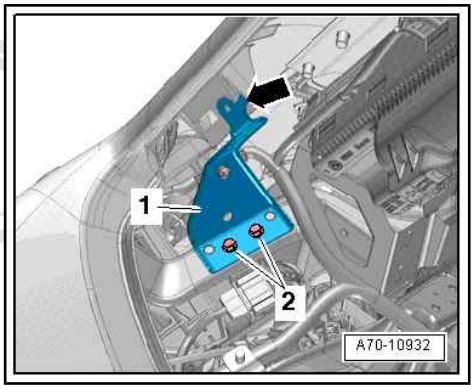
– Tighten bolts -1- and -2- to 8 Nm.



Protected by copyright. ble, is not
permitted unless autho ny liability
with respect to the c DI AG.

3.2 Removing and installing support for dash panel

Removing



– Remove glove box ⇒ page 11 .
– Remove bolts -2- for support at bracket for mounting frame.
– Disengage support -1- at dash panel -arrow- and detach.

Installing

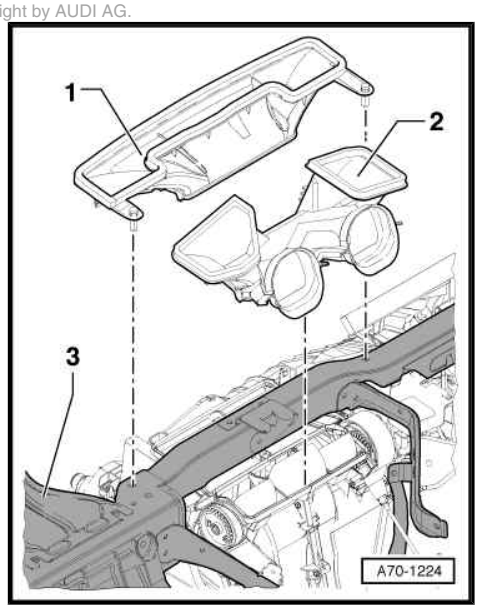
Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 129

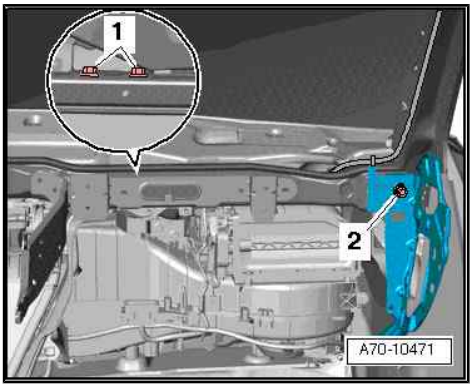
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.3 Removing and installing central tube for dash panel

Removing

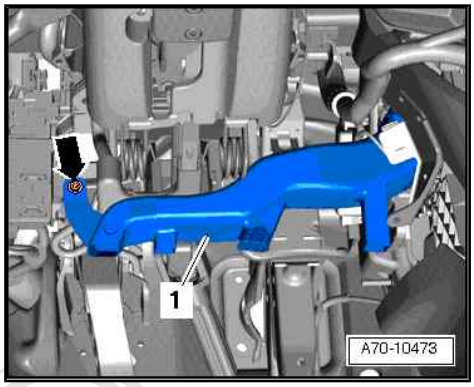


– Remove dash panel ⇒ page 124 .
– Lift off air duct (centre) -2-.
– Use screwdriver to press in clamping pins approx. 5 mm and release fasteners from lugs of air duct for defroster vent -1-.
– Lift air duct for defroster vent upwards off central tube -3-.

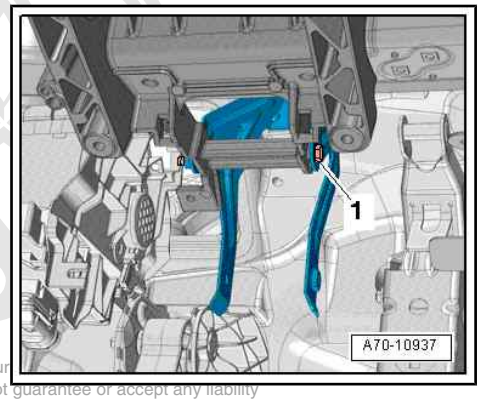


– Remove bolts -1- for retainer for air conditioning unit at central tube.
– Unscrew nut -2- for central tube.
– Remove data bus diagnostic interface -J533- and move to one side ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90 .
– Remove control unit for headlight range control -J431- ; electrical connector does not have to be unplugged ⇒ Rep. Gr. 94 .
– Leave control unit for headlight range control -J431- in vehicle with electrical wiring connected.

– Unscrew bolt -arrow- and detach air duct -1-.
– Remove steering column ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48 .

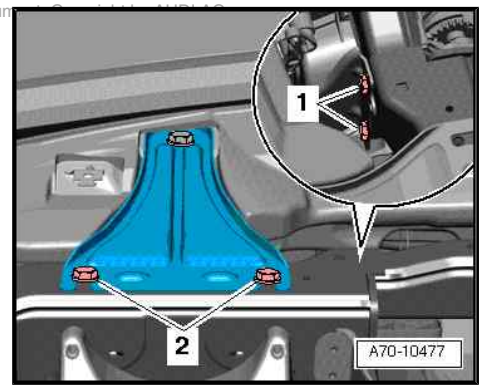


– Unscrew bolt -1- for strut (bottom) at mounting bracket for steering column.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial pur
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this docum

– Remove bolts -2- from strut (top).
– Remove bolts -1- for retainer for air conditioning unit at central tube.
– Remove fuse holder in dash panel (left-side) ⇒ Rep. Gr. 97 .
– Lay fuse holder to side with wiring harness connected.

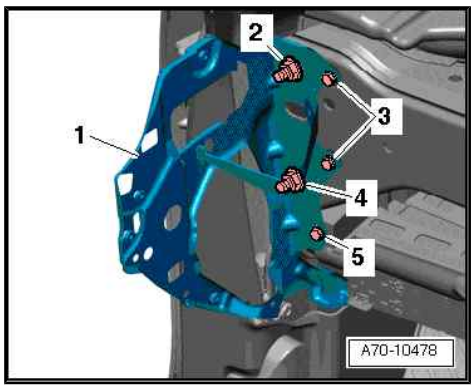


– Remove bolts -3- and -5-.
– Unscrew nuts -2- and -4- and detach bracket -1- for dash panel.

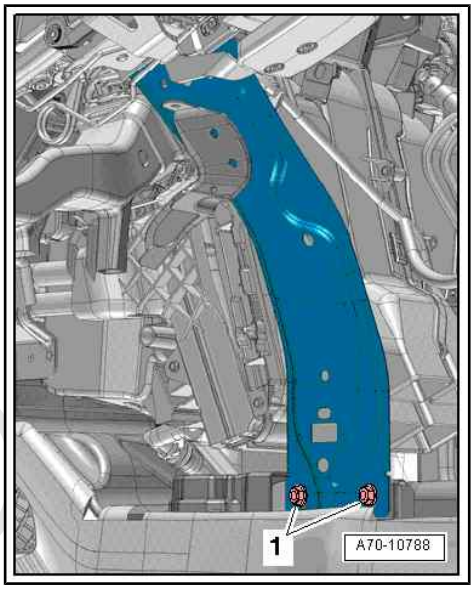
Caution

Mark the vertical and side positions at the central tube for re-installation.

– Unclip electrical wiring at central tube and move clear.

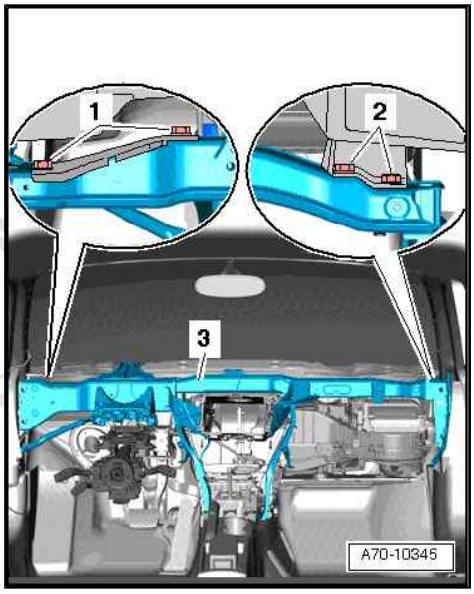


– Remove bolts -1- for central tube support (left and right).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Pull central tube -3- with cable guide as far as possible off bulkhead towards rear.
– Remove bolts -1- for front cable guide (left-side) at central tube.
– Remove bolts -2- for front cable guide (right-side) at central tube.



Note

A second mechanic is required to detach central tube for dash panel.

– Pull out central tube for dash panel from stud at A-pillar (driver side and passenger side).
– Carefully swivel top of central tube for dash panel to rear and at the same time pull it upwards.
– Take central tube for dash panel out of passenger compartment.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

– Carefully insert central tube for dash panel in body.
– Bolt front cable guides (left and right) to central tube.
– Align central tube for dash panel with A-pillar in accordance with marks for central tube (made during removal).
– Tighten nuts (left and right) for central tube for dash panel.

Further installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

– Install steering column ⇒ Rep. Gr. 48 .
– Install control unit for headlight range control -J431- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 94 .
– Install data bus diagnostic interface -J533- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 90 .
– Install fuse holder at dash panel (left-side) ⇒ Rep. Gr. 97 .

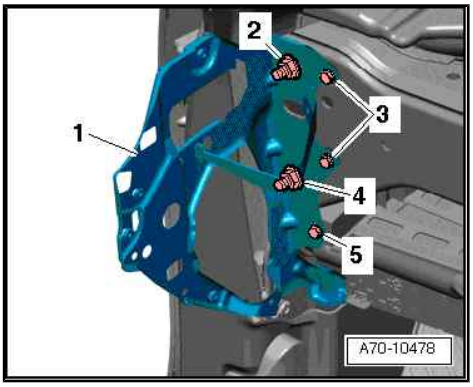
Checking installation position of central tube for dash panel

– Insert dash panel to try if it fits correctly.
– Bolt dash panel(left and right) to central tube for dash panel.
– Close doors.
– Check whether gap between dash panel and door is the same on left and right.
– Check whether height of dash panel coincides with recesses in door trim.

If setting is not OK:

– Note down lateral and/or vertical deviation.
– Remove dash panel again.
– Unscrew bolts on central tube for dash panel.
– Adjust central tube for dash panel in accordance with notes on deviations.

– Tighten nuts -2- and -4- (left and right) for central tube for dash panel.
– Switch on ignition.



WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

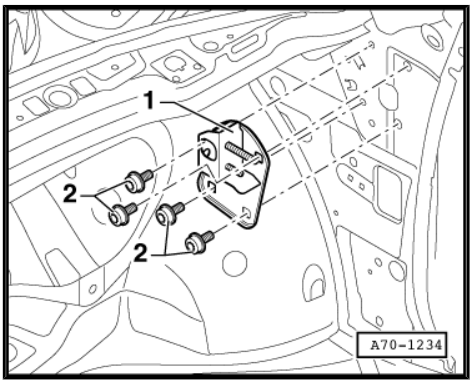
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 129 , ⇒ page 132 and ⇒ page 132 .

3.4 Removing and installing retaining brackets for central tube for dash panel

Removing



– Remove central tube for dash panel ⇒ page 133 .
– Mark position of retaining bracket -1- on body.
– Unscrew bolts -2- and detach retaining bracket.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

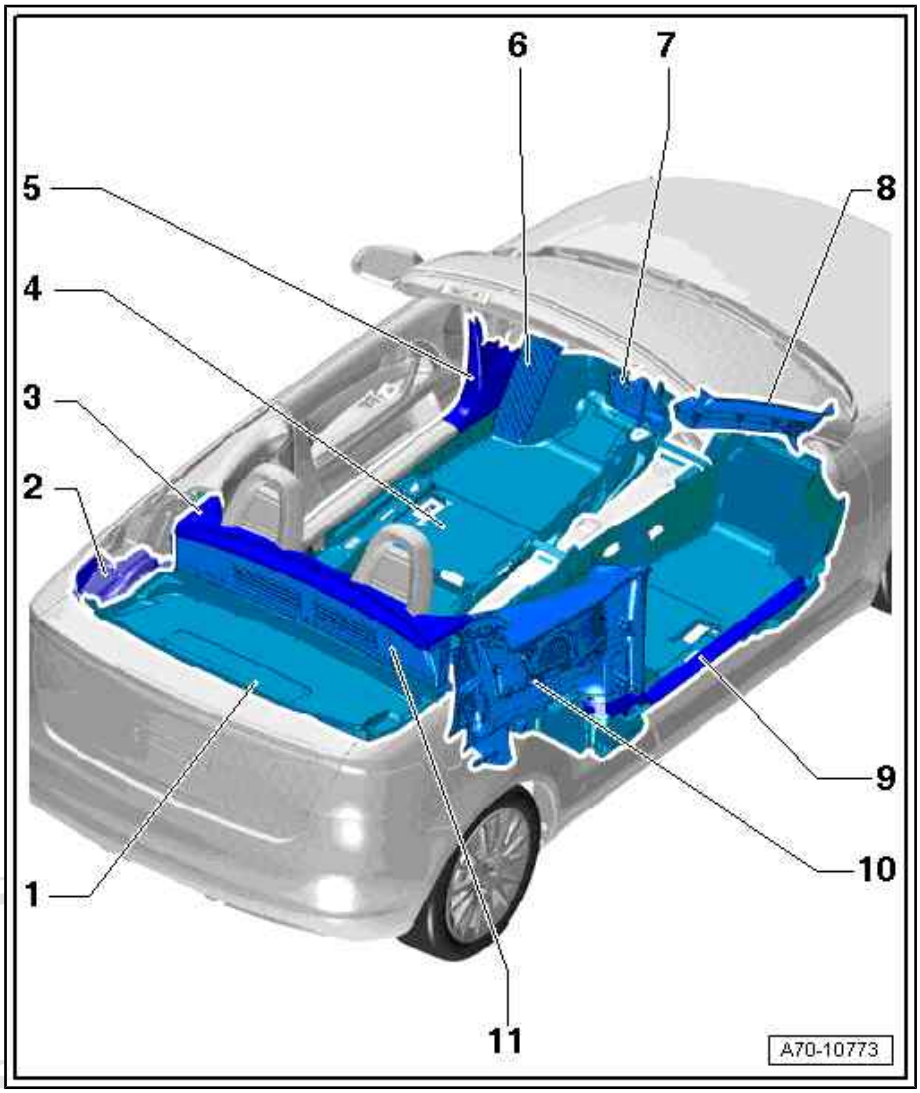
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When installing retaining bracket, refer to mark made earlier for position of retaining bracket on body.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 129

4 Passenger compartment trim

4.1 Overview of trim panels



1 - Convertible roof compartment trim (centre)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 159
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

2 - Convertible roof compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 159
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 161

3 - Back panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 153
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 155

4 - Floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 156
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159

5 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 140
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141

6 - Foot rest

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 142
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 143

7 - Steering column trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 156
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

8 - A-pillar trim (top)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 139
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 139

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

9 - Sill panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 144
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 145

10 - Side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 146
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

11 - Convertible roof compartment trim (front)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 159

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

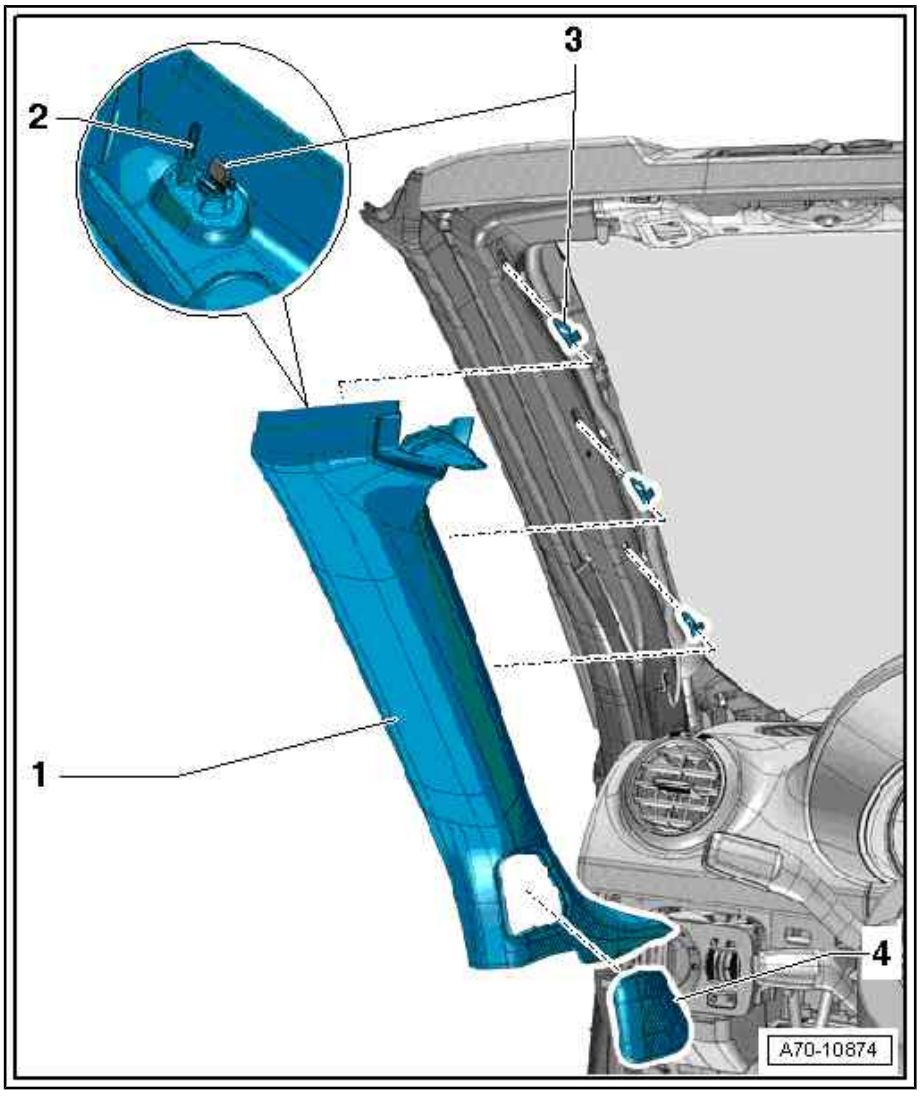
4.2 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (top)

1 - A-pillar trim (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 139

2 - Centring pin

3 - Clip
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

4 - Trim
- ❑ For treble loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91



4.3 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (top)

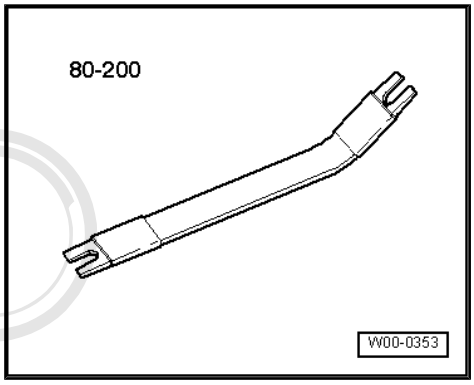
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

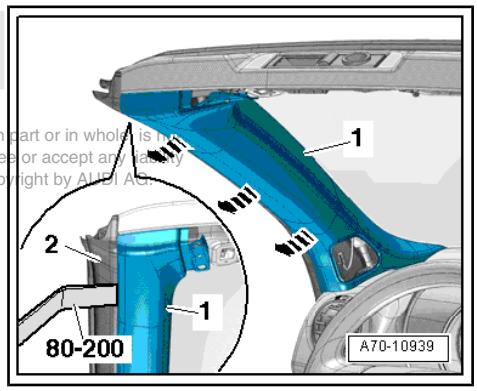
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing

– Remove roof frame trim (bottom) ⇒ page 178 .
– Pull A-pillar trim (top) -1- off A-pillar by hand at rubber seal -2- until removal lever -80 - 200- can be applied at upper retaining clip.
– Press retaining clips out of A-pillar one after the other -arrows- using removal lever -80 - 200- .
– If fitted, unplug electrical connector at treble loudspeaker.
– Pull A-pillar trim (top) out of dash panel and detach.



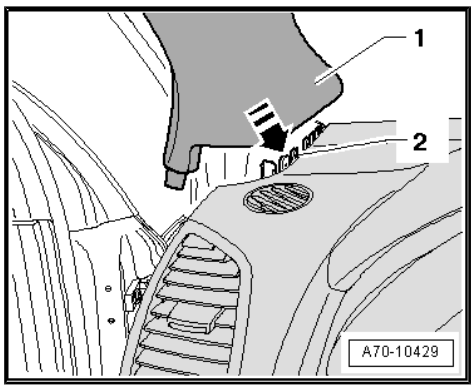
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Insert A-pillar trim (top) -1- in mounting -2- for dash panel and A-pillar trim (bottom) -arrow-.
– Clip in A-pillar trim (top) and fold over lip of door seal.



4.4 Exploded view of A-pillar trim (bottom)

1 - Clip

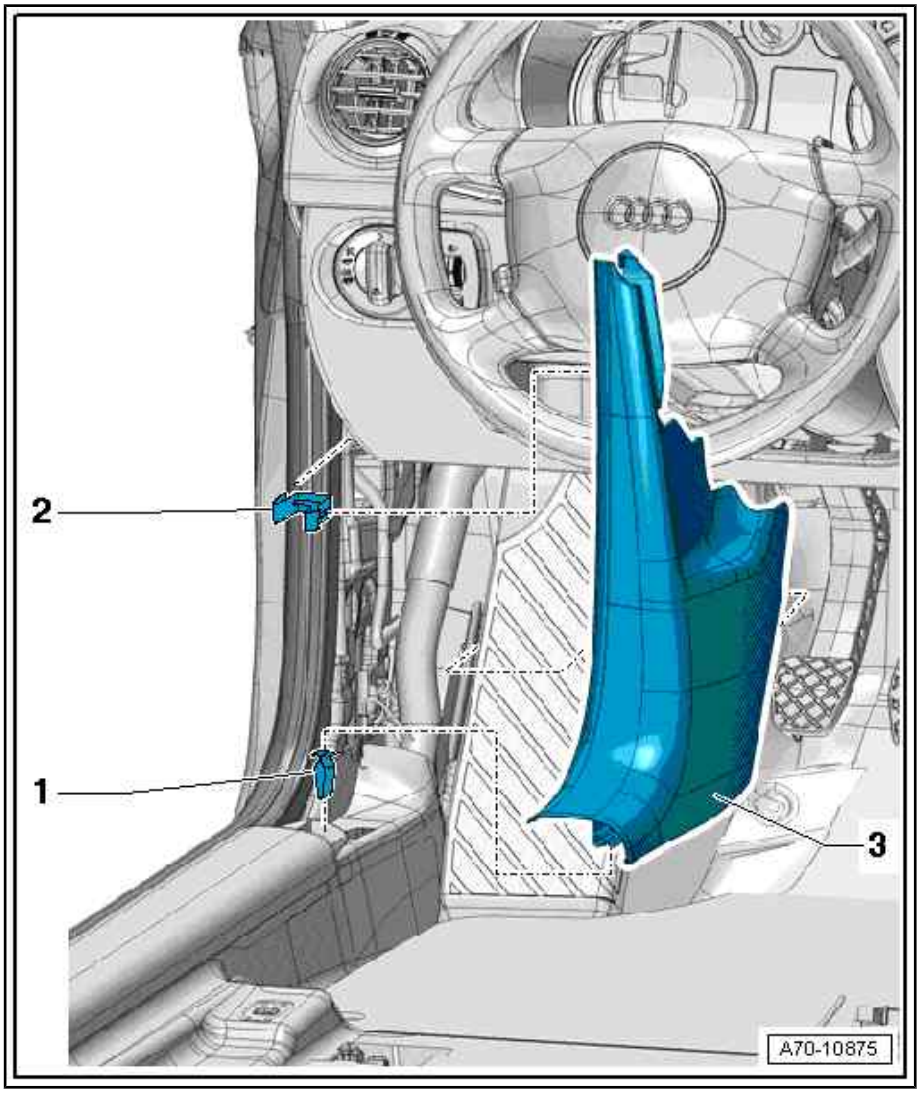
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

2 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in body
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

3 - A-pillar trim (bottom)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 141



4.5 Removing and installing A-pillar trim (bottom)

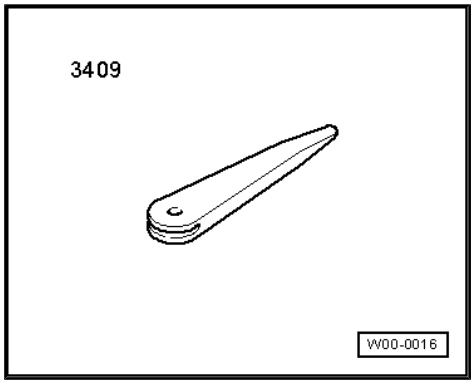
Note

Removal and installation are described for the driver side. The procedures for removal and installation are similar for the passenger side.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

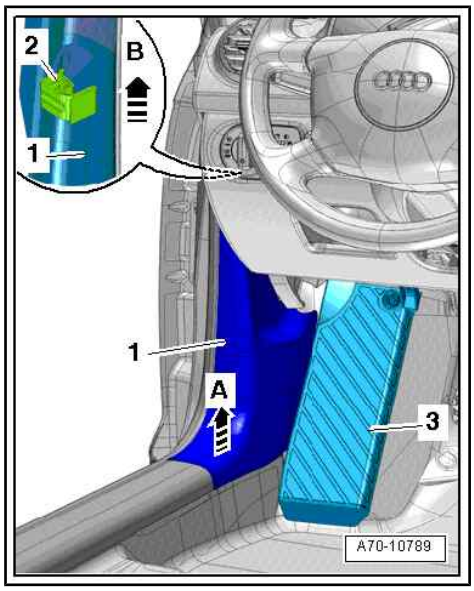
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

– Remove dash panel end trim ⇒ page 120 .
– Unclip A-pillar trim (bottom) -1- from sill panel -arrow A- using removal wedge -3409- .
– Lift A-pillar trim (bottom) out of clip -2- on A-pillar -arrow B- and remove from foot rest -3- towards rear.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

Note

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

Driver side:

– Insert A-pillar trim (bottom) in foot rest -3-.

Both sides of vehicle (continued):

– Clip A-pillar trim (bottom) into sill panel and fold over lip of door seal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.6 Exploded view of foot rest cover and bracket

1 - Cover
- ❑ For foot rest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 143

2 - Clip
- ❑ Insert in foot rest

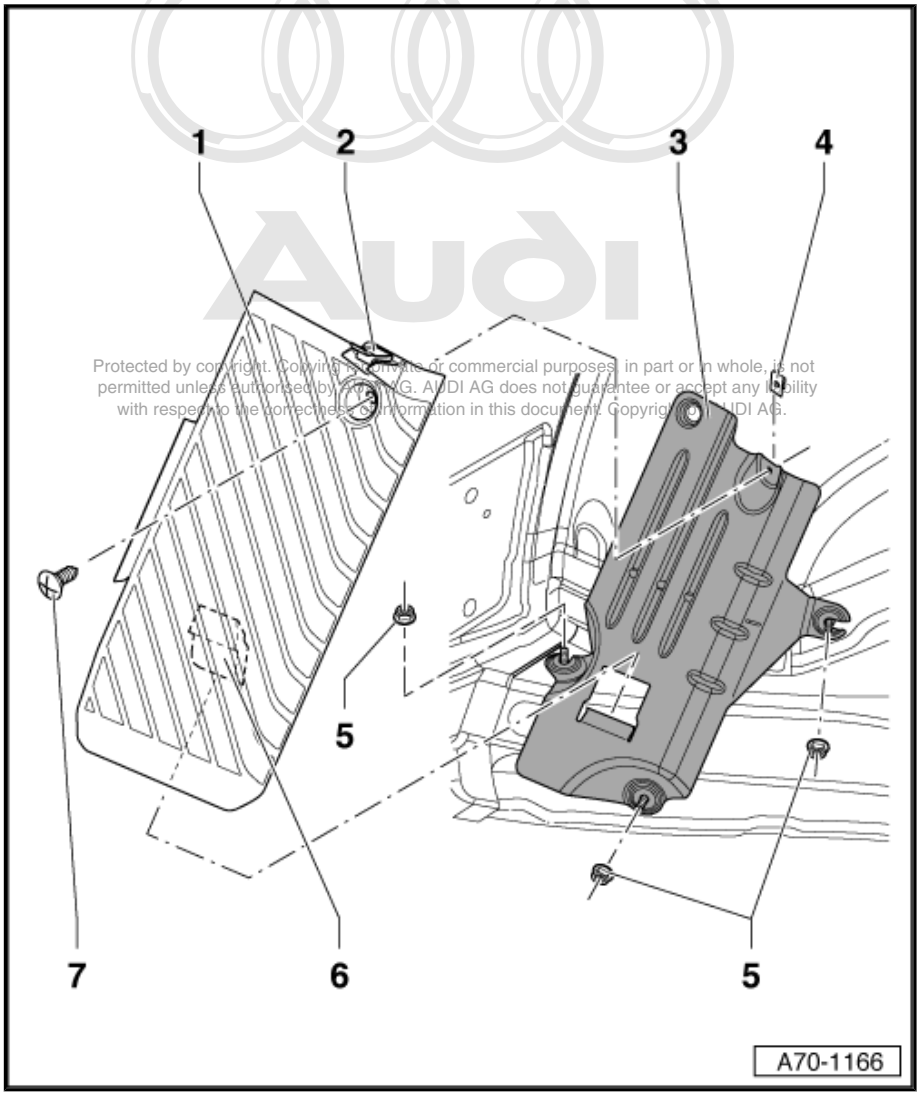
3 - Bracket
- ❑ For foot rest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 144

4 - Speed nut

5 - Nuts
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

6 - Tab
- ❑ Fixed component of foot rest cover

7 - Bolt
- ❑ 2 Nm

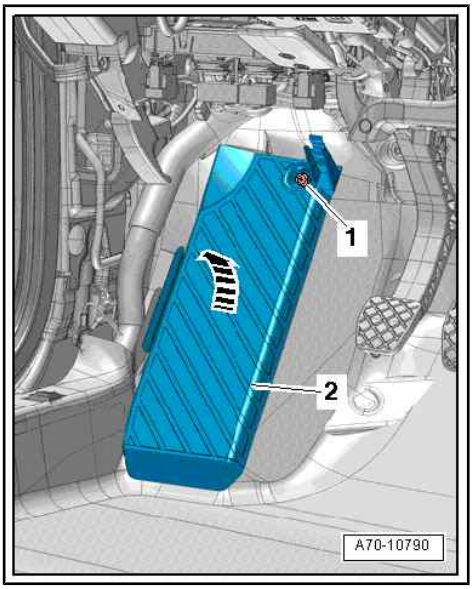


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright © AUDI AG.

4.7 Removing and installing foot rest cover

Removing

– Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ page 5 .
– Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 141 .
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Slide foot rest cover -2- upwards -arrow- until lug becomes disengaged from opening in foot rest bracket.
– Take out foot rest cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

– Make sure lug engages properly in opening in foot rest bracket.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 142

4.8 Removing and installing foot rest bracket

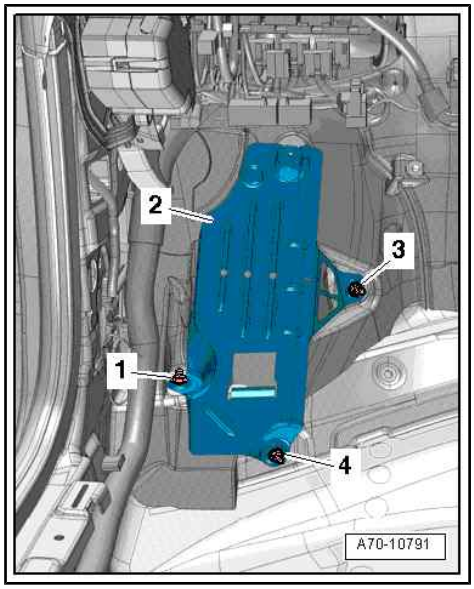
Removing

– Remove foot rest cover ⇒ page 143 .
– Fold back floor covering in area of foot rest and unscrew nuts -1, 3, 4-.
– Take out foot rest bracket -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 142

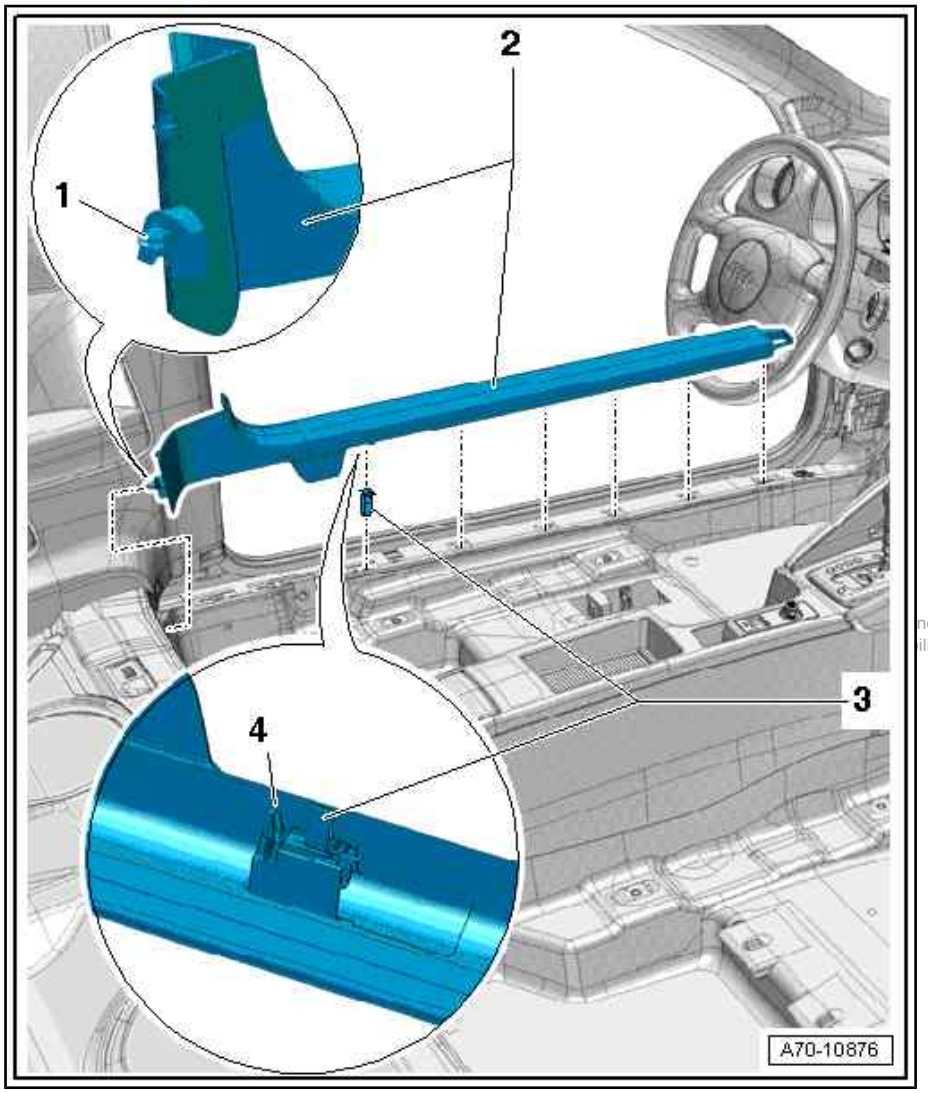


4.9 Exploded view of sill panel trim

1 - Clip
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

2 - Sill panel trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 145

3 - Clip
- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in sill panel trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed



4 - Centring pin

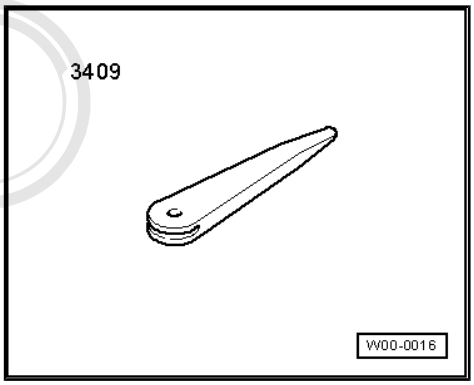
4.10 Removing and installing sill panel trim

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

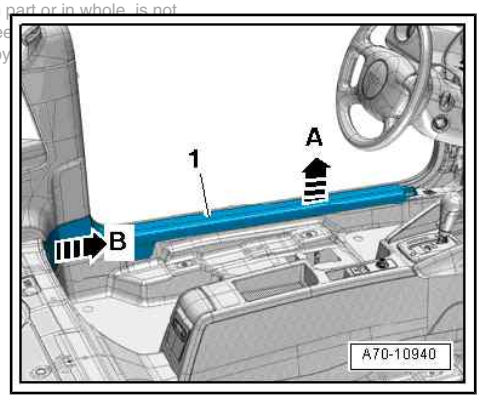
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

Removing



– Remove A-pillar trim (bottom) ⇒ page 141 .
– Starting at front, use removal wedge -3409- to unclip sill panel trim -1- from sill panel -arrow A-.
– Unclip sill panel trim at rear and disengage from side trim -arrow B-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *If there are still clips for the sill panel trim in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the sill panel trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Engage sill panel trim in side trim and press onto sill panel until it engages audibly.
– Fold over lip of door seal.

4.11 Exploded view of side trim

1 - Armrest in side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148

2 - Trim
- ❑ For mid-range and bass loudspeaker
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 147

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2.8 Nm

4 - Mounting
- ❑ For windbreak

5 - Mounting
- ❑ For windbreak

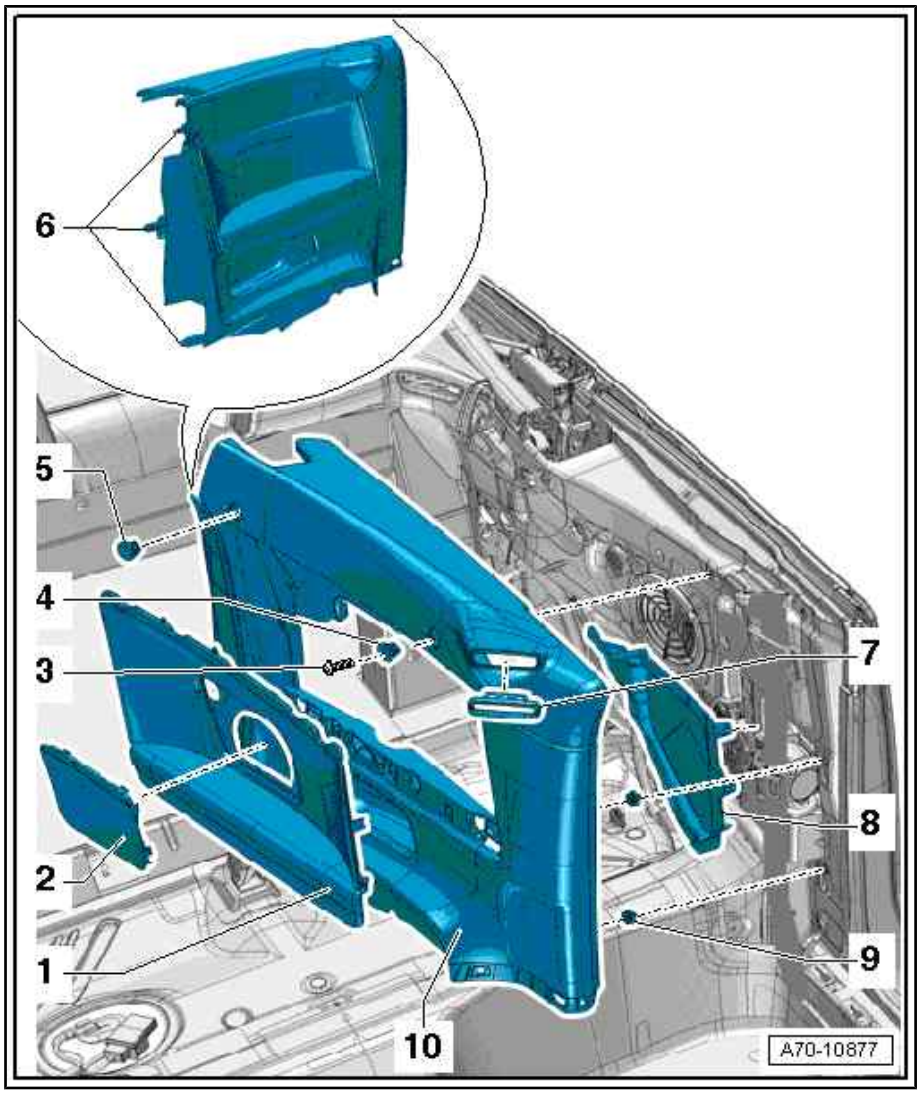
6 - Centring pin

7 - Belt exit point trim (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 146

8 - Cover
- ❑ For window regulator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 149

9 - Clip with seal
- ❑ For side trim
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Renew if damaged

10 - Side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 148



4.12 Removing and installing belt exit point trim (front)

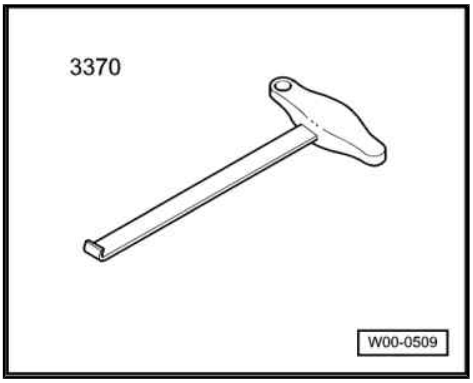
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

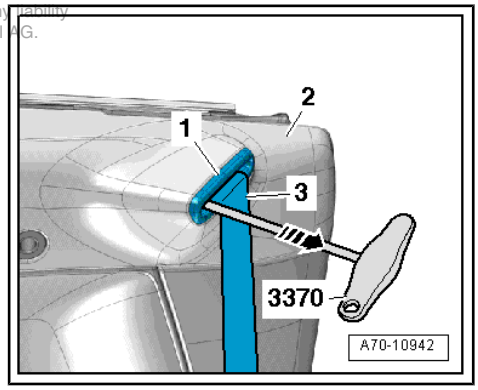
♦ Front-end hook -3370-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

– Remove guide rail for belt strap (front) ⇒ page 64 .
– Pull belt exit point trim (front) -1- out of side trim -2- -arrow- using front-end hook -3370- .
– Thread out belt -3- with latch plate through belt exit point trim and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

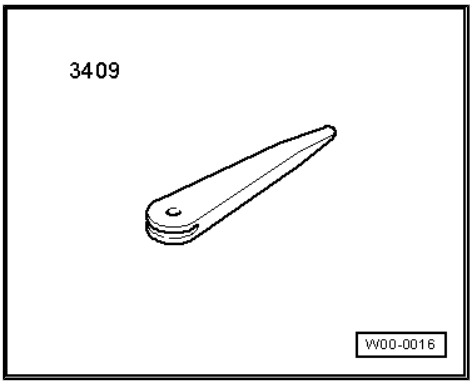
4.13 Removing and installing mid-range and bass loudspeaker trim

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



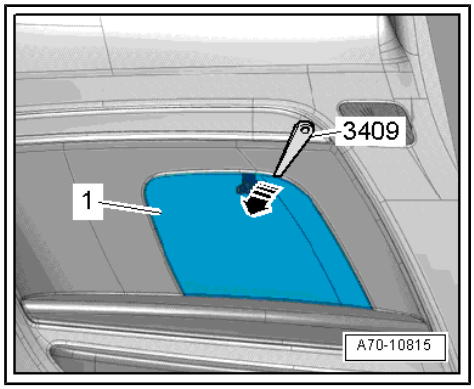
Removing

– Starting at top, unclip trim -1- for mid-range and bass loudspeaker -arrow- using removal wedge -3409- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on mid-range and bass loudspeaker trim until it engages audibly.



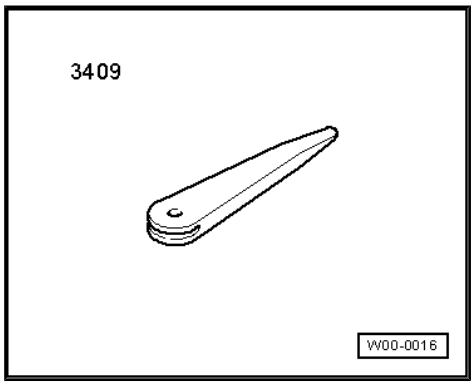
4.14 Removing and installing armrest in side trim

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

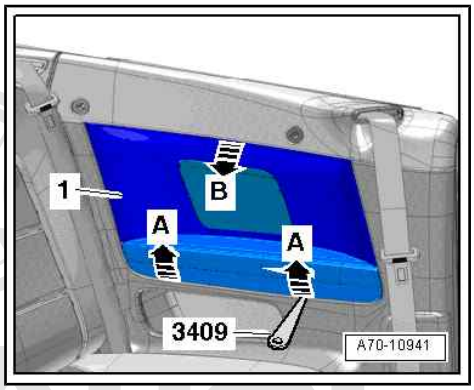
– Starting at bottom, unclip armrest -1- in side trim -arrows A- using removal wedge -3409- .

– Pull armrest downwards out of side trim -arrow B- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press armrest into side trim until it engages audibly.



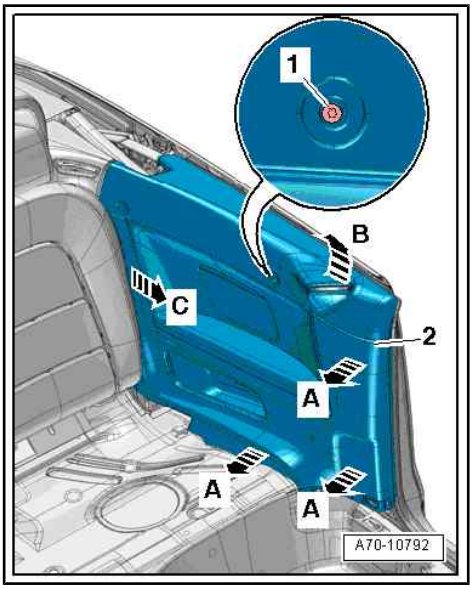
4.15 Removing and installing side trim

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing



– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 145 .
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 261 .
– Remove guide rail for belt strap (front) ⇒ page 64 .
– Remove bolt -1-.
– Starting at bottom, unclip side trim -2- -arrows A-.
– Disengage side trim at top of side panel -arrow B- and pull towards front out of guide on body -arrow C-.
– Thread out belt with latch plate through belt exit point trim and detach side trim.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

♦ *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*

♦ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.*

– Thread in belt with latch plate through belt exit point trim.
– Install guide rail for belt strap (front) ⇒ page 64 .
– Insert guides for side trim (rear) into guide on body.
– Engage side trim at top of side panel and press on until all mounting points engage audibly.
– Fold lip of door seal over side trim.

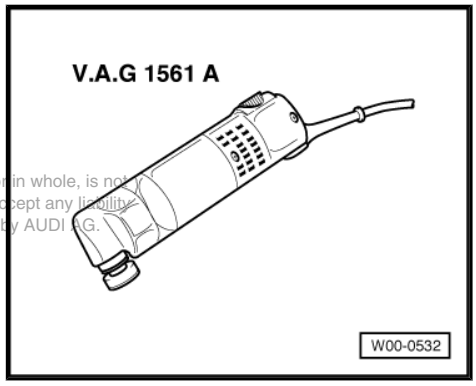
4.16 Removing and installing cover for window regulator

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

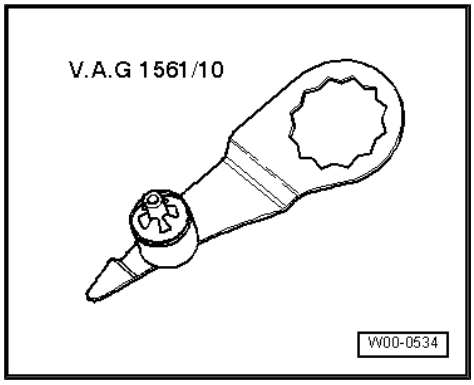
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Electric cutter -V.A.G 1561A-

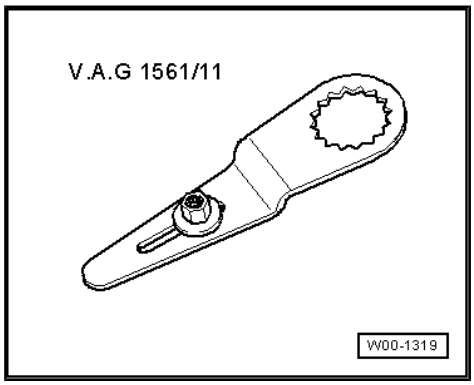


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

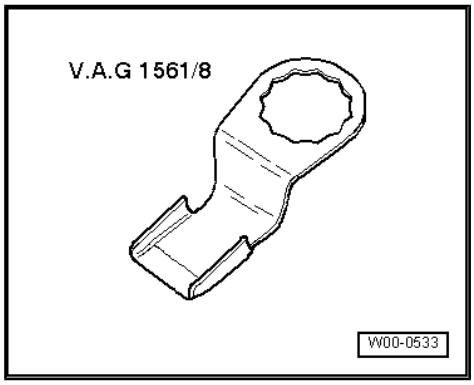
- Blade (offset) -V.A.G 1561/10-



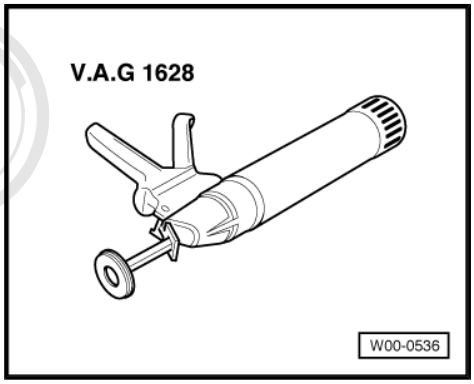
- Universal blade -V.A.G 1561/11-



- Scraper, 15 and 25 mm -V.A.G 1561/7+8-



- Hand-cartridge gun -V.A.G 1628-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

It is not necessary to remove the window regulator cover to adjust the window regulator. Two grommets are fitted in the cover for the adjustment of the window regulator. The window regulator can be adjusted after removing the grommets ⇒ Rep. Gr. 57 .

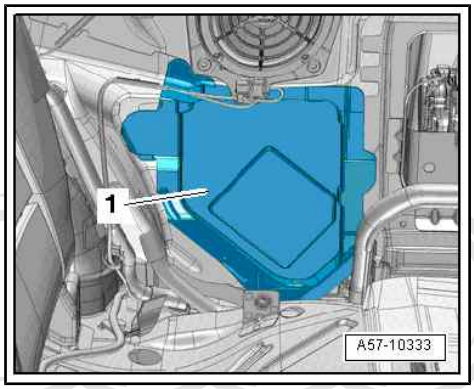
Removing

– Remove side trim ⇒ page 148 .

– Equipment version with BOSE sound system: Remove amplifier ⇒ Rep. Gr. 91 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Cut through adhesive bead at cover -1- for window regulator using electric cutter -V.A.G 1561A- and appropriate blade (offset) -V.A.G 1561/10- or universal blade -V.A.G 1561/11- and detach cover.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Re-using an undamaged cover:

– Just before re-installing an undamaged cover, use electric cutter -V.A.G 1561 A- and scraper (25 mm) -V.A.G 1561/8- to cut back the remaining adhesive sealant on the cover and the body for an even surface, but do not remove completely.

Note

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive sealant.

Caution

- ***Keep bonding surface clean and free from grease.***
- ***Do not cut back bonding surface until shortly before installation.***
- ***Do NOT apply primer to bonding surface and do NOT use cleaning solution.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply adhesive D 172 090 A2 to the remaining adhesive sealant (on body) using hand-cartridge gun -V.A.G 1628- .

– Press on cover and secure with adhesive strip for approx. 1 hour. Then remove adhesive strip.

Using a new cover:

– Clean bonding area all around cover with cleaning solution -D 009 401 04- .

– Use electric cutter -V.A.G 1561 A- and scraper (25 mm) -V.A.G 1561/8- to cut remaining adhesive sealant on body to make it level, but do not remove completely.

Note

The remaining sealant is required as a base for better adhesion of the new adhesive sealant.

Caution

- ***Keep bonding surface clean and free from grease.***
- ***Do not cut back bonding surface until shortly before installation.***
- ***Do NOT apply primer to bonding surface and do NOT use cleaning solution.***

– Apply adhesive D 172 090 A2 to the remaining adhesive sealant (on body) using hand-cartridge gun -V.A.G 1628- .

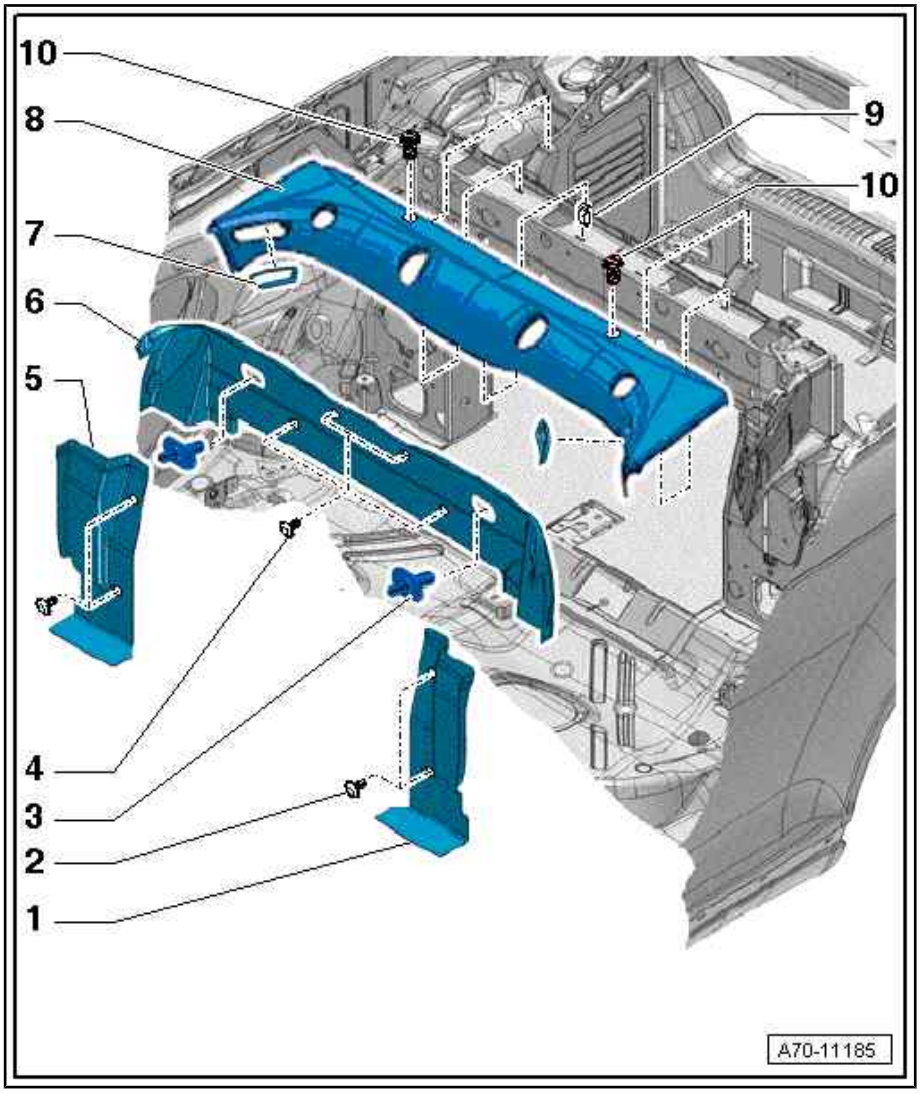
– Press on cover and secure with adhesive strip for approx. 1 hour. Then remove adhesive strip.

Paintwork damage on body:

– If paintwork has been damaged, paintwork structure must be repaired and, if necessary, anti-corrosion measures must be taken ⇒ Audi Paintwork Guide .

– Clean repaired area with cleaning solution -D 009 401 04- .

4.17 Exploded view of back panel trim



1 - Back panel side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

2 - Clip
- ❑ Unclip carefully
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

3 - Pressure pin
- ❑ For releasing rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

4 - Clip
- ❑ Unclip carefully
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

5 - Back panel side trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 154

6 - Back panel trim (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 153

7 - Belt exit point trim (rear)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 155

8 - Back panel trim (top)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 155

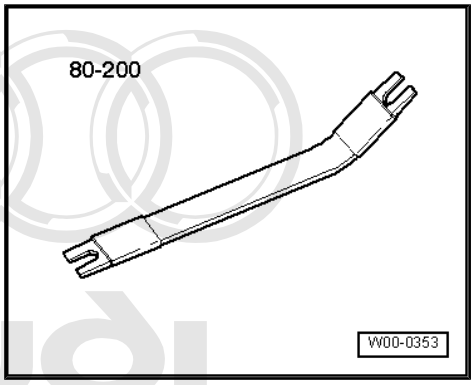
9 - Clip
- ❑ 6x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

10 - Bolt
- ❑ 4 Nm

4.18 Removing and installing back panel trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. A
liability accepted for correctness of informa

Removing

– Remove pressure pins for releasing rear seat backrest ⇒ page 263 .

– Remove clips -1- and -2- for back panel trim (front) -3- using removal lever -80 - 200- .

– Pull back panel trim (front) under side trim out towards side and detach.

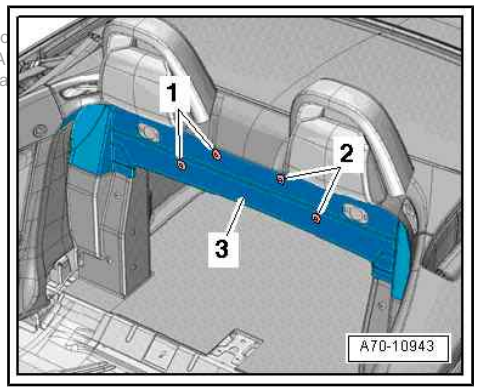
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.

– Slide back panel trim (front) -3- underneath side trim from the side and move into installation position.



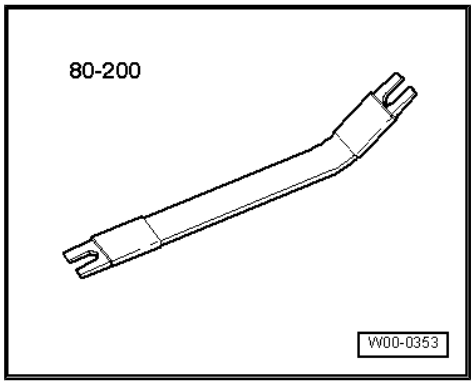
4.19 Removing and installing back panel side trim

Note

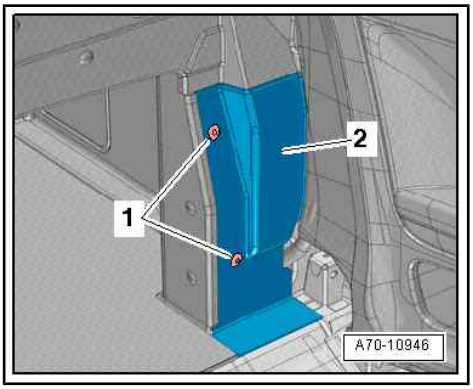
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing



– Release rear seat backrest and fold down.
– Remove clips -1- using removal lever -80 - 200- .
– Pull back panel side trim -2- out from underneath side trim and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew if necessary.

– Slide back panel side trim -2- underneath side trim and move into installation position.

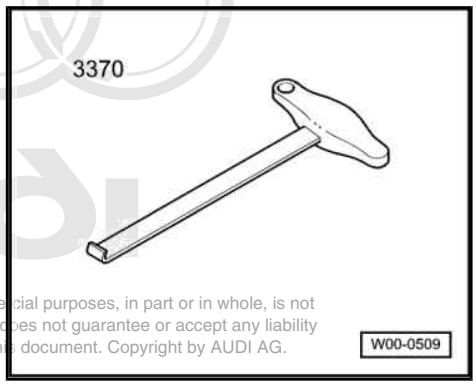
4.20 Removing and installing belt exit point trim (rear)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

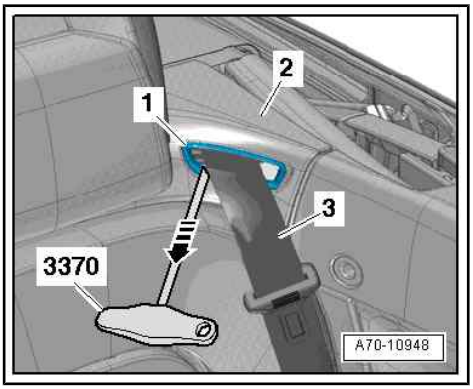
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Front-end hook -3370-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 69 .
– Pull belt exit point trim -1- out of back panel trim (top) -2- -arrow- using front-end hook -3370- .
– Thread out belt -3- with latch plate through belt exit point trim and detach.

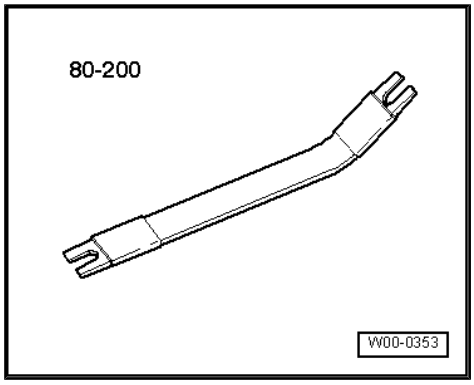
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

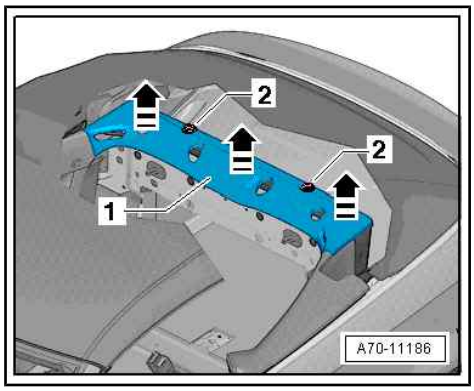
4.21 Removing and installing back panel trim (top)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing

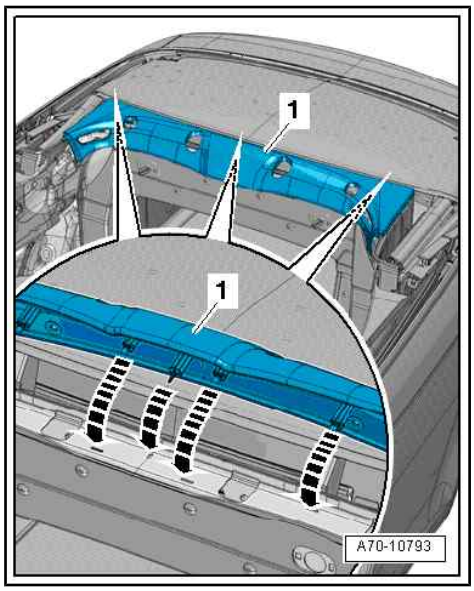


– Remove roll-over bars ⇒ page 106 .
– Remove belt end fitting (rear) ⇒ page 69 .
– Unscrew bolts -2-.
– Unclip back panel trim (top) -1- using removal lever -80 - 200- -arrows-.
– Thread out belt with latch plate through belt exit point trim and detach back panel trim (top).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Thread in belt with latch plate through belt exit point trim.
– Insert centring pins into holes -arrows- and press back panel trim (top) -1- on until all clips engage audibly.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 153

4.22 Exploded view of floor covering

1 - Cover
- ❑ For foot rest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 143

2 - Cap
- ❑ Clipped in

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 1.4 Nm

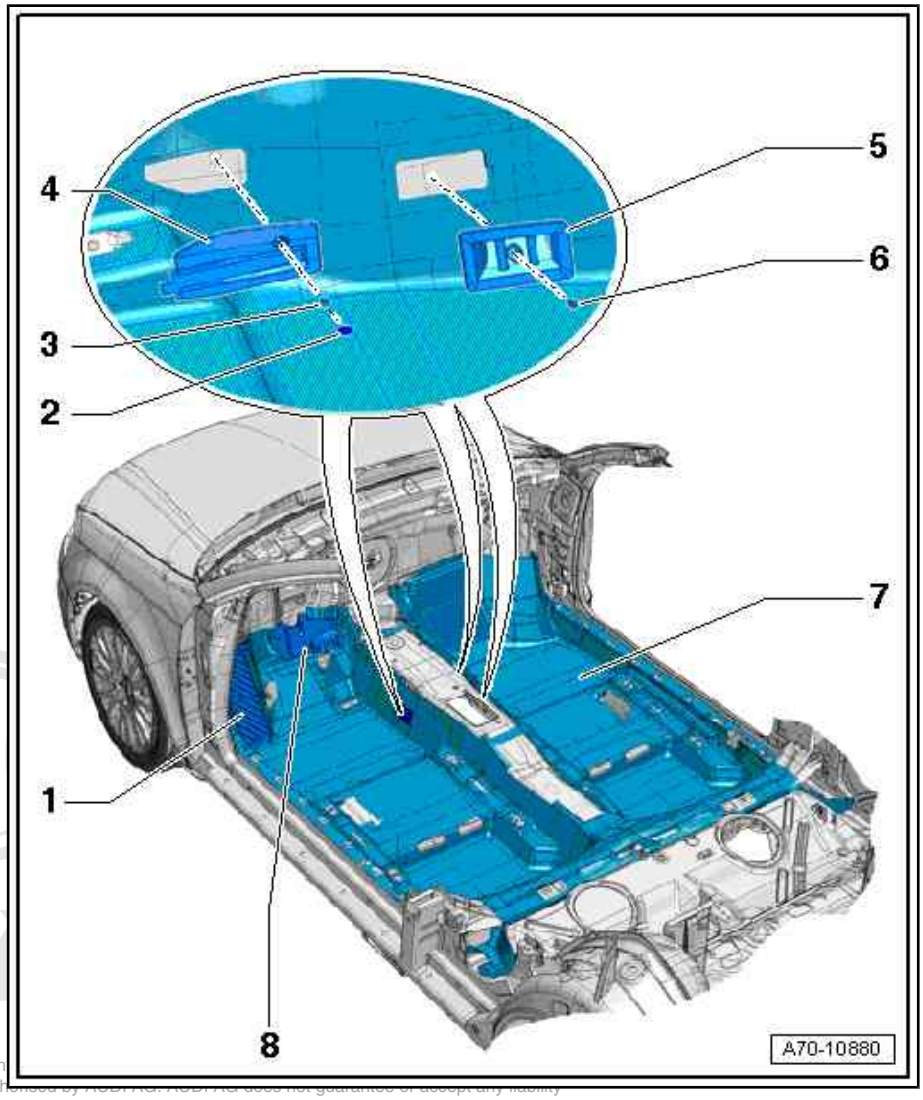
4 - Trim
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

5 - Footwell vent
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 158

6 - Bolt
- ❑ 0.9 Nm

7 - Floor covering
- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 159

8 - Cover
- ❑ For universal joint of steering column
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 157

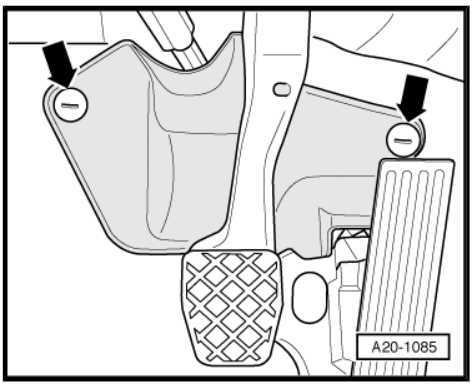


Protected by copyrigh
permitted unless auth
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.23 Removing and installing cover for universal joint of steering column

Removing

– Use a screwdriver to unscrew fasteners -arrows- and detach cover for universal joint of steering column.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

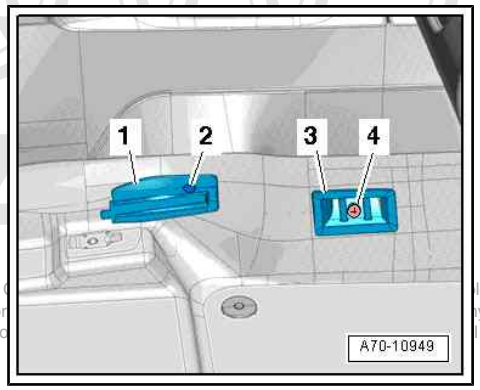
4.24 Removing and installing trim and footwell vent

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

- Operate seal longitudinal adjustment handle and move front seat as far back as possible.
- Unscrew bolt -4- and detach footwell vent -3-.
- Use a small screwdriver to unclip cap -2-, unscrew bolt underneath cap and detach trim -1-.



Installing

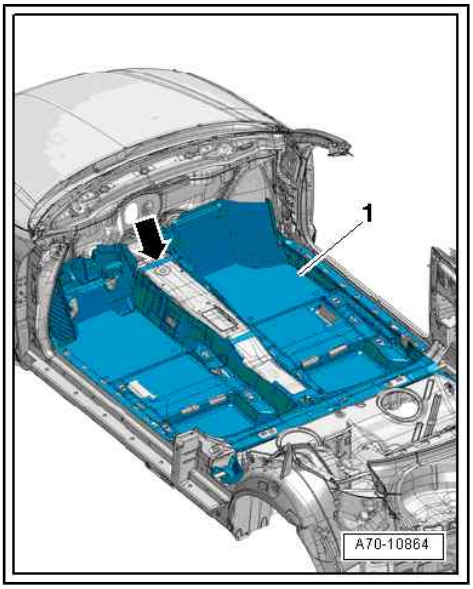
Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 156

Protected by copyright. (permitted unless author with respect to the co le, is not y liability l AG.

4.25 Removing and installing floor covering

Removing



– Remove front seats ⇒ page 196 .
– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 261 .
– Remove A-pillar trim panels (bottom) ⇒ page 141 .
– Remove sill panel trim ⇒ page 145 .
– Remove dash panel trim (driver side) ⇒ page 5 .
– Remove foot rest cover ⇒ page 143 .
– Remove cover for universal joint of steering column ⇒ page 157 .
– Remove accelerator pedal module ⇒ Rep. Gr. 20 .
– Remove trim and footwell vent ⇒ page 158 .
– Remove centre console ⇒ page 20 .
– Remove guide rail for belt strap (front) ⇒ page 64 .
– Pull floor covering -1- to rear.

Note

Make sure that floor covering does not tear at openings.

– Fold up floor covering lengthwise and take out.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

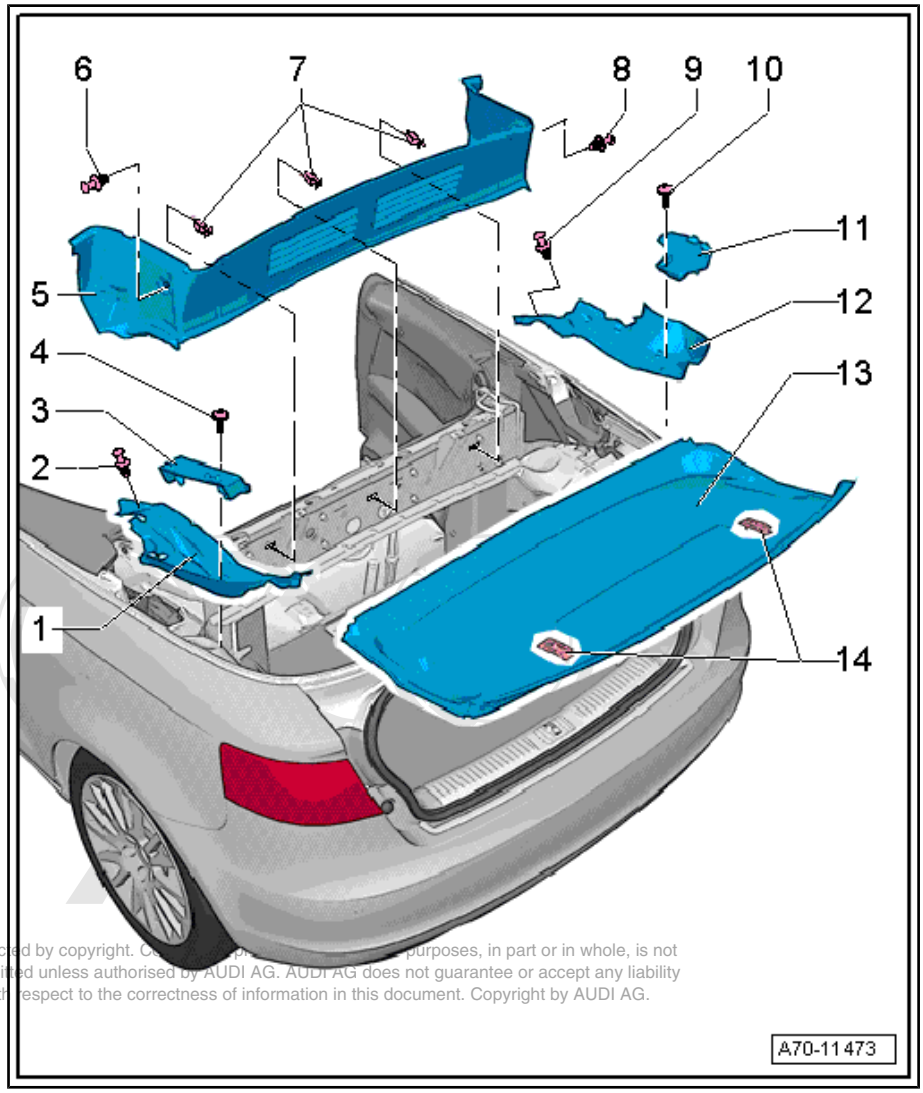
Note

Floor covering is liable to tear easily at cut-outs. Fit floor covering in vehicle carefully.

– When fitting a new floor covering, remove transportation crosspiece -arrow-.
– Slide floor covering -1- all the way to the front until hole patterns of foot rest, accelerator pedal module footwell vents and seats coincide.

4.26 Exploded view of convertible roof compartment trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Convertible roof compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 161

2 - Clip

3 - Support for convertible roof

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

5 - Convertible roof compartment trim (front)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 162

6 - Clip

7 - Clip

- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

8 - Clip

9 - Clip

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

11 - Support for convertible roof

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 160

12 - Convertible roof compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 161

13 - Convertible roof compartment trim (centre)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

14 - Tensioning strap

- ❑ For convertible roof
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 163

4.27 Removing and installing support for convertible roof

Note

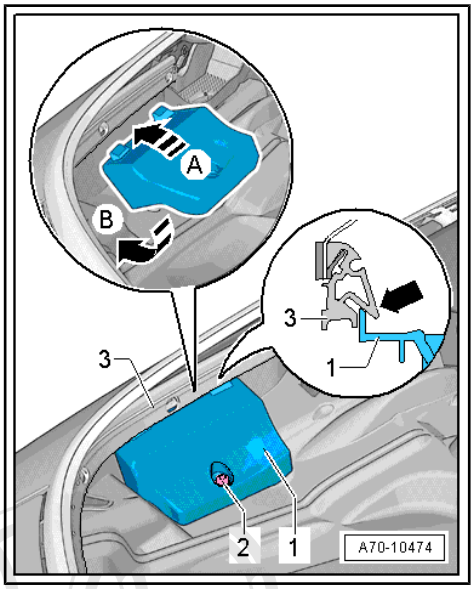
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

– Close convertible roof.

– Remove bolt -2- and swivel out support -1- from underneath.

Installing



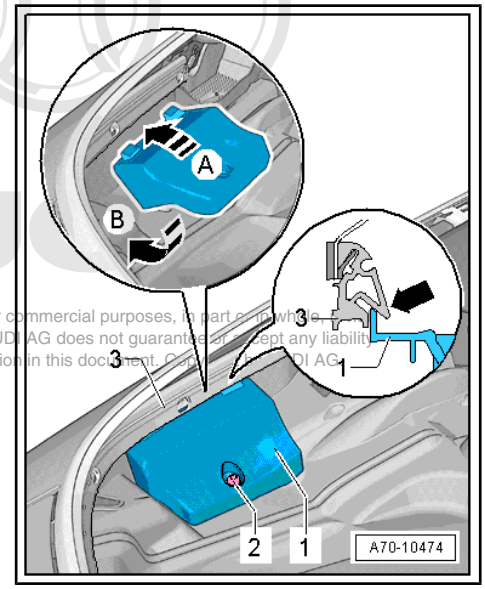
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert support -1- in tensioner -3- -arrow A- and swivel in at bottom -arrow B-.

Note

Make sure that support -1- is inside inner section of tensioner -3- (see sectional illustration).

Tightening torque ⇒ page 159

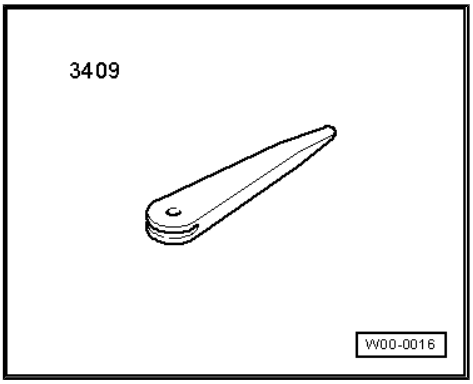


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

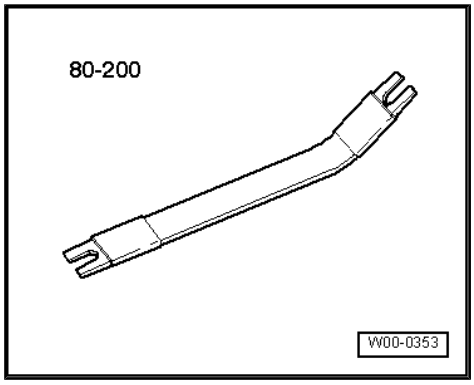
4.28 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment side trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



- Removal lever -80 - 200-



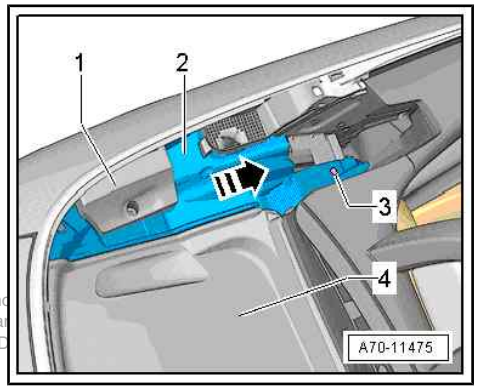
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

– Remove support -1- ⇒ page 160 .

– Remove clip -3- using removal lever -80 - 200- and pull convertible roof compartment side trim -2- slightly in direction of arrow and take side trim out of vehicle.



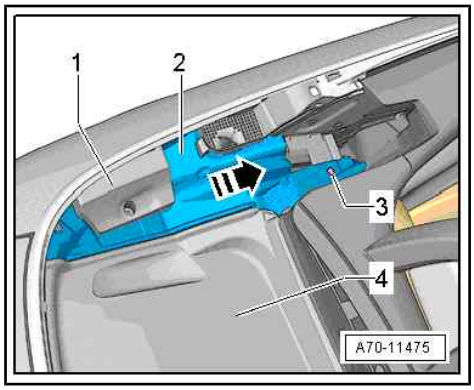
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– When installed, the convertible roof compartment side trim -2- must be underneath the convertible roof compartment trim (centre) -4-. For this, slide trim -2- underneath trim -4- using removal wedge -3409- .

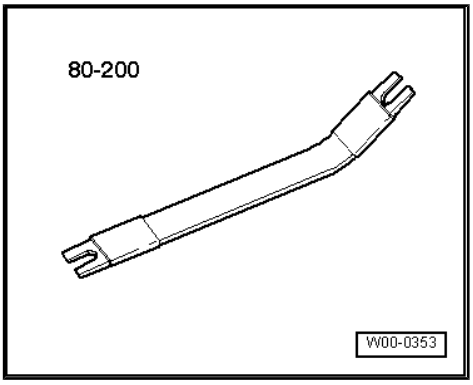
– Press top section of trim -2- all the way outwards (until it makes contact with body).



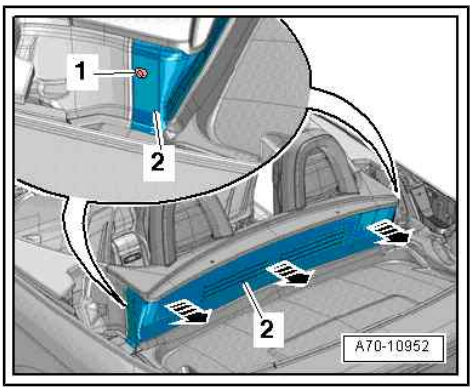
4.29 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (front)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing



– Close convertible roof.
– Remove clip -1- using removal lever -80 - 200- .
– Unclip convertible roof compartment trim (front) -2- using removal lever -80 - 200- -arrows- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

♦ *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*

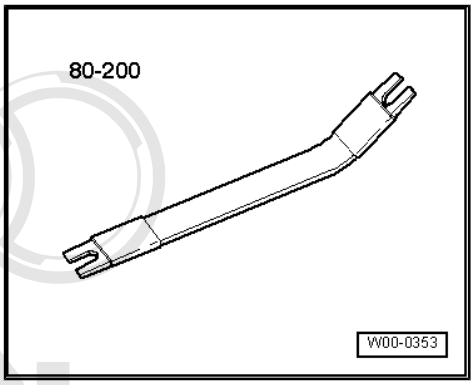
♦ *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Press on trim until it engages audibly.

4.30 Removing and installing convertible roof compartment trim (centre)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

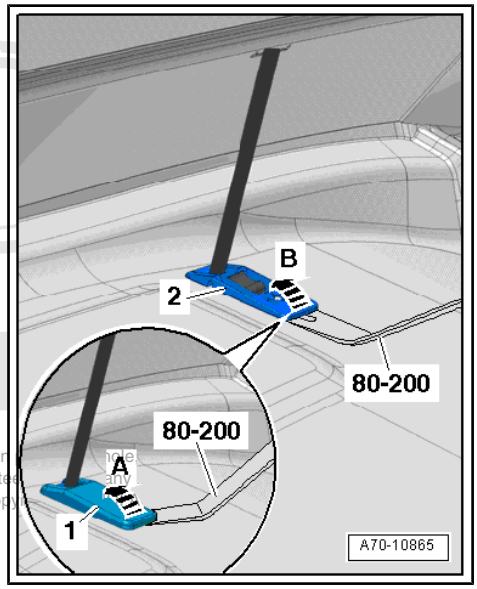
Removing

– Remove roll-over bars ⇒ page 106 .

– Close convertible roof.

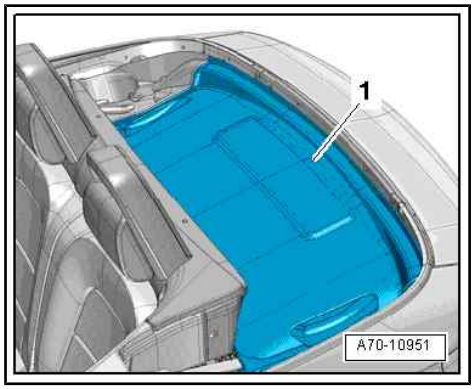
– Prise off cap -1- with removal lever -80 - 200- -arrow A- and detach.

– Prise off retainer -2- for tensioning strap with removal lever -80 - 200- -arrow B- and disengage.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarante
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Cop

– Remove convertible roof compartment trim (centre) -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

5 Luggage compartment trim

5.1 Exploded view of luggage compartment trim panels

1 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 167
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 168

2 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 169
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 170

3 - Rear lid trim

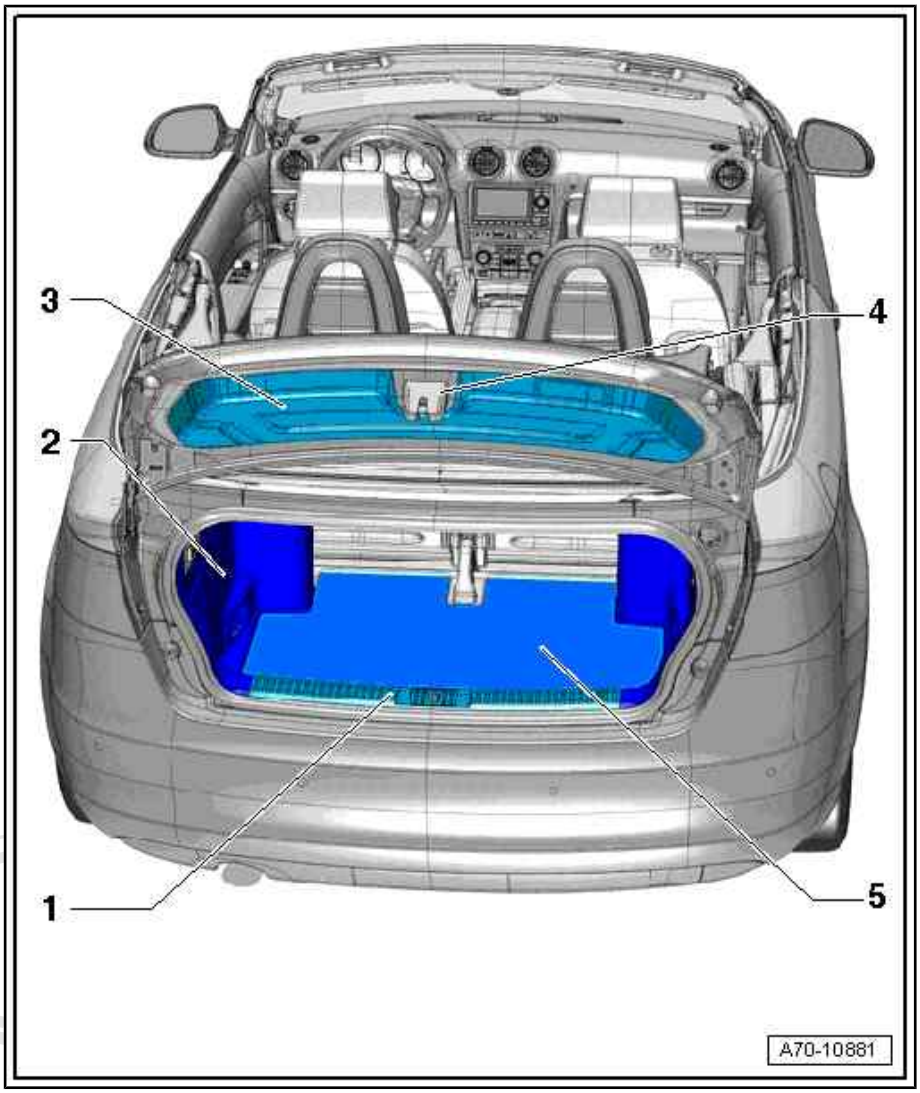
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 166
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 166

4 - Trim for rear lid lock

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 166
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

5 - Luggage compartment floor covering

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 173



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

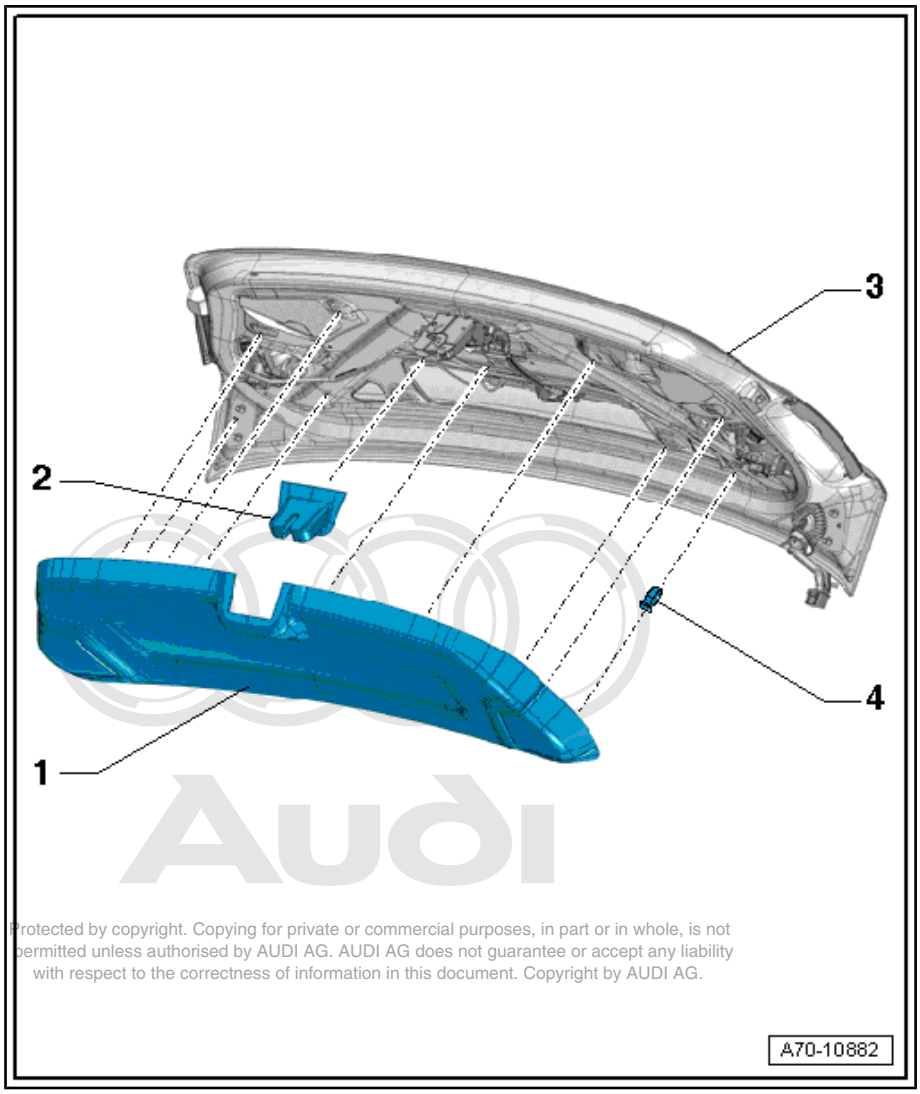
5.2 Exploded view of rear lid trim

1 - Trim
- ❑ For rear lid
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 166

2 - Trim
- ❑ For rear lid lock
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 167

3 - Rear lid

4 - Clip
- ❑ 9x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

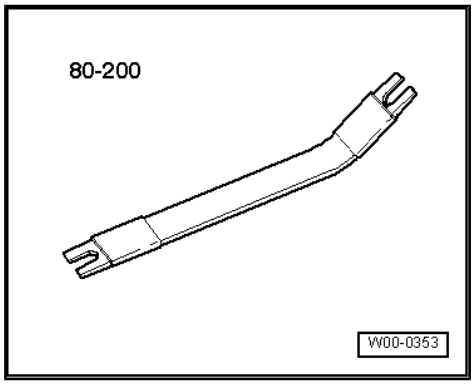


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

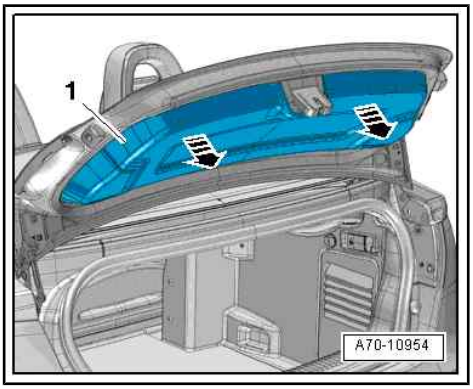
5.3 Removing and installing rear lid trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing



– Prise off rear lid trim -1- using removal lever -80 - 200- -arrows- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

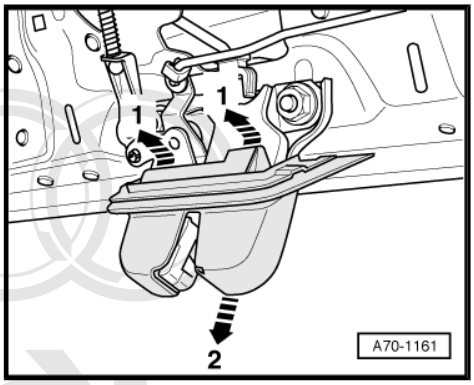
Note

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Position rear lid trim and press on until it engages audibly.

5.4 Removing and installing trim for rear lid lock

Removing



– Remove rear lid trim ⇒ page 166 .
– Release trim retaining hooks -arrows 1-.
– Pull trim off rear lid lock -arrow 2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide trim onto rear lid lock until it engages.

5.5 Exploded view of rear cross panel trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Mounting pin

- ❑ For rear cross panel trim

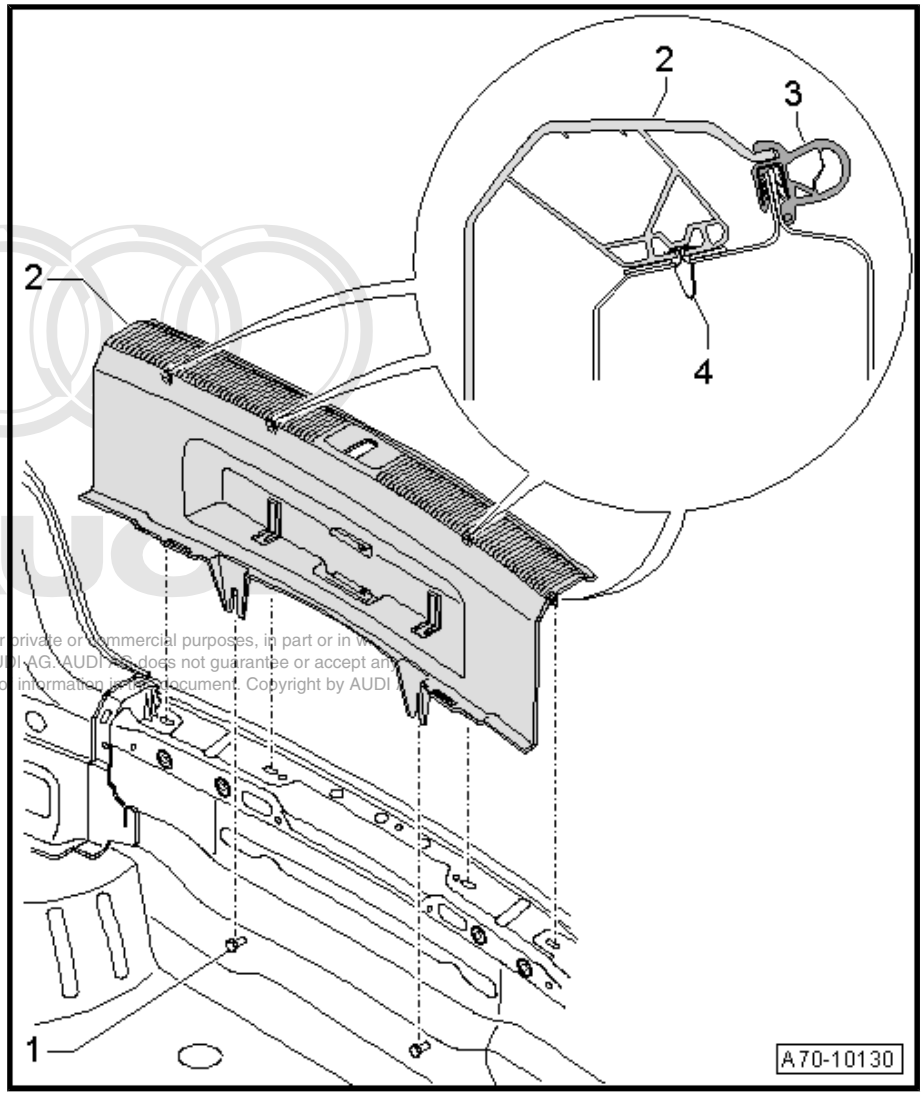
2 - Rear cross panel trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 168

3 - Luggage compartment seal

4 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

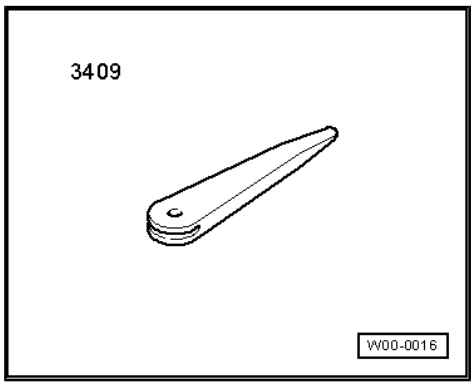


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

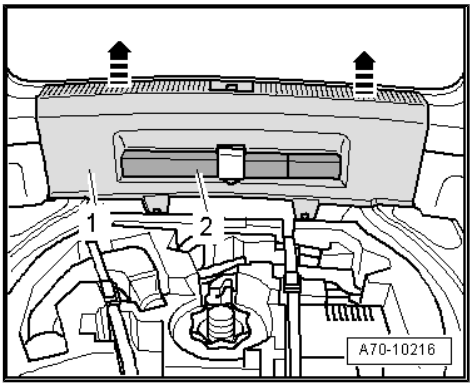
5.6 Removing and installing rear cross panel trim

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing



– Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
– Detach lip of rear lid seal in the area of rear cross panel trim.

Note

It is not necessary to remove the warning triangle -2-.

– Working vertically upwards, unclip rear cross panel trim -1- using removal wedge -3409- -arrows-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Insert retaining tabs on rear cross panel trim (left and right) in recesses of luggage compartment side trim.
– Insert rear cross panel trim so that tabs engage in mounting pins (left and right).
– Press on rear cross panel trim until it engages audibly and fold lip of rear lid seal over rear cross panel trim.

5.7 Exploded view of luggage compartment side trim

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Cover

- ❑ For luggage compartment side trim

2 - Clip

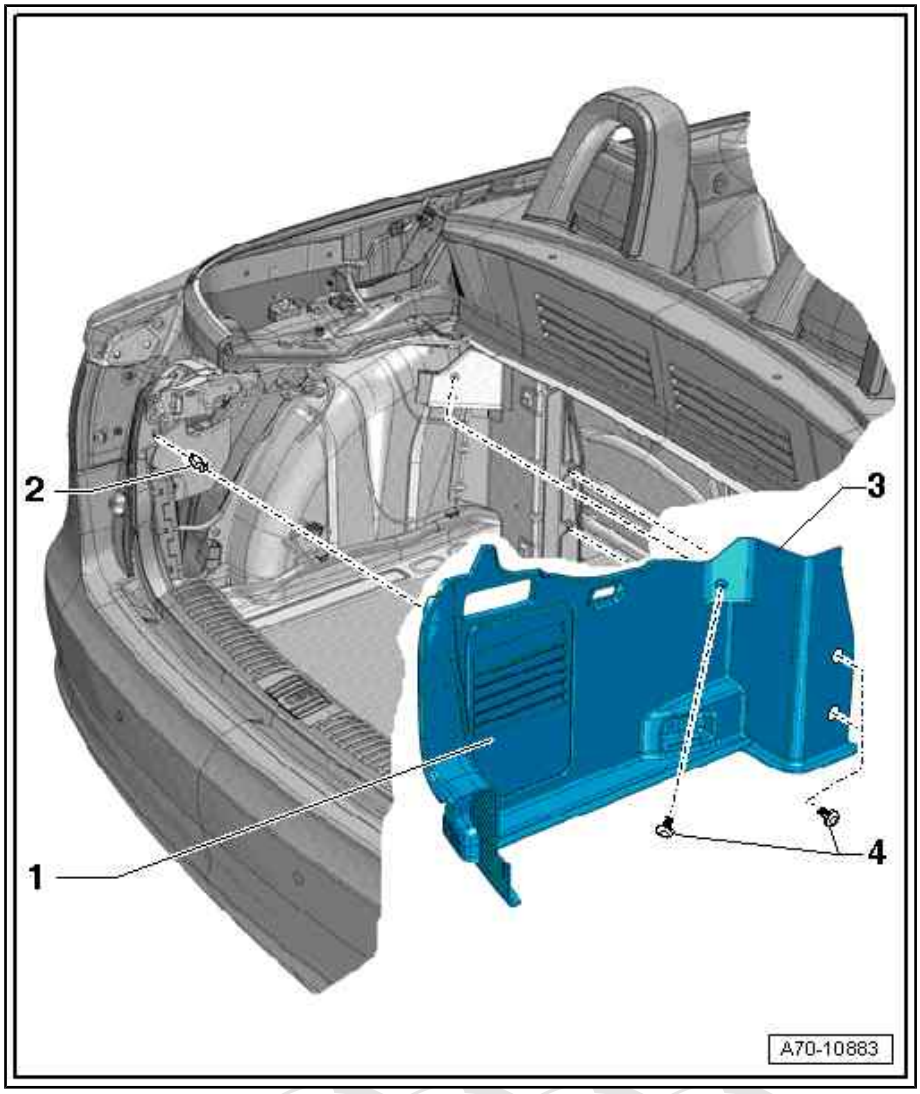
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

3 - Luggage compartment side trim

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 170

4 - Clip

- ❑ 3x



5.8 Removing and installing luggage compartment side trim

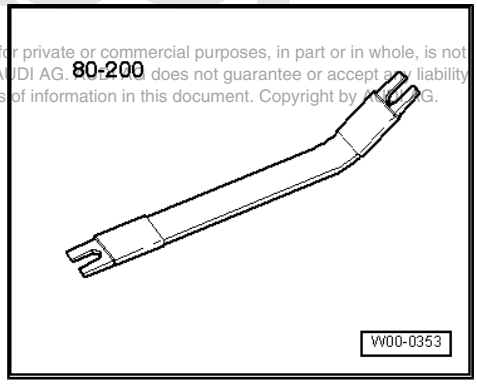
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

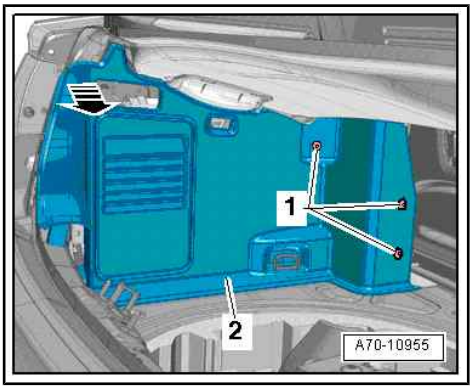
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.



Removing



– Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
– Remove rear cross panel trim ⇒ page 168 .
– Remove actuator for releasing rear seat backrest and let it hang down with Bowden cable attached ⇒ page 266 .
– Remove luggage compartment light ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 .
– Remove clips -1- using removal lever -80 - 200- .
– Unclip luggage compartment side trim -2- from body using removal lever -80 - 200- -arrow-.
– Lift luggage compartment side trim out of fastening rings and take it out of luggage compartment.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Press on luggage compartment side trim until it engages audibly.
– Fold lip of rear lid seal over luggage compartment side trim.

5.9 Exploded view of fastening rings

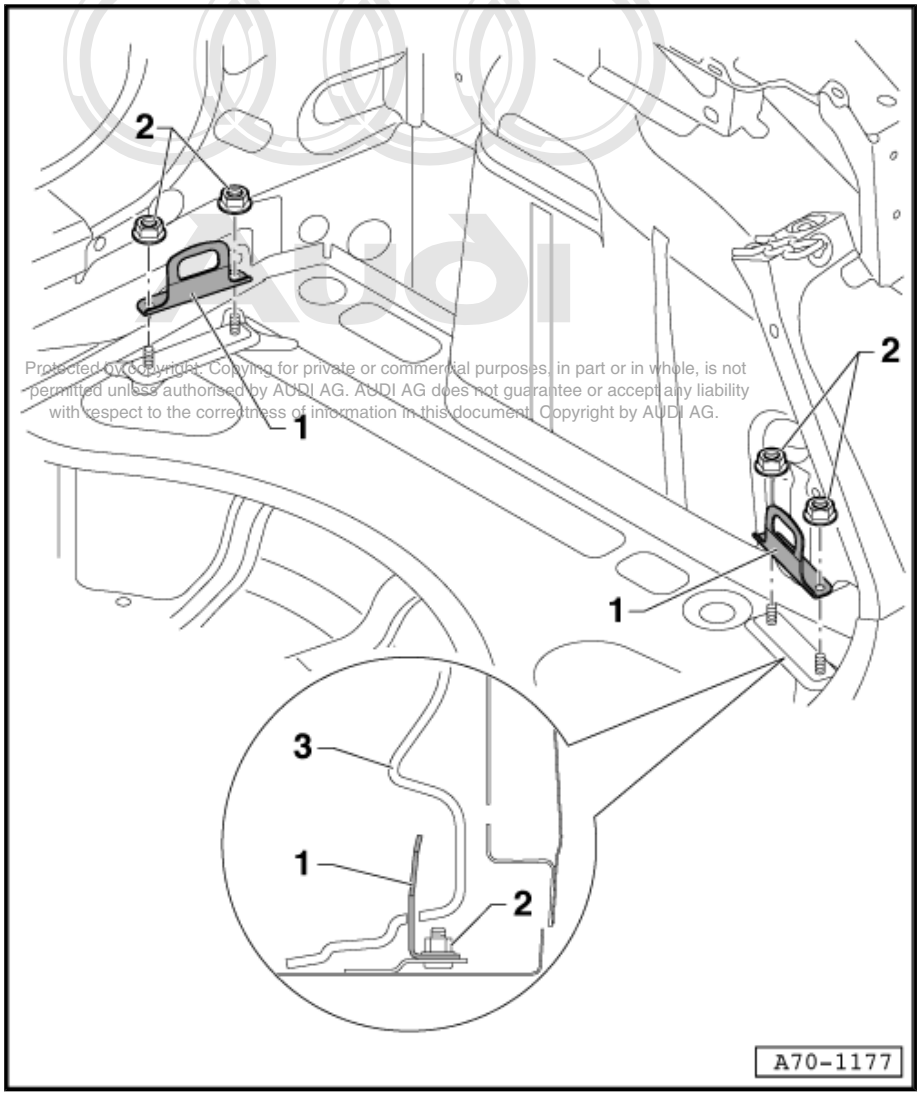
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Fastening ring

2 - Nut

❑ 4 Nm

3 - Luggage compartment side trim



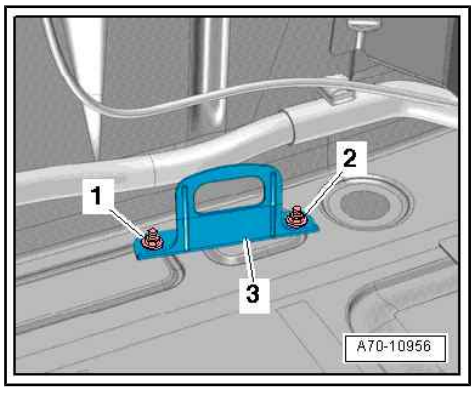
Protected by Copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

5.10 Removing and installing fastening ring

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing



– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 170 .
– Remove nuts -1- and -2-.
– Remove fastening ring -3- from studs.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

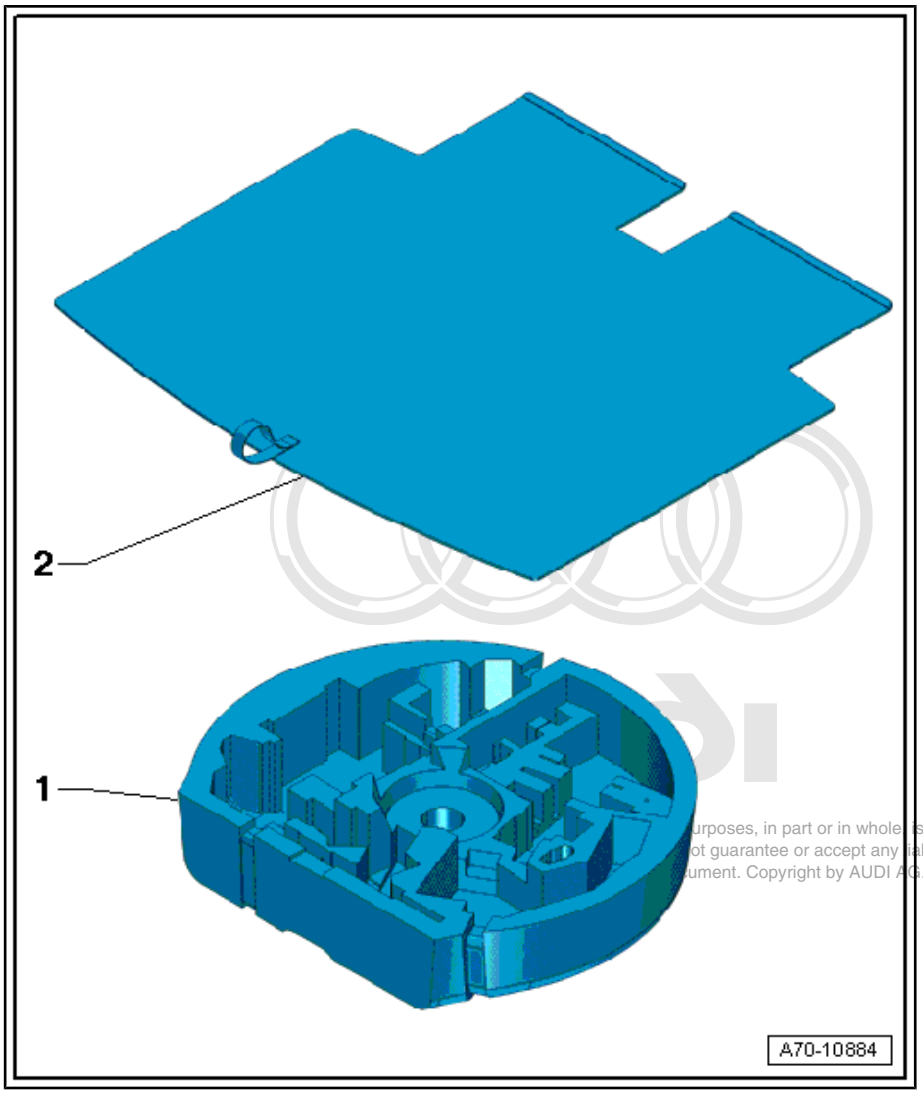
Tightening torque ⇒ page 171

5.11 Exploded view of luggage compartment floor covering

1 - Luggage compartment floor covering

2 - Foam insert

- ❑ For vehicle tool kit



urposes, in part or in whole is not
ot guarantee or accept any liability
ument. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6 Roof trim

6.1 Overview of roof trim

1 - Sun visor

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 175
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

2 - Trim (top)

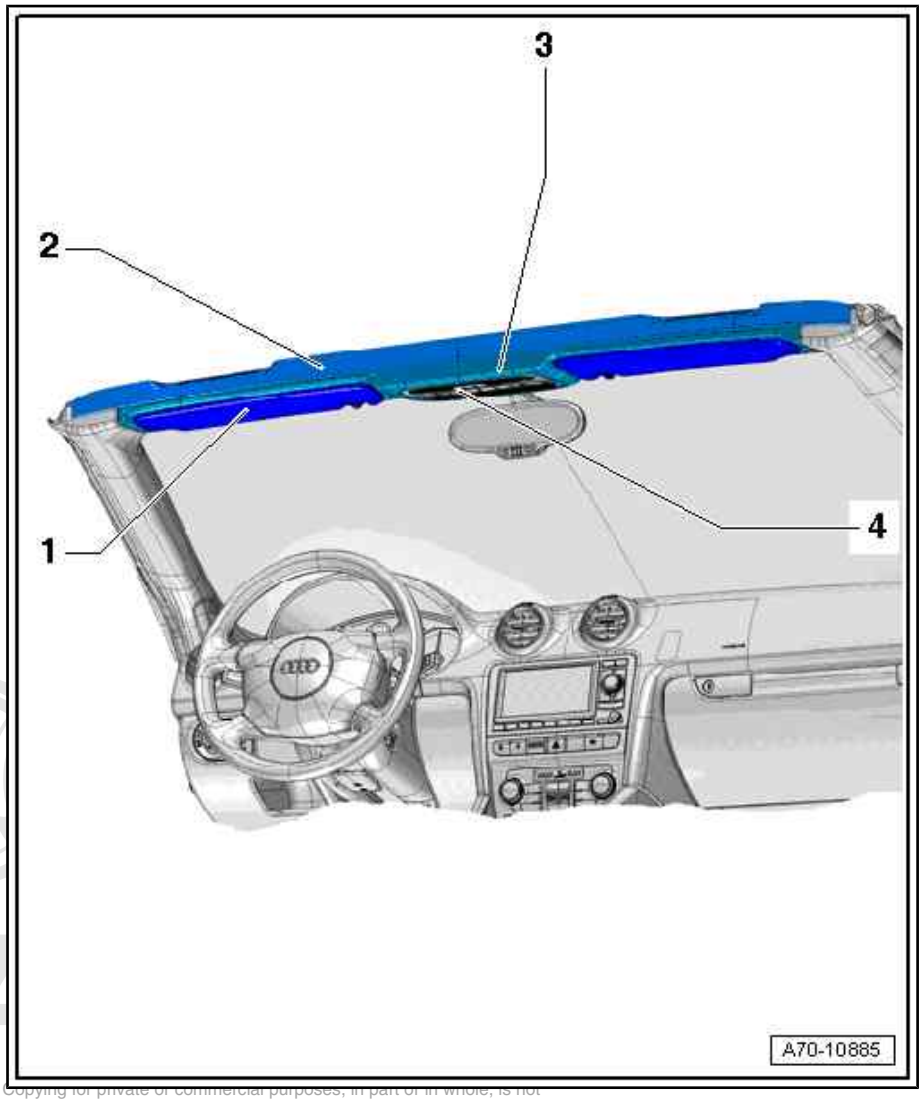
- ❑ For roof frame
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 176
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 179

3 - Trim (bottom)

- ❑ For roof frame
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 176
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178

4 - Interior light/reading light

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.2 Exploded view of sun visor

1 - Sun visor

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 175

2 - Cap

- ❑ Clipped into centre bracket for sun visor

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

4 - Centre bracket

- ❑ For sun visor
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 176

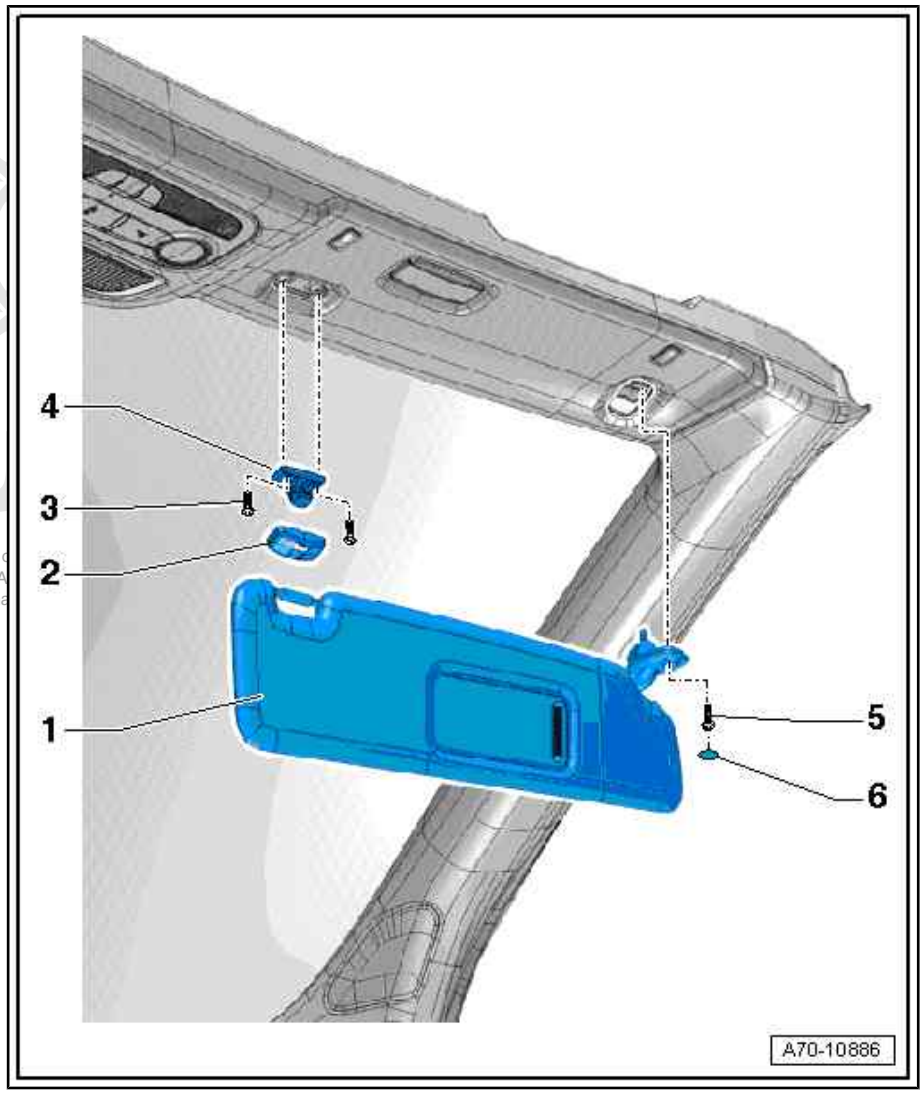
5 - Bolt

- ❑ 2.5 Nm

6 - Cap

- ❑ Clipped into sun visor

Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. A
with respect to the correctness of informa

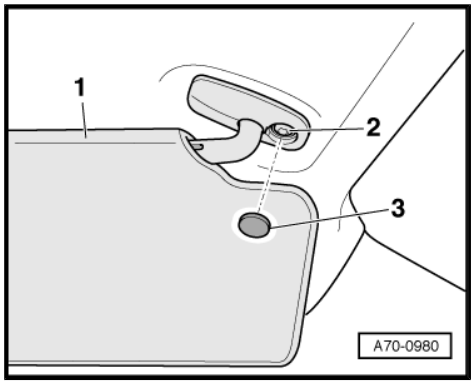


6.3 Removing and installing sun visor

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing



- Disengage sun visor -1- in centre of vehicle at centre bracket for sun visor.
- Use a screwdriver to unclip cap -3-.
- Remove bolt -2-.
- Swivel down sun visor retainer and detach sun visor.
- Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector and detach sun visor.

Installing

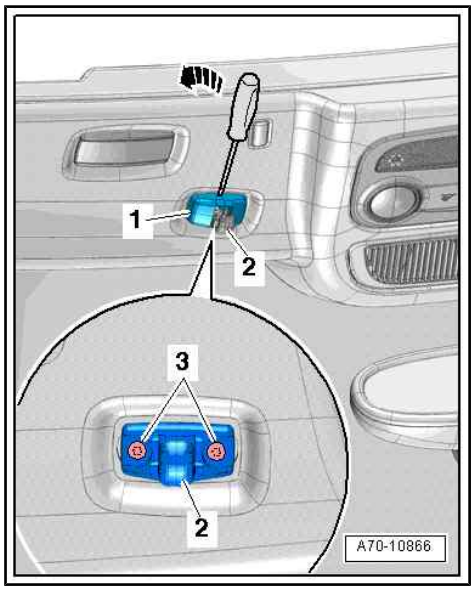
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

- Engage lug on bracket for sun visor in opening in moulded headliner.
- Press on cap for sun visor until it engages fully.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 175

6.4 Removing and installing centre bracket for sun visor

Removing



- Disengage sun visor in centre of vehicle at centre bracket for sun visor and fold to the side.
- Unclip cap -1- -arrow- with a screwdriver.
- Remove bolts -3- and take off centre bracket for sun visor -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 175

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

6.5 Exploded view of roof frame trim

1 - Trim (bottom)

- ❑ For roof frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 178

2 - Clip

- ❑ 5x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

3 - Trim (top)

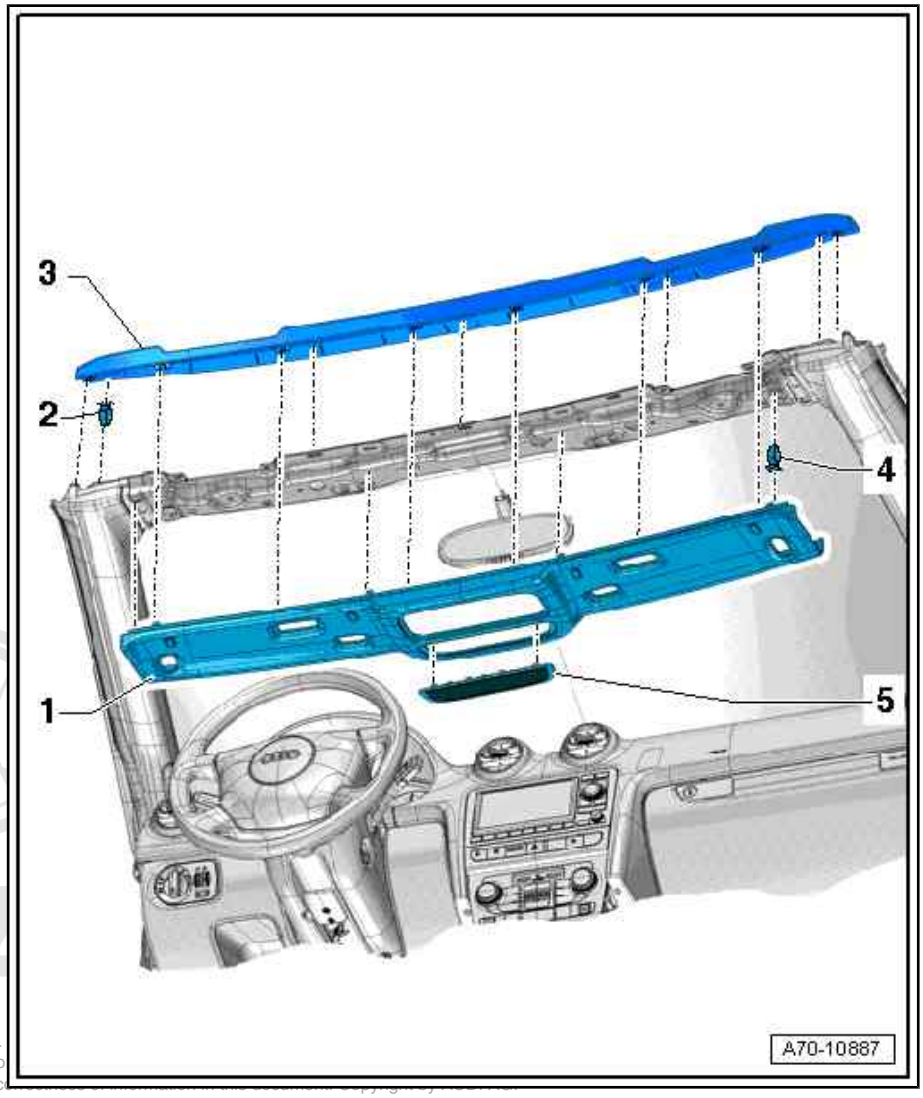
- ❑ For roof frame
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 179

4 - Clip

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

5 - Trim panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 177

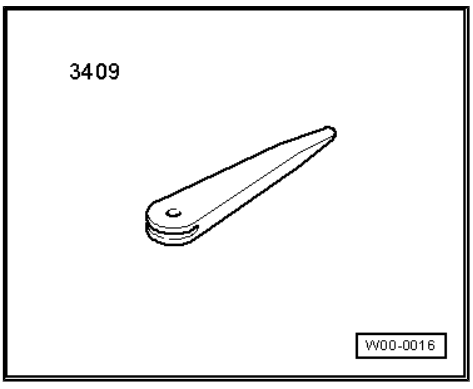


Protected by copyright.
permitted unless autho
with respect to the c

6.6 Removing and installing trim panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

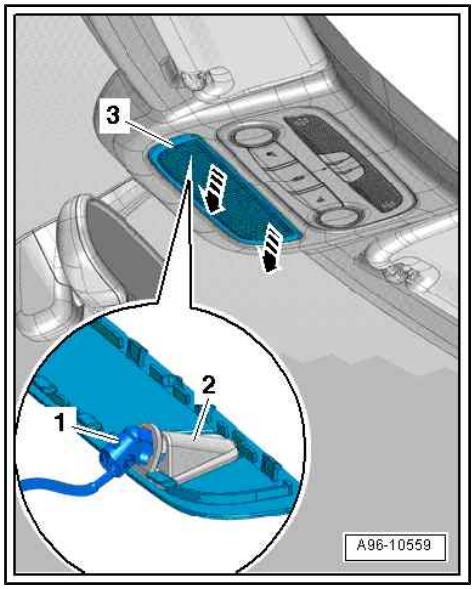
- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

– Unclip trim panel -3- at roof frame trim (bottom) -arrows-.

– Equipment version with anti-theft alarm system: Carefully unclip individual sensor -item 1- for interior monitor from mounting -2-.



Installing

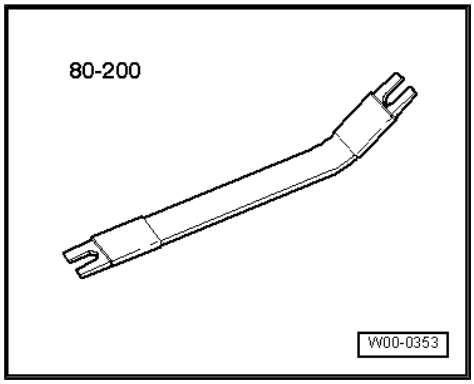
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Press on trim panel until it engages fully.

6.7 Removing and installing roof frame trim (bottom)

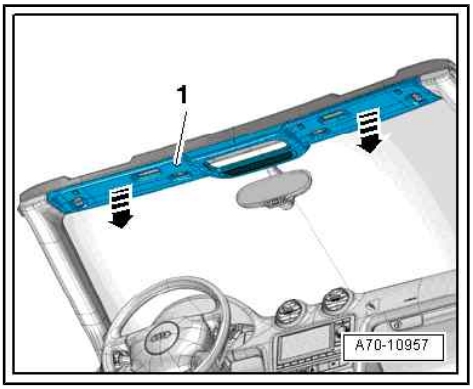
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Remove front interior light -W1- ⇒ Rep. Gr. 96 .
– Remove sun visors ⇒ page 175 .
– Remove centre bracket for sun visor ⇒ page 176 .
– Use removal lever -80 - 200- to unclip trim (bottom) -1- from trim (top) and roof frame -arrows-.
– Lower roof frame trim (bottom) as far as possible.
– Equipment version with light: Unplug electrical connector.
– Detach roof frame trim (bottom).

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

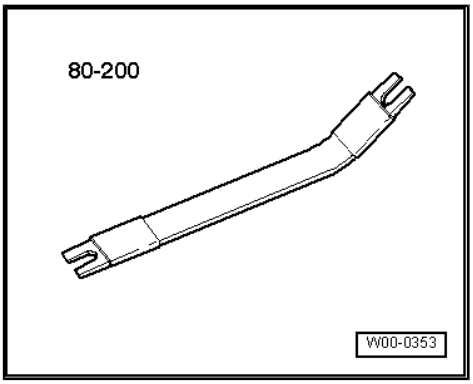
- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Press on trim until it engages audibly; make sure that trim (bottom) engages with trim (top).

6.8 Removing and installing roof frame trim (top)

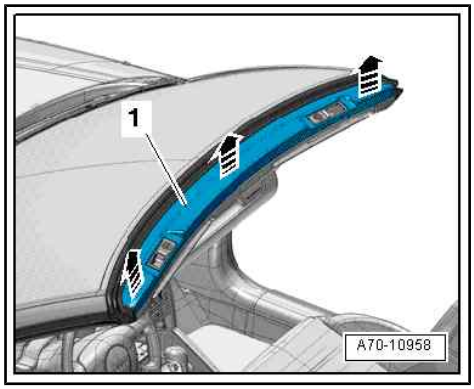
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever -80 - 200-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Use removal lever -80 - 200- to unclip trim (top) -1- from trim (bottom) and roof frame -arrows-.
– Detach roof frame trim (top).

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

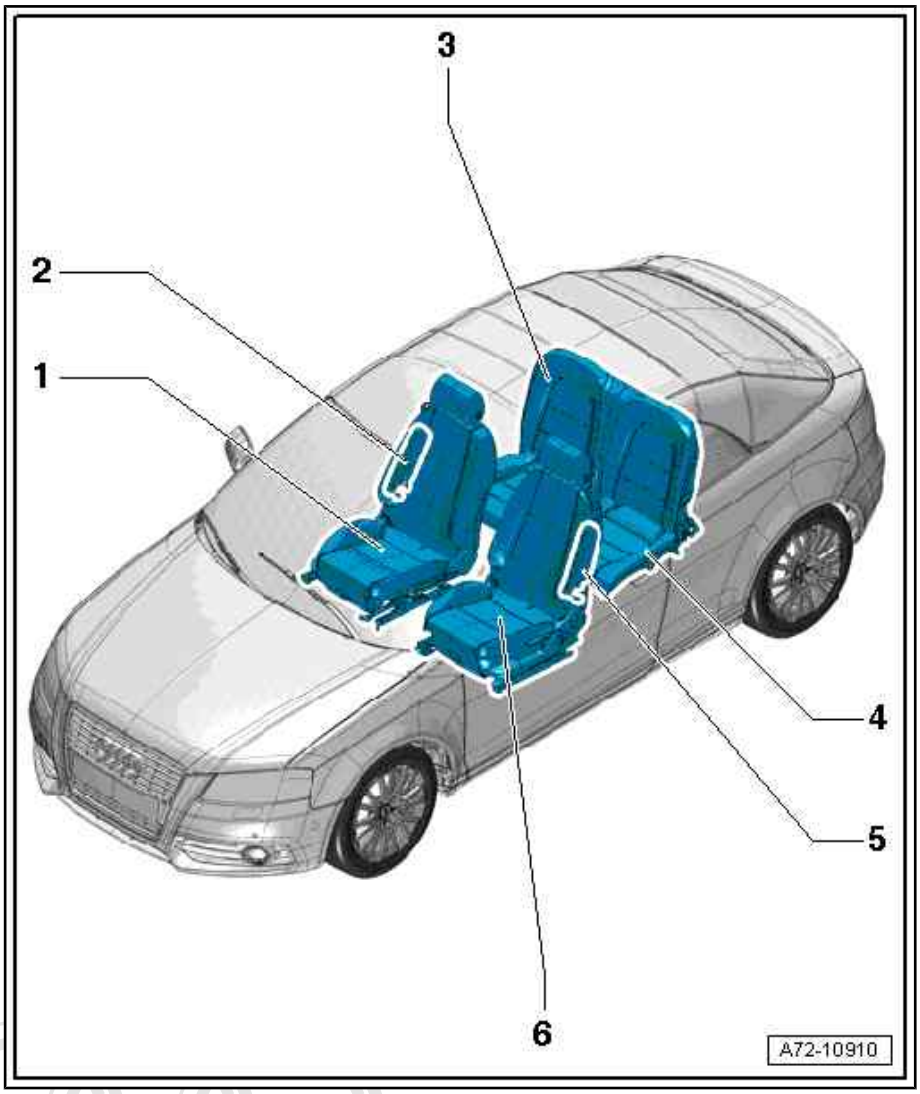
- *If there are still trim clips in the body mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the trim when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*

– Press on trim until it engages audibly; make sure that trim (top) engages with trim (bottom).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

72 – Seat frames

1 Overview of seat versions



1 - Front passenger's seat

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 194
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat and backrest heating
- ♦ Four-way lumbar support
- ♦ Storage compartment
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor

2 - Side airbag (right-side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

3 - Rear seat backrest

- ❑ Split
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Backrest heating
- ♦ ISOFIX child seat anchor

Country-specific versions:
- ♦ Child seat anchor (at backrest frame)
- ♦ Child seat anchor in backrest pan (Top Tether)

4 - Seat bench

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261

Equipment version:
- ♦ Seat heating

5 - Side airbag (left-side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 96
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 96

6 - Driver's seat

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 194
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

Equipment versions:
- ♦ Seat and backrest heating
- ♦ Four-way lumbar support

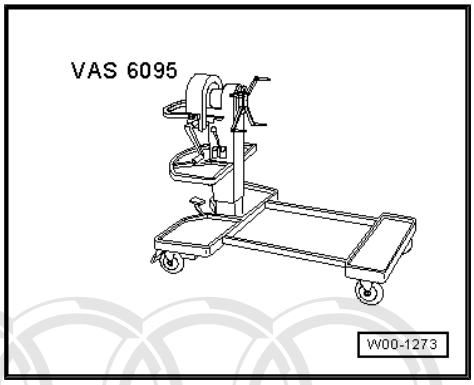
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Storage compartment

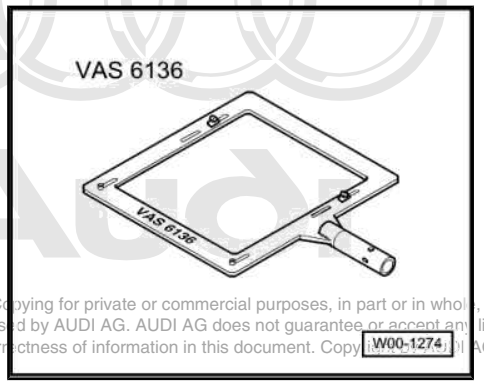
1.1 Attaching front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095-



- Seat repair stand -VAS 6136-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Attaching front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136-

- Front seat removed from vehicle

– Attach seat repair stand -VAS 6136- to engine and gearbox support -VAS 6095- .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- .

2 Front seats - standard seat (with manual adjustment)

2.1 Exploded view of front seat - standard seat

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The standard seat (front) is similar.

⇒ “3.1 Exploded view of front seat - sports seat”, page 194 .

2.2 Removing and installing front seat

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing front seat”, page 196 .

2.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors

Unplugging and plugging in connectors is described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors”, page 198 .

2.4 Connecting airbag adapter

Connecting the airbag adapter is described for the sports seat (front). The procedure is similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.4 Connecting airbag adapter”, page 201 .

2.5 Connectors in connector point

Connector assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations.

2.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The modular wire routing is similar on the standard seat (front).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

⇒ “3.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing”, page 203 .

2.7 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat

The modular wire routing is described for the sports seat (front). It is similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.7 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat”, page 203 .

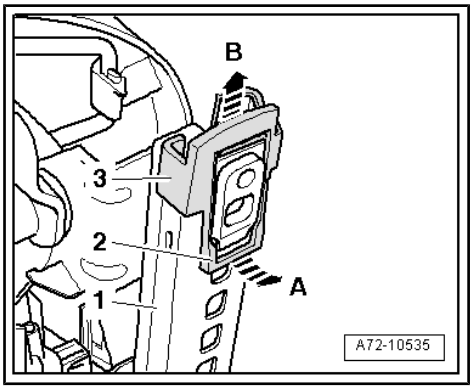
2.8 Removing and installing seat rail cover (front)

Note

- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*
- *Removal and installation are described for the seat rail cover (front, sill side) of the driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the seat rail cover (front, tunnel side).*

Removing

– Remove bolts for front seat ⇒ page 196 .



Note

The electrical connectors for the front seat need not be unplugged.

– Tilt seat backwards as far as possible.
– Carefully lift retaining clip -2- -arrow A-.
– Pull seat rail cover (front) -3- off seat rail guide -1- -arrow B-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide on cover (front) until it engages audibly.

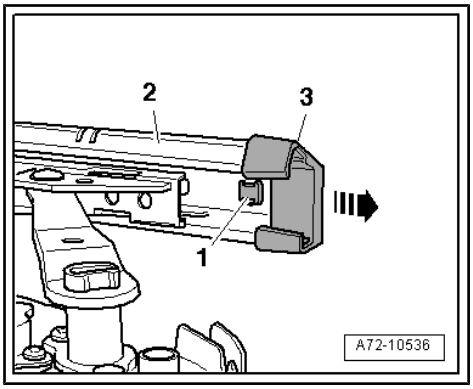
2.9 Removing and installing seat rail cover (rear)

Note

Removal and installation are described for the seat rail cover (rear, sill side) of the driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the seat rail cover (rear, tunnel side).

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorized by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Carefully press retaining clip -1- downwards.
– Pull seat rail cover (rear) -3- off seat rail guide -2- -arrow-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Slide on cover (rear) until it engages audibly.

2.10 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The trim panels (sill side and tunnel side) are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ "3.10 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)", page 205 .

2.11 Removing and installing backrest adjuster

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.11 Removing and installing backrest adjuster”, page 206 .

2.12 Removing and installing trim (sill side)

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures for removal and installation are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.12 Removing and installing trim (sill side)”, page 207 .

2.13 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.13 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)”, page 209 .

2.14 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

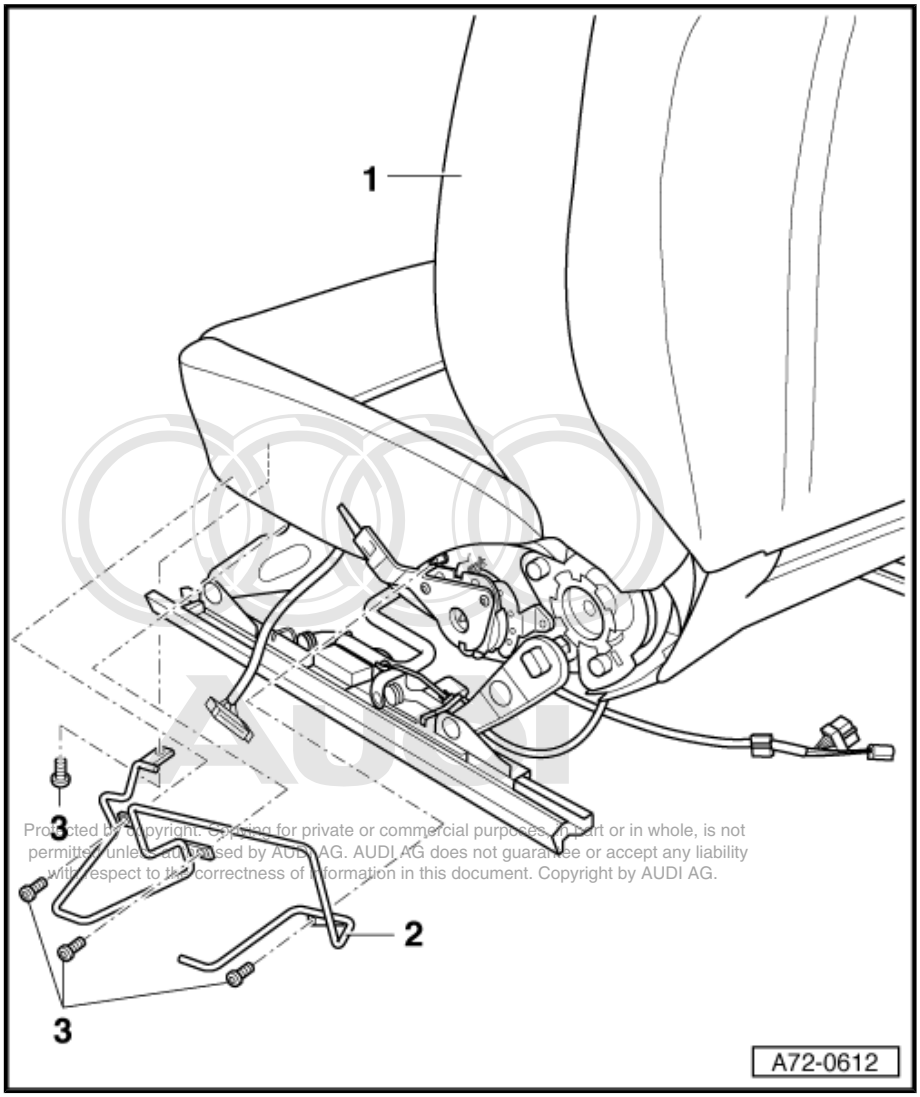
1 - Front seat

2 - Retaining bracket

- ❑ For trim (sill side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 186

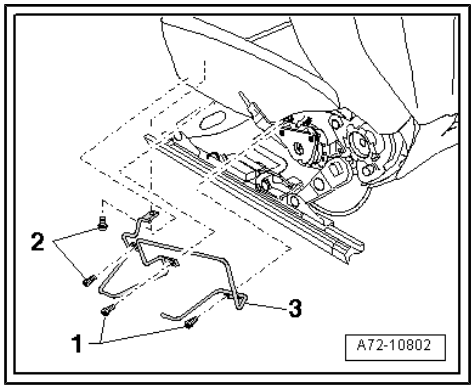
3 - Bolts

- ❑ 3.5 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.15 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)



Removing

- Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 245 .
- Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 207 .
- Remove bolts -1- and -2- and detach retaining bracket -3-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 185

2.16 Exposed view of seat height adjuster unit and seat height adjuster

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The seat height adjuster unit and the seat height adjuster are similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.16 Exploded view of seat height adjuster unit and seat height adjuster”, page 210 .

2.17 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.17 Removing and installing seat height adjuster”, page 211 .

2.18 Removing and installing seat height adjuster unit

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.18 Removing and installing seat height adjuster unit”, page 212 .

2.19 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.19 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle”, page 215 .

2.20 Exploded view of torsion bar

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The torsion bar is similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.20 Exploded view of torsion bar”, page 215 .

2.21 Removing and installing torsion bar

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.21 Removing and installing torsion bar”, page 216 .

2.22 Removing and installing bearing

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.22 Removing and installing bearing”, page 219 .

2.23 Renewing bottom part of seat / seat pan

Note

On the front seat (with manual adjustment), the bottom part of the seat should not be separated from the top part of the seat (seat pan).

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.23 Renewing bottom part of seat / seat pan”, page 222 .

2.24 Exploded view of front seat backrest

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The backrest is similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.24 Exploded view of front seat backrest”, page 223 .

2.25 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.25 Removing and installing backrest cover panel”, page 224 .

2.26 Removing and installing front seat backrest

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.26 Removing and installing front seat backrest”, page 226 .

2.27 Exploded view of spring mat

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Extension spring (bottom)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 188

2 - Extension spring (centre)

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 188

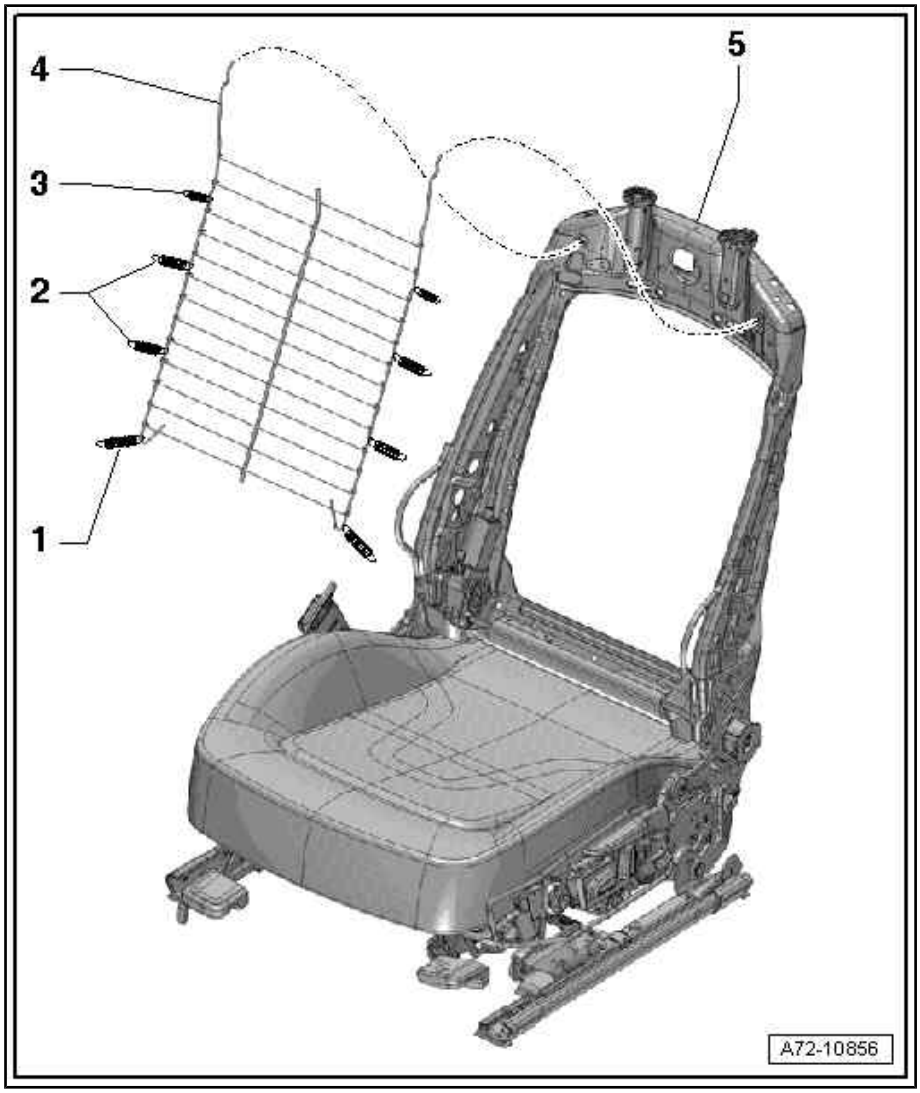
3 - Extension spring (top)

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ For correct version refer to ⇒ Electronic parts catalogue
- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 188

4 - Spring mat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 188
- ❑ Can be removed and installed with or without extension springs

5 - Backrest frame



Installation position of extension springs

Extension springs shown in exploded view have different dimensions.

– Attach extension springs only at specified positions.

Caution

If extension springs are attached at wrong locations, padding springing will respond differently.

2.28 Removing and installing spring mat

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

WARNING

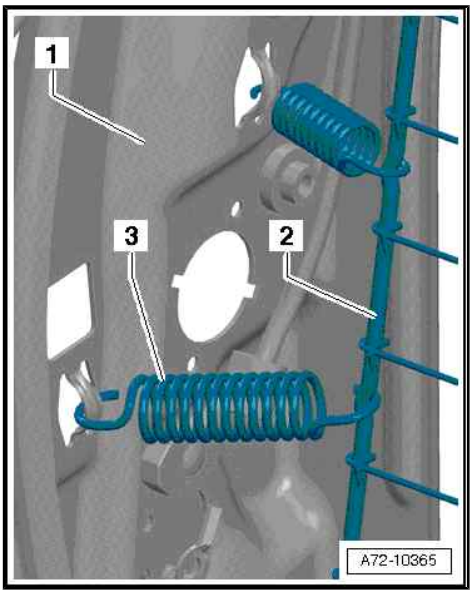
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

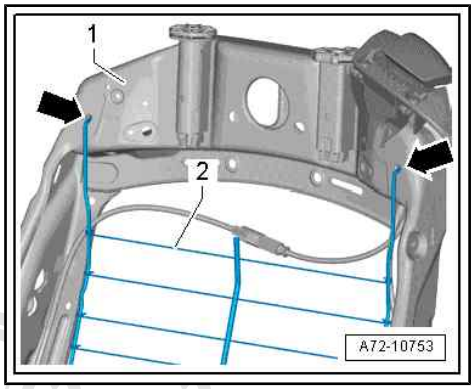
– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .
– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 278 .
– Disengage extension springs -3- at backrest frame -1-.

Note

However, extension springs -3- can also be left attached to backrest frame -1-, and spring mat -2- can be disengaged directly at extension springs.



– Swivel spring mat -2- forwards.
– Pull spring mat out of openings -arrows- in backrest frame -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Observe correct installation position of extensions springs ⇒ page 188 .
– Make sure you engage the correct extension spring (number of turns) at the specified location.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

2.29 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The four-way lumbar support is similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.29 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support”, page 229 .

2.30 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.30 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support”, page 230 .

2.31 Exploded view of backrest release mechanism (front)

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The release mechanism is similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.31 Exploded view of backrest release mechanism (front)”, page 232 .

2.32 Removing and installing backrest release handle (front)

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.32 Removing and installing backrest release handle (front)”, page 234 .

2.33 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism (front)

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.33 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism (front)”, page 234 .

2.34 Removing and installing bracket for trim for backrest release mechanism (front)

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.34 Removing and installing bracket for trim for backrest release mechanism (front)”, page 235 .

2.35 Removing and installing Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front)

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.35 Removing and installing Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front)”, page 236 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.36 Adjusting Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front)

The adjustment procedure is described for the sports seat (front). The procedure is similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.36 Adjusting Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front)”, page 239 .

2.37 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The Easy Entry facility is similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.37 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility”, page 241 .

2.38 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry facility

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.38 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry facility”, page 242 .

2.39 Removing and installing memory block

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.39 Removing and installing memory block”, page 244 .

2.40 Exploded view of storage compartment

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The storage compartment is similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.40 Exploded view of storage compartment”, page 244 .

2.41 Removing and installing storage compartment

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.41 Removing and installing storage compartment”, page 245 .

2.42 Exploded view of head restraint

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The head restraint is similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.43 Exploded view of head restraint”, page 247 .

2.43 Removing and installing head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.44 Removing and installing head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism”, page 248 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.44 Removing and installing head restraint guide without and with release button

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.45 Removing and installing head restraint guide without and with release button”, page 249 .

2.45 Overview of electrical and electronic components

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The electrical and electronic components are similar on the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.46 Overview of electrical and electronic components”, page 250 .

2.46 Exploded view of lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). On the standard seat (front) the lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors are similar.

⇒ “3.47 Exploded view of lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors”, page 251 .

2.47 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / -V126-

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.48 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor V125 / V126 ”, page 252 .

2.48 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / -V130-

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.49 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor V129 / V130 ”, page 254 .

2.49 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switches

The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The lumbar support adjustment switches are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.50 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switches”, page 256 .

2.50 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch

Removal and installation are described for the sports seat (front). The procedures are similar for the standard seat (front).

⇒ “3.51 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch E176 / E177 ”, page 257 .

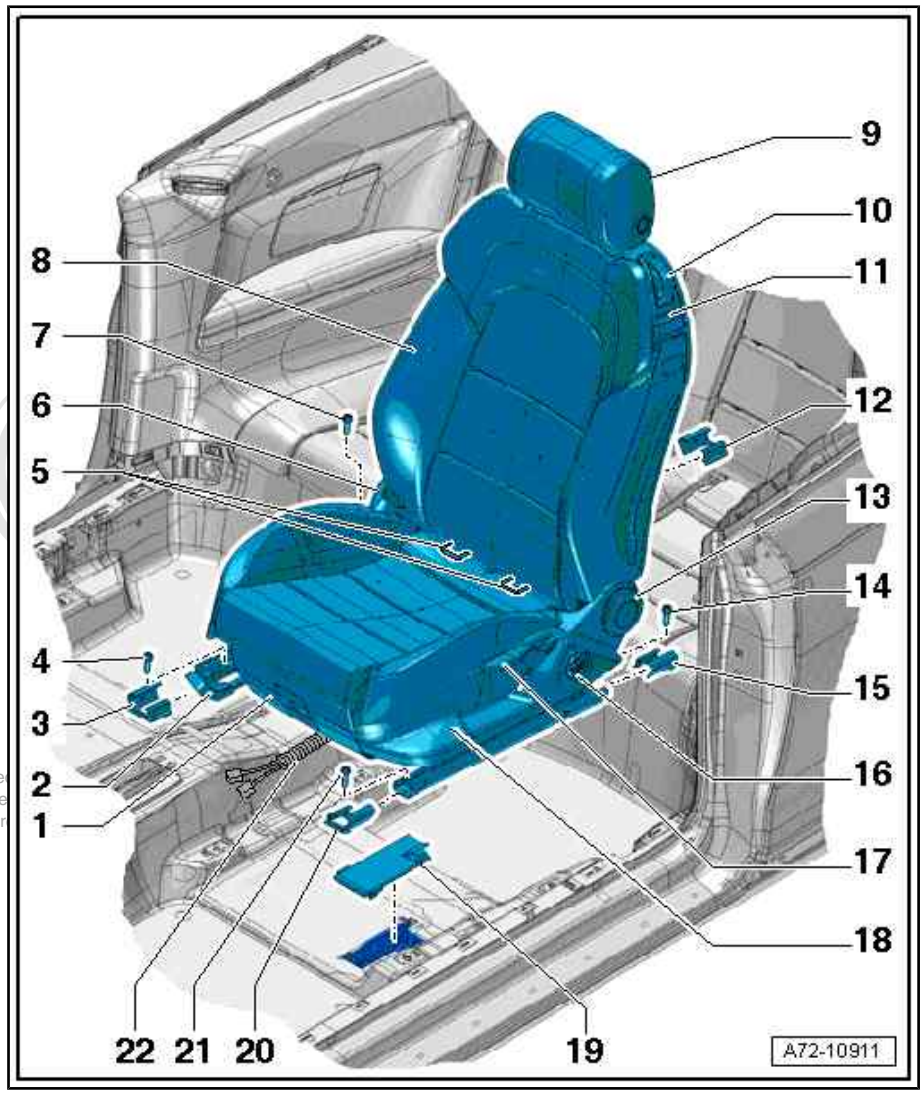
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3 Front seats - sports seat (with manual adjustment)

3.1 Exploded view of front seat - sports seat

Note

- *The exploded view relates to the driver's seat. The front passenger's seat is similar; the add-on components are fitted on the opposite sides.*
- *For greater clarity, the floor covering is not shown in the illustration.*



1 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 244
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 245

2 - Handle

- ❑ For seat longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 215

3 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail (front right)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm

5 - ISOFIX child seat anchor

- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ For front passenger's seat only
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 72
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 72
- ❑ Checking after an accident ⇒ page 59

6 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 205
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 209

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm

8 - Front seat

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 196

9 - Head restraint

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 247
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248

10 - Handle

- ❑ For releasing front seat backrest
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 232
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

11 - Trim

- ❑ For backrest release mechanism (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 232
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

12 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail (rear right)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 184

13 - Backrest adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 206

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

14 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm

15 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail (rear left)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 184

16 - Switch

- ❑ For lumbar support adjustment
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 256
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 257
- ❑ Removing and installing four-way lumbar support ⇒ page 230

17 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 210
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

18 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 205
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 207

19 - Cap

- ❑ For connector point

20 - Cover

- ❑ For seat rail (front left)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 183

21 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm

22 - Corrugated tube

- ❑ For modular wire routing
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 203
- ❑ Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat ⇒ page 203

3.2 Removing and installing front seat

Note

Removal and installation are described on the basis of the driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the front passenger's seat.

Removing

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Move seat as far back as possible.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

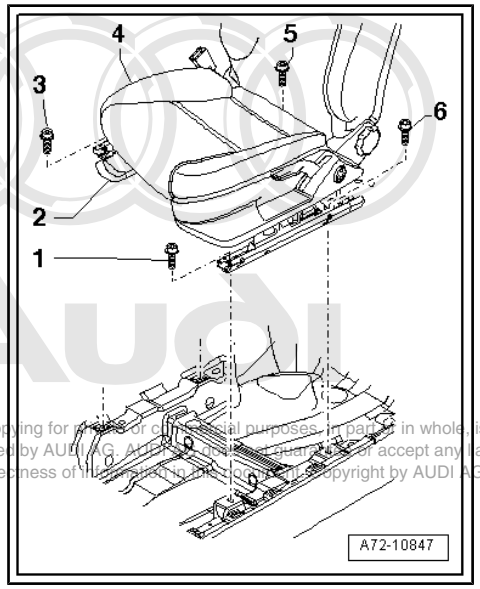
– Unplug connectors at connector point in floor ⇒ page 198 .

– Connect airbag adapter -VAS 6235- ⇒ page 201 .

– Move seat as far forwards as possible and unscrew bolts -5 and 6-.

– Move seat as far back as possible and unscrew bolts -1 and 3-.

– Lift seat out of vehicle with the assistance of a second mechanic.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*

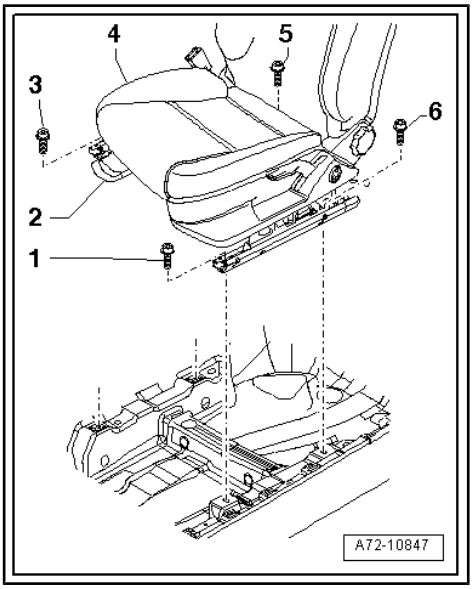
Caution

Do not adjust seat longitudinally until bolts -1 and 3- have been tightened.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Caution

Do not operate mechanical Easy Entry facility until bolts -1, 3, 5 and 6- have been tightened.



- Install seat before detaching airbag adapter -VAS 6235- ⇒ page 201 .
- Position and hand-tighten bolts -1 and 3-.
- Move seat as far forwards as possible.
- Position and hand-tighten bolts -5 and 6-.
- Move seat as far back as possible and tighten bolts in the sequence -1 and 3-.
- Move seat as far forwards as possible and tighten bolts in the sequence -5 and 6-.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

- Plug in connectors at couplings of connector point in floor ⇒ page 198 .
- Switch on ignition.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

- With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 194

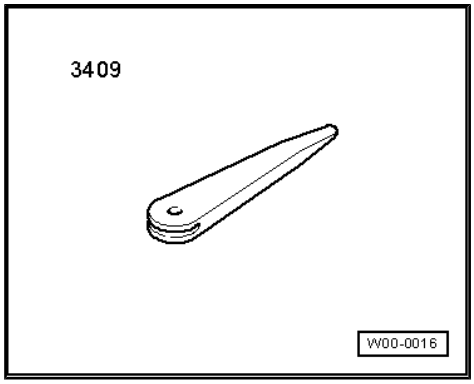
3.3 Unplugging and plugging in connectors

Note

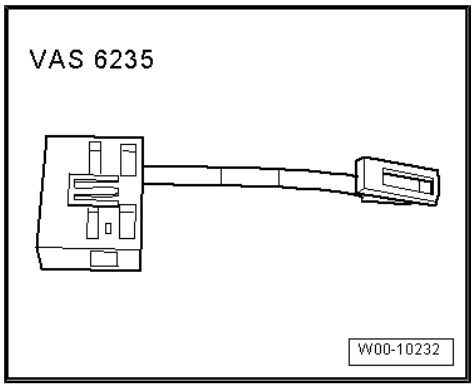
The connector point is located in the vehicle floor under the front area of the seat.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



- Airbag adapter -VAS 6235-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

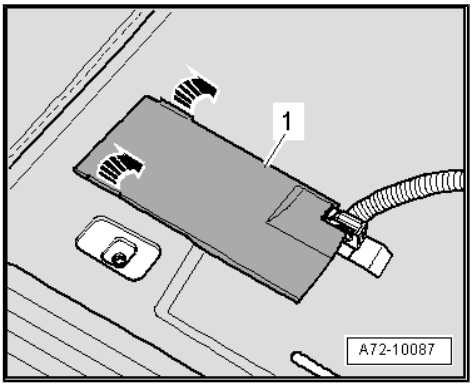
Unplugging connectors

WARNING

Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ***⇒ page 49*** ***.***

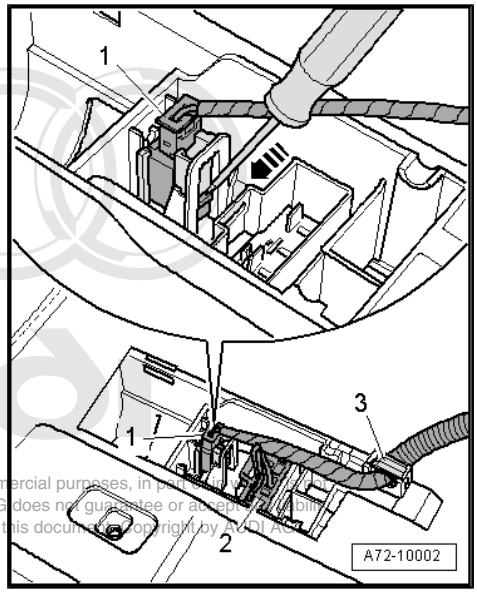
– Move head restraint to lowest detent position.
– Move seat as far towards rear and top as possible.
– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to unclip cover -1- at front and detach cover from connector point in direction of -arrow-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Lift cable retainer -3- off connector point.



Note

The number of connectors may vary depending on equipment.

WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.

– Use a small screwdriver to release retaining clip in direction of -arrow- and unplug electrical connector -1- for side airbag.
– Attach airbag adapter -VAS 6235- to connector for side airbag on front seat ⇒ page 201 .
– Equipment version with seat heating: Unplug electrical connector -2-.

Copyright by AUDI AG. Reproduction by any means for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Plugging in connectors

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Plug in connectors in reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

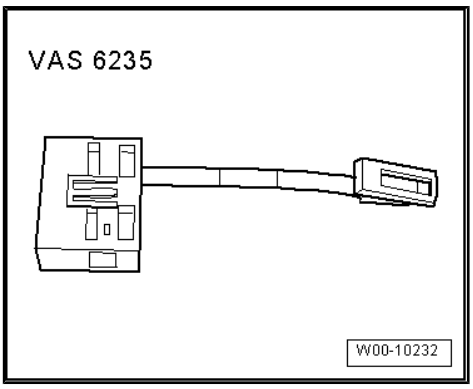
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.4 Connecting airbag adapter

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Airbag adapter -VAS 6235-



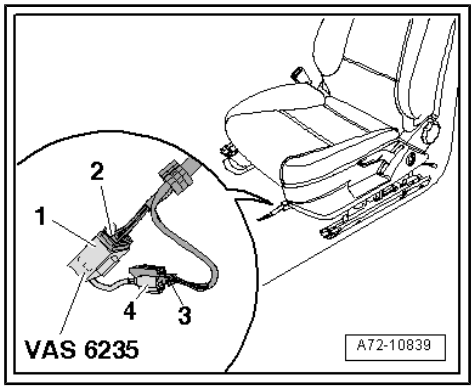
Unplugging airbag connector

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Unplug connector for side airbag ⇒ page 198 .
– Attach connector -4- of airbag adapter -VAS 6235- to connector for side airbag -3- (on seat).
– If fitted, connect airbag adapter -VAS 6235- / power supply connector -1- to power supply connector -2- on seat.



WARNING

Leave airbag adapter -VAS 6235- connected to seat until seat has been re-installed.

Note

Make sure airbag adapter engages properly.

Plugging in airbag connector

Connectors for airbag are plugged in in reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.5 Connectors in connector point

Connector assignment ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Electrical fault finding and Fitting locations

3.6 Exploded view of modular wire routing

1 - Connector

- ❑ For power supply

2 - Cable retainer

- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 204

3 - Lower shell for corrugated tube

- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 203

4 - Upper shell for corrugated tube

- ❑ Observe correct installation position ⇒ page 203

5 - Connector

- ❑ For side airbag

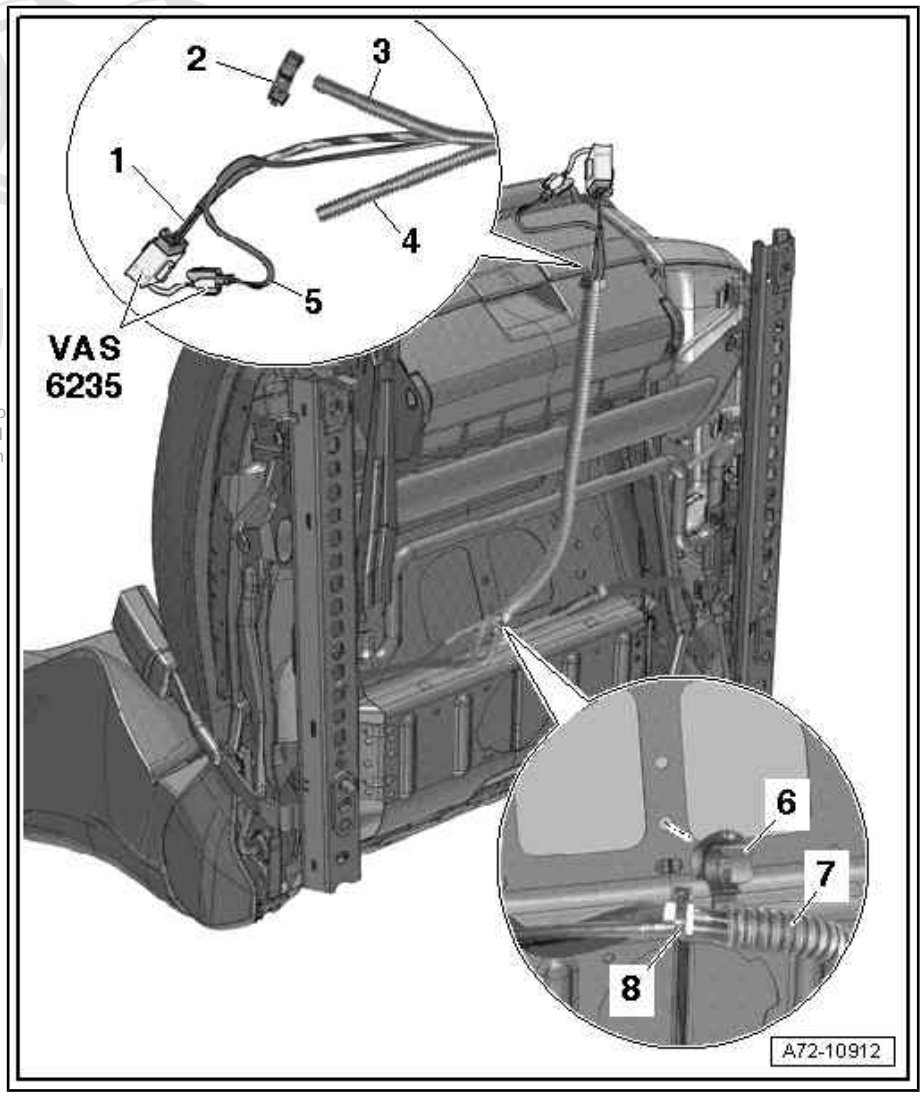
6 - Cable retainer

7 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Note information on routing of wiring harness in corrugated tube ⇒ page 203

8 - Cable tie

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information



3.7 Modular wire routing with corrugated tube at front seat

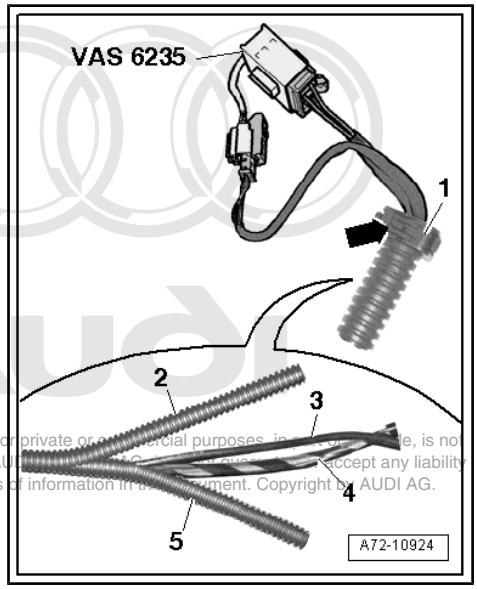
Note

- *The full sheathing for the entire wiring harness with fabric tape between the seat pan and the connectors to the connector point was discontinued with the introduction of the modular wire routing. Instead, a two-shell corrugated tube is used in which the individual wires are laid separately.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Opening corrugated tube and removing individual wire

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*



– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Release cable retainer -1- with a screwdriver -arrow- and detach from corrugated tube.
– Remove corrugated tube from cable retainer underneath seat.
– Remove upper shell for corrugated tube -2- from lower shell for corrugated tube -5-.
– Open lower shell for corrugated tube and take out defective wire -4- or -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

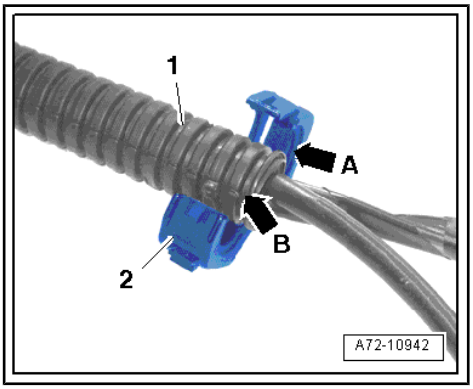
Fitting individual wires and closing corrugated tube

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Take care not to twist any wires when bunching the individual wires and inserting them in the corrugated tube.

Note

Observe correct installation positions of two-piece corrugated tube in relation to wiring harness and cable retainer in relation to corrugated tube.



– Make sure two-piece corrugated tube is properly closed over its entire length.
– After assembling the two halves -1- of the corrugated tube, position the cable retainer -2- as shown and clip into place.
– Make sure side -arrow A- of cable retainer makes immediate contact with final bead -arrow B- on corrugated tube.
– Place cable ties, cable retainers and retaining clips in same position as prior to disassembly.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.8 Removing and installing seat rail cover (front)

- Removal and installation are described for the standard seat (front). The procedures are similar for the sports seat (front).
- Removing and installing the seat rail cover (front) is described on the basis of the driver's seat rail cover (sill side). Removal and installation of the cover (tunnel side) are similar.

⇒ "2.8 Removing and installing seat rail cover (front)", page 183 .

3.9 Removing and installing seat rail cover (rear)

- Removal and installation are described for the standard seat (front). The procedures are similar for the sports seat (front).
- Removing and installing the seat rail cover (rear) is described on the basis of the driver's seat rail cover (sill side). Removal and installation of the cover (tunnel side) are similar.

⇒ "2.9 Removing and installing seat rail cover (rear)", page 184 .

3.10 Exploded view of trim (sill side and tunnel side)

1 - Front seat

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.5 Nm

3 - Trim (tunnel side)

- ❑ Can only be renewed after removing seat
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 209

4 - Spreader rivet

5 - Trim (sill side)

- ❑ Can be renewed with seat installed
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 207

6 - Backrest adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 206

Protected by co
permitted unles
with respect

7 - Spreader rivet

8 - Switch

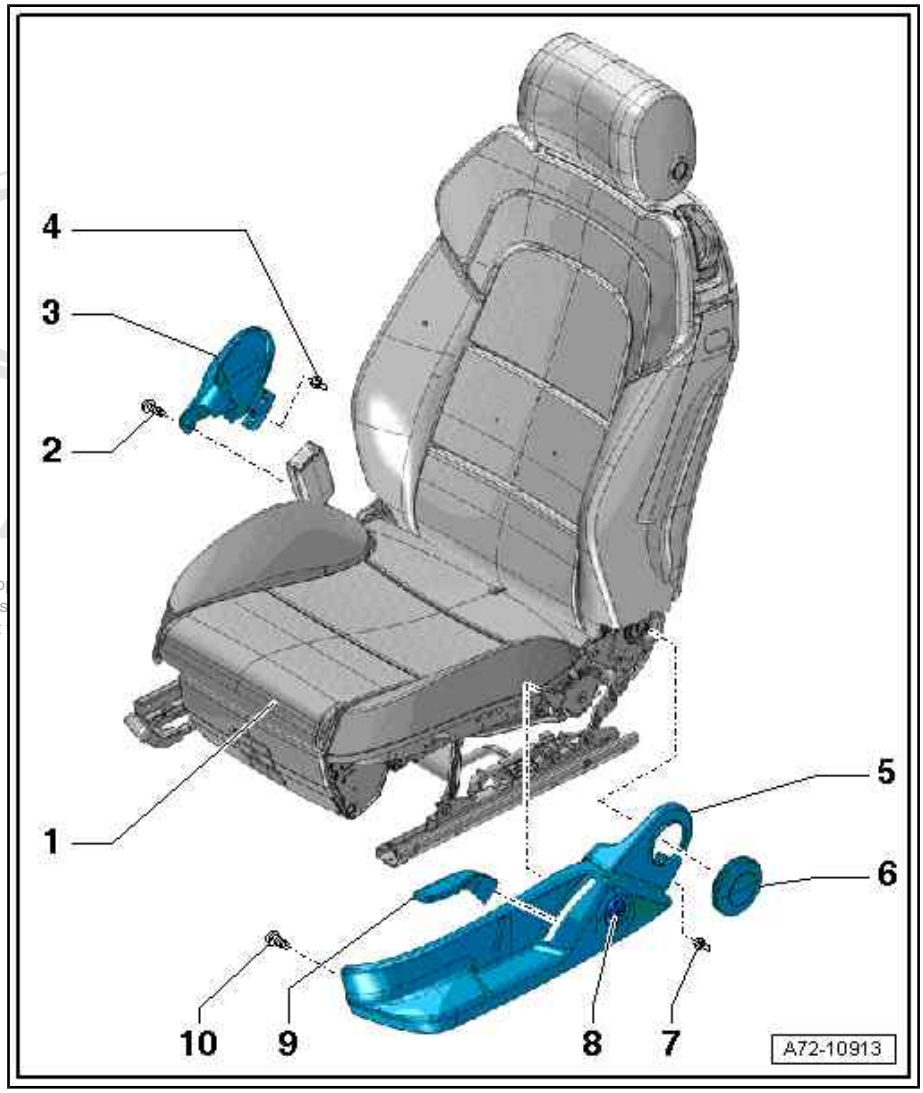
- ❑ For lumbar support adjustment
- ❑ Depending on equipment version
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 256
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 257

9 - Seat height adjuster

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 0.5 Nm



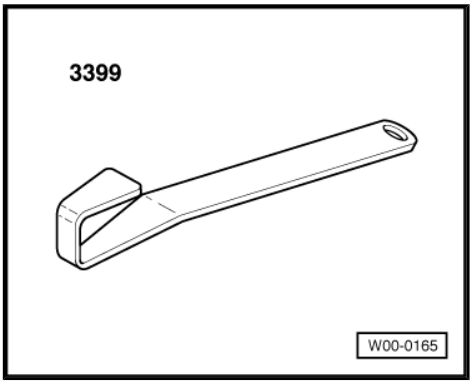
3.11 Removing and installing backrest adjuster

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

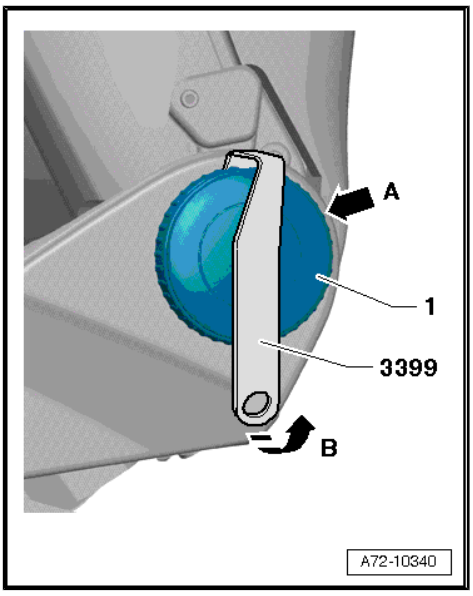
Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Assembly tool -3399-



Removing

– Turn backrest adjuster -1- until detent is visible from rear -arrow A-. Use a torch if necessary.
– Hook in assembly tool -3399- and lever it in direction of -arrow B-.
– Turn backrest adjuster a further 120 °.
– Hook in assembly tool -3399- and lever it in direction of -arrow B-.
– Remove backrest adjuster.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew backrest adjuster if it is too loose after assembly.

3.12 Removing and installing trim (sill side)

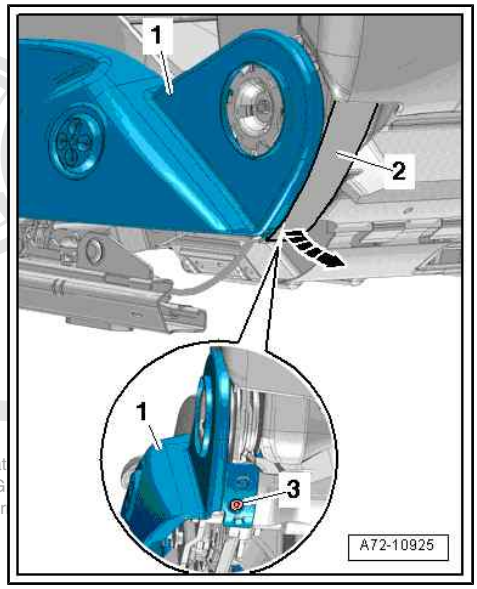
Note

♦ *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
♦ *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

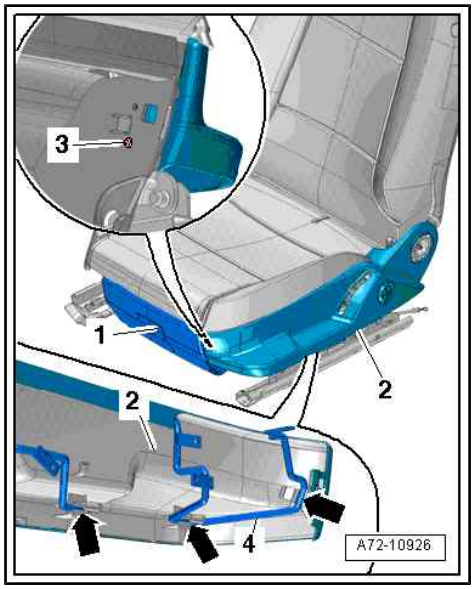
Removing

– Move seat as far up as possible.
– Remove backrest adjuster ⇒ page 206 .
– Remove seat height adjuster ⇒ page 211 .
– Unclip seat cover -2- at trim (sill side) -1- -arrow-.
– Remove spreader rivet -3- at trim (sill side).



Protected by copyright. Copying for privat
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of infor

– Open storage compartment -1-, take out first-aid kit and unscrew bolt -3-.
– Unfasten clips -arrows- and unclip trim -2- from retaining bracket -4-.
– Disengage trim in area of backrest adjuster at backrest and seat fitting.
– Detach trim from retaining bracket towards top front.

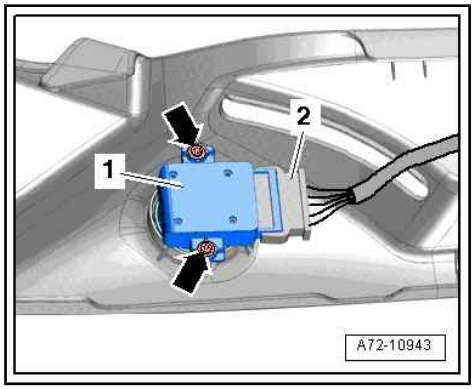


– Equipment version with four-way lumbar support: Unplug electrical connector -2- at lumbar support adjustment switch -1-.

Note

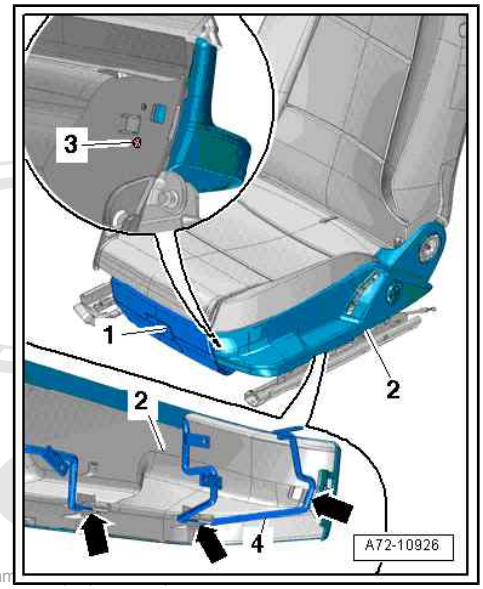
-Arrows- can be disregarded.

– Detach trim (sill side).



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:



Note

Make sure that trim (sill side) -2- is properly engaged at retaining bracket -4- and that lockable clips -arrows- are fastened.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 205

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or comm
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.13 Removing and installing trim (tunnel side)

Note

- *Removal and installation are only possible after seat has been removed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

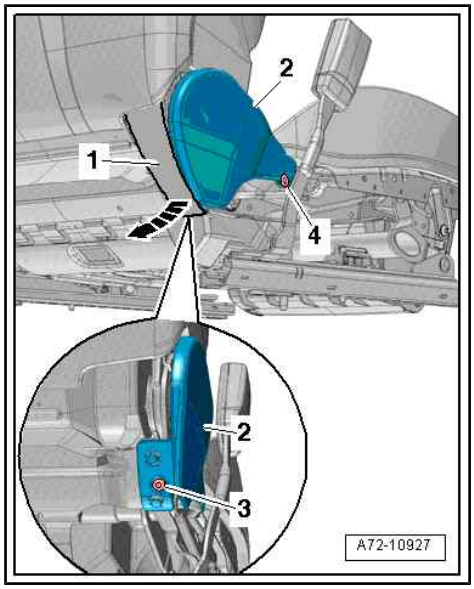
Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Unscrew belt buckle (front) and swivel downwards ⇒ page 65 .

– Remove bolt -4-.
– Unclip seat cover -1- at trim (tunnel side) -2- -arrow-.
– Remove spreader rivet -3- and lift off trim (tunnel side).



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 64 , ⇒ page 205 .

3.14 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

The exploded view relates to the standard seat (front). The retaining bracket for trim (sill side) is similar on the sports seat (front).

⇒ "2.14 Exploded view of retaining bracket for trim (sill side)", page 185

3.15 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)

Removal and installation are described for the standard seat (front). The procedures are similar for the sports seat (front).

⇒ "2.15 Removing and installing retaining bracket for trim (sill side)", page 186

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.16 Exploded view of seat height adjuster unit and seat height adjuster

1 - Bolt
- ❑ 8 Nm

2 - Bolts
- ❑ 4.5 Nm

3 - Lever
- ❑ For seat height adjuster

4 - Retaining clip
- ❑ Installation position ⇒ page 212

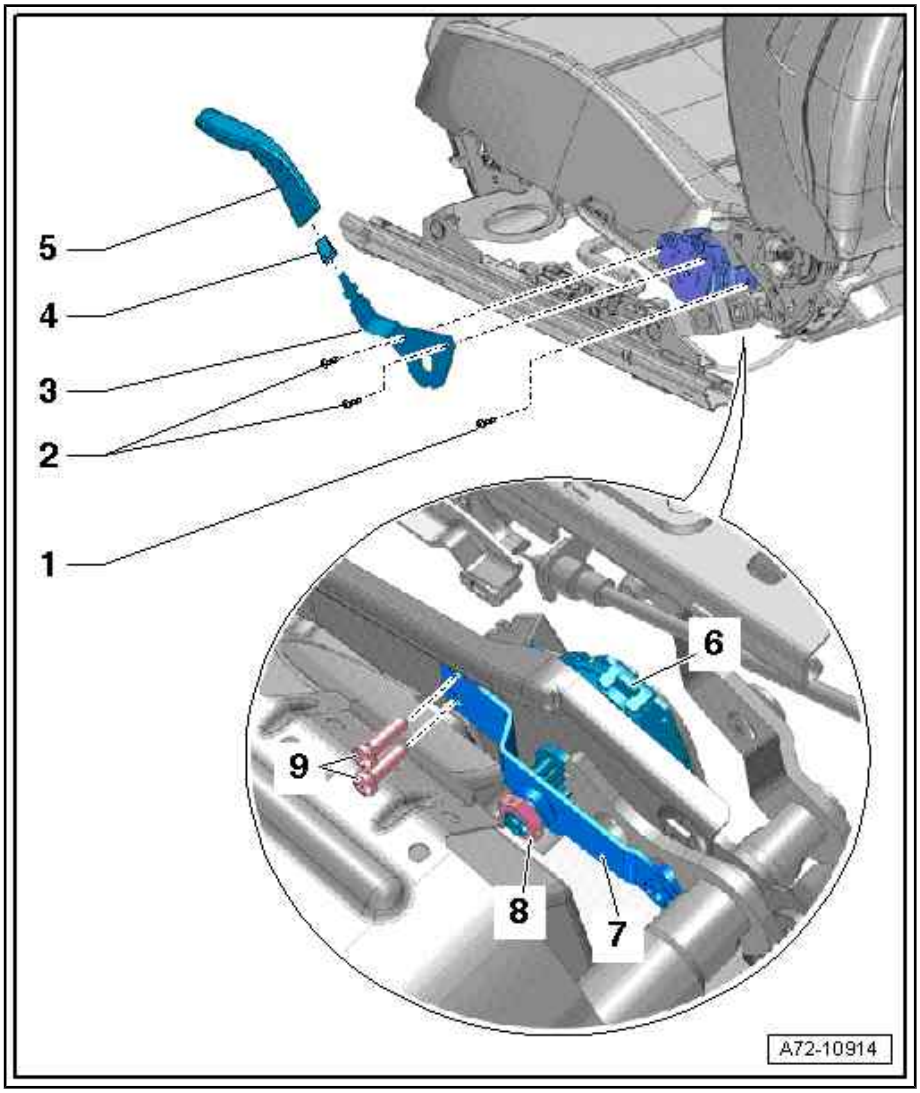
5 - Seat height adjuster
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 211

6 - Seat height adjuster unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

7 - Retaining plate
- ❑ For seat height adjuster unit
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 212

8 - Nut
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ 12 Nm

9 - Bolts
- ❑ 8 Nm



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.17 Removing and installing seat height adjuster

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

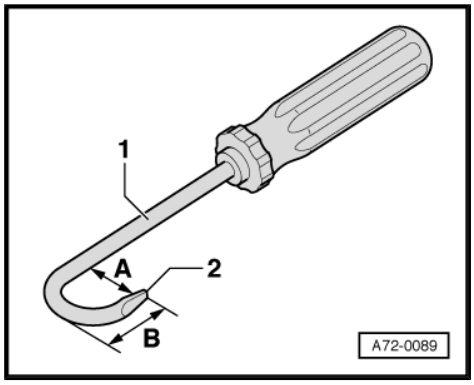
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Improvised tool

– Bend a screwdriver -1- with a width -2- of 3.5 mm to dimensions:

♦ A = 20 mm

♦ B = max. 15 mm



Removing

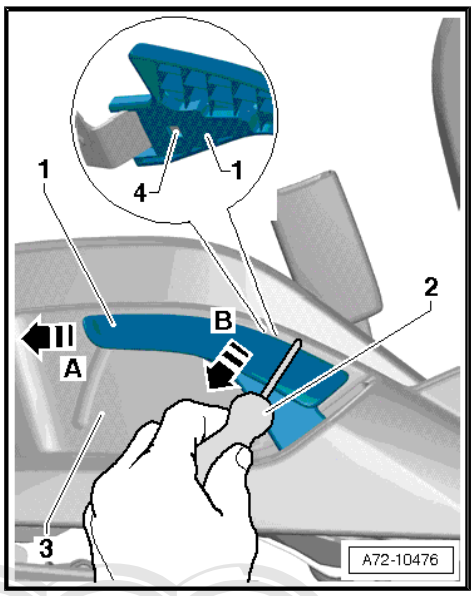
– Pull seat height adjuster -1- as far upwards as possible and hold it in this position.

– Carefully pull seat height adjuster slightly off front seat.

– Insert improvised tool -2- in mounting -4-.

– Pull improvised tool in direction of -arrow B- and when doing so press fastener spring outwards.

– Pull seat height adjuster -1- off lever in direction of -arrow A-.



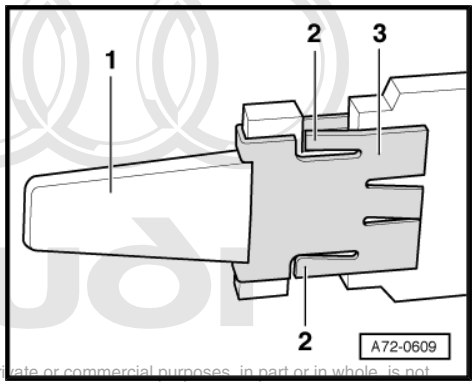
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew retaining clip at seat height adjuster lever, observing correct installation position of retaining clip:

• Springs -2- (2x) of retaining clip -3- must be located on outside of lever -1-.

– Make sure seat height adjuster engages properly with fastener.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.18 Removing and installing seat height adjuster unit

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

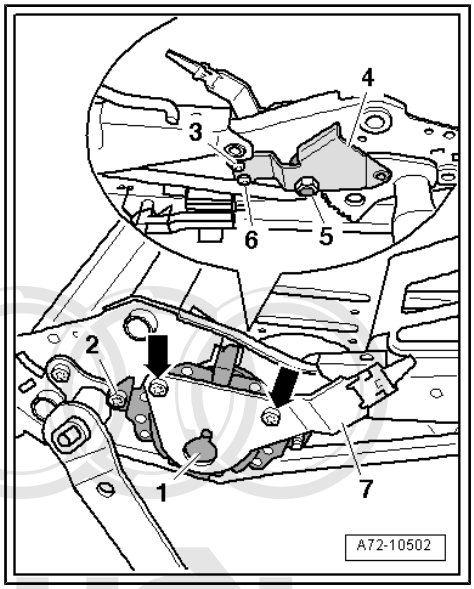
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 207 .

– Unscrew nut -5-.
– Remove bolts -2, 3, 6-.
– Detach seat height adjuster unit -1- and retaining plate -4-.



Note

If the seat height adjuster unit is renewed, remove bolts -arrows- and detach operating lever -7-.

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

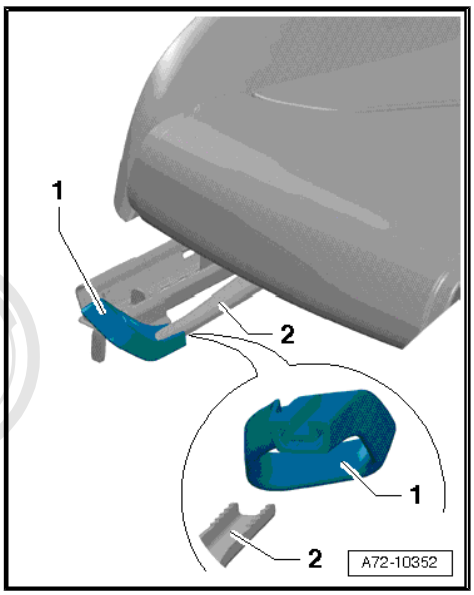
Tightening torque ⇒ page 210

3.19 Removing and installing seat longitudinal adjustment handle

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*
- *The seat longitudinal adjustment handle cannot be removed without damaging it.*

Removing



– Operate seal longitudinal adjustment handle and move seat as far forwards as possible.

– Use a rubber-headed or plastic-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle -1- off handle mounting -2-.

Note

For greater clarity, the detail has been turned 180° in the illustration.

Installing

– Slide seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting.

– Use a rubber-headed hammer to knock seat longitudinal adjustment handle onto handle mounting as far as stop.

Note

When knocking on seat longitudinal adjustment handle, take care not to damage surface.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.20 Exploded view of torsion bar

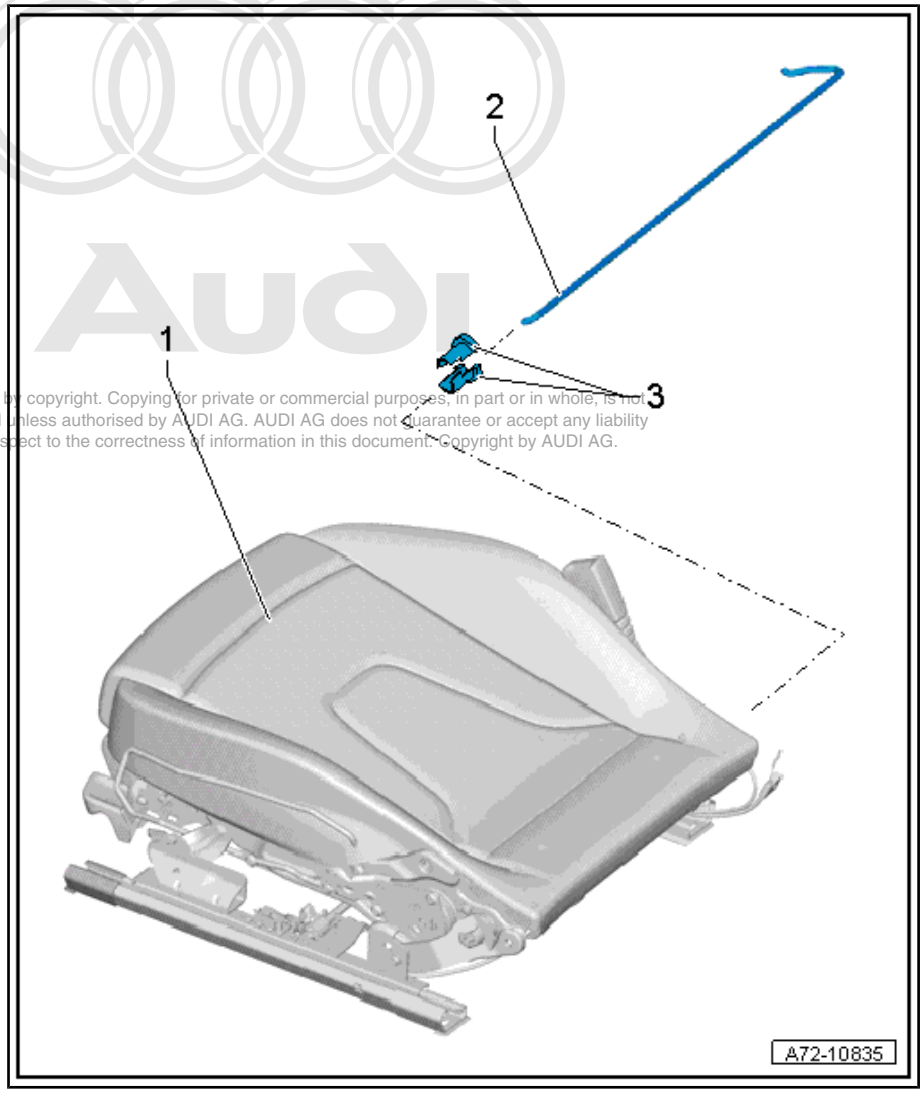
1 - Seat pan

2 - Torsion bar

- ❑ Also termed HV spring
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 216

3 - Bearing

- ❑ 2-piece
- ❑ Pushed into guide
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 219



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

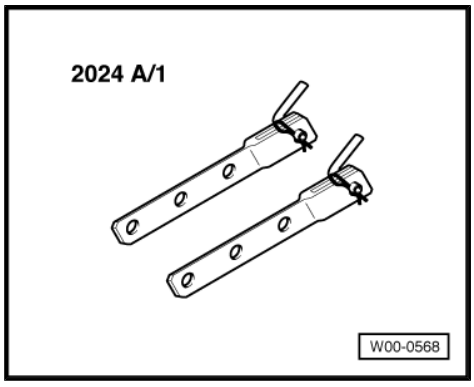
3.21 Removing and installing torsion bar

Note

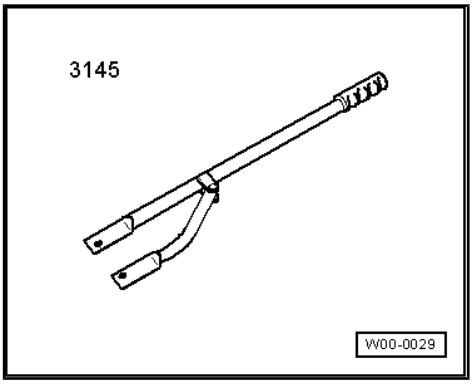
Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Extension -2024 A /1-



- Bracket -3145-



- Shackle ∅ 8 mm (commercially available)
- M10x30 bolt and nut

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 207 .
– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 209 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

WARNING

The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:

- *Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.*
- *Never use pliers or other levering aids.*
- *Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.*

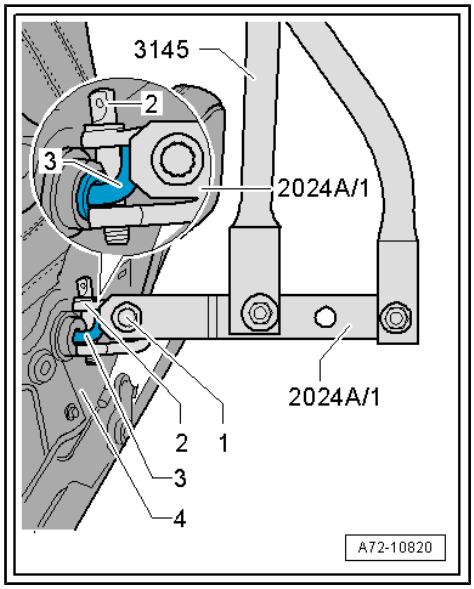
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Secure counterhold tool -3145- to torsion bar -3- with extension -2024 A /1- and shackle -2- (as shown).

1 - M10x30 bolt with nut

– Carefully rotate torsion bar until it can be disengaged from hook in seat pan -4-.

– Pull torsion bar out of seat pan with extension -2024 A /1- .



Installing

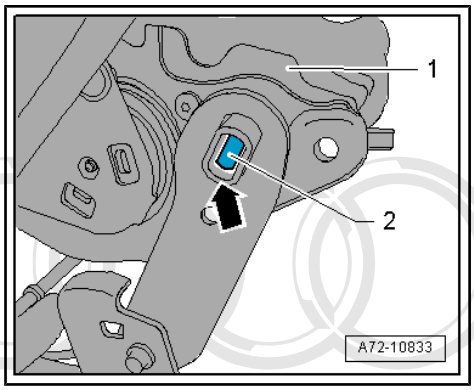
WARNING

The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:

- ***Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.***
- ***Never use pliers or other levering aids.***
- ***Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.***

– Push torsion bar -3- into mounting until end makes contact with seat pan.

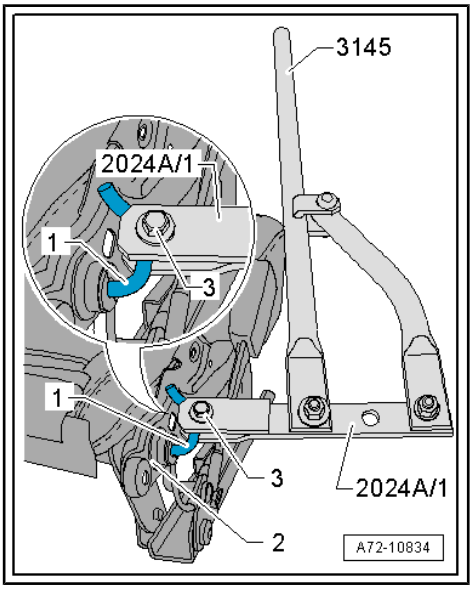
– Make sure torsion bar -2- is positioned correctly in support bracket -arrow- of seat pan -1-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Apply counter-hold tool -3145- at torsion bar -1- with extension -2024 A /1- and bolt connection -3-, but without shackle.

– Rotate torsion bar -1- and carefully push it until it can be engaged in hook on seat pan -2-.



Further installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.22 Removing and installing bearing

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Caution

Move front seat to top position if possible. This will reduce the spring force when removing and installing the torsion bar and minimise the risk of damage to the bolt fittings between the seat pan upper and lower frame.

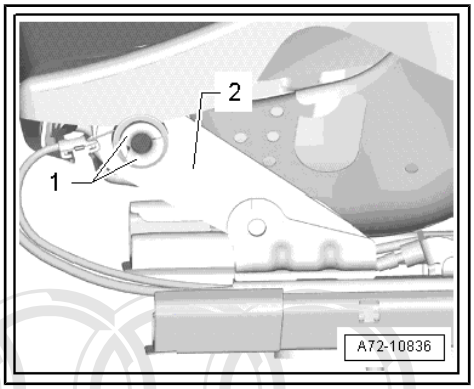
WARNING

The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:

- *Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.*
- *Never use pliers or other levering aids.*
- *Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.*

– Remove torsion bar ⇒ page 216 .

– Pull both halves of bearing -1- out of guide -2-.



Installing

WARNING

The torsion bar exerts a considerable spring force. To avoid accidents, it is important that you observe the following points:

- *Always remove and install the torsion bar in the sequence described, and use only the specified tools.*
- *Never use pliers or other levering aids.*
- *Do not stand directly in front of the torsion bar when removing and installing it, but off to the side.*

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.23 Renewing bottom part of seat / seat pan

Note

- *On the front seat (with manual adjustment), the bottom part of the seat should not be separated from the top part of the seat (seat pan).*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

– Detach cover with padding from seat pan ⇒ page 273 .

– Remove seat height adjuster unit ⇒ page 212 .

Installing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Insert cover and padding (removed earlier) in new seat pan.

Further installation is carried out in the reverse order, note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

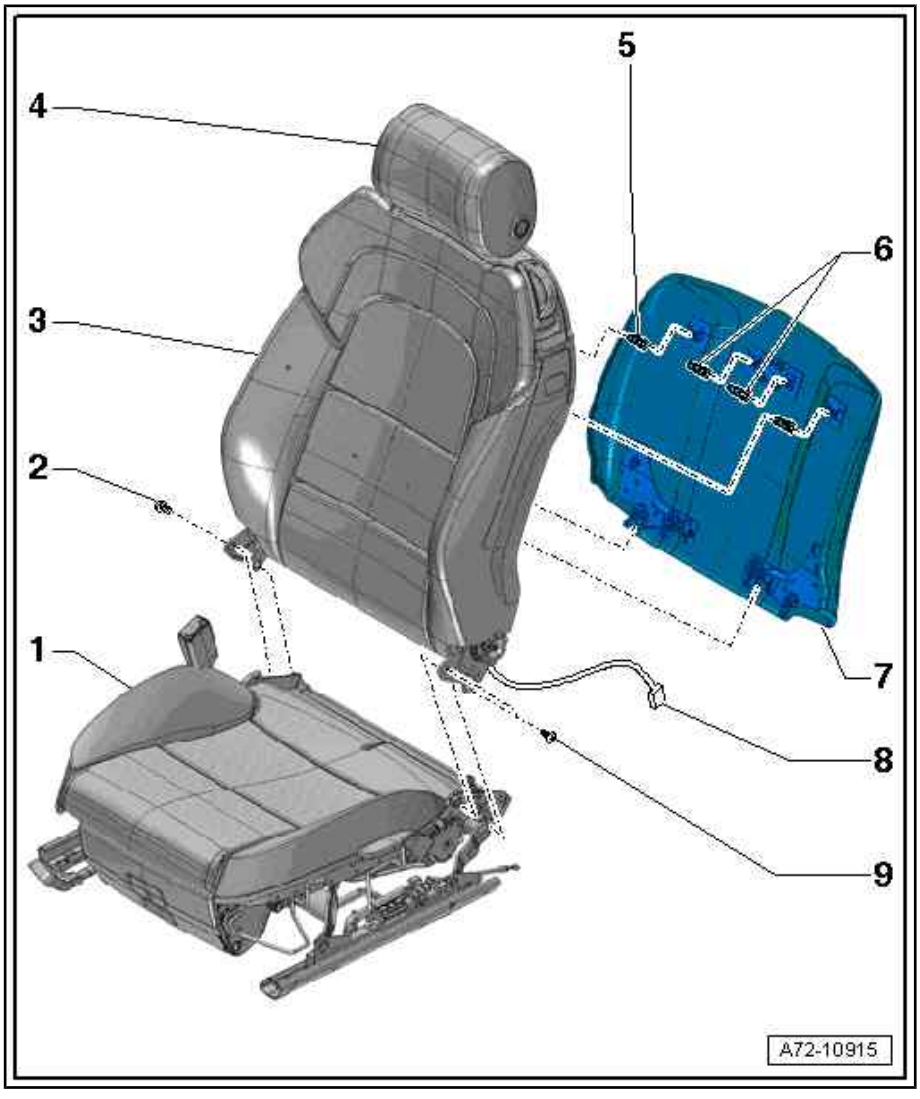
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.24 Exploded view of front seat backrest



1 - Seat pan

2 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 34 Nm

3 - Front seat backrest

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 226

4 - Head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248

5 - Outer clip

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Insert in trim
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

6 - Inner clips

- ❑ Insert in backrest (with catches)
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

7 - Backrest cover panel

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 224

8 - Wiring harness

- ❑ Continuous from side airbag to connector point
- ❑ Depending on equipment version there may also be additional wiring harnesses, e.g. seat heating, lumbar support

9 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Always clean threaded holes for bolts using e.g. a thread tap
- ❑ 34 Nm

3.25 Removing and installing backrest cover panel

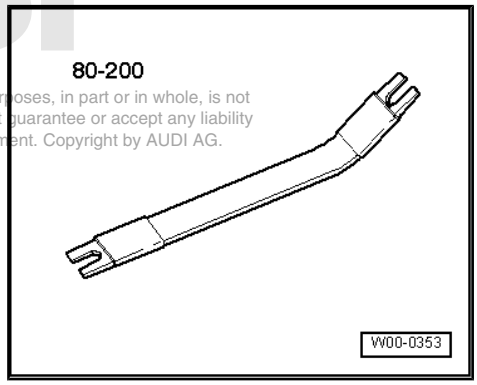
Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*
- *The description relates to the equipment version with the backrest cover panel without luggage net.*
- *The luggage net cannot be separated from the backrest cover panel and can only be renewed together with the backrest cover panel.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

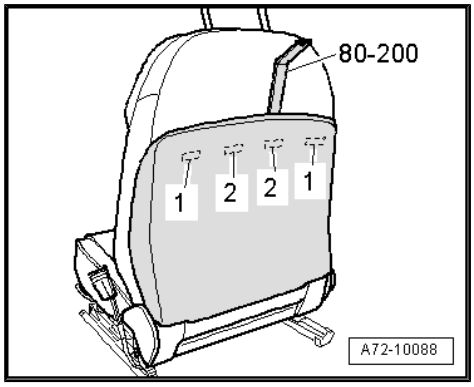
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing

– Reach in between backrest and backrest cover panel at outer sides of backrest and release outer clips -1- by pulling slightly.

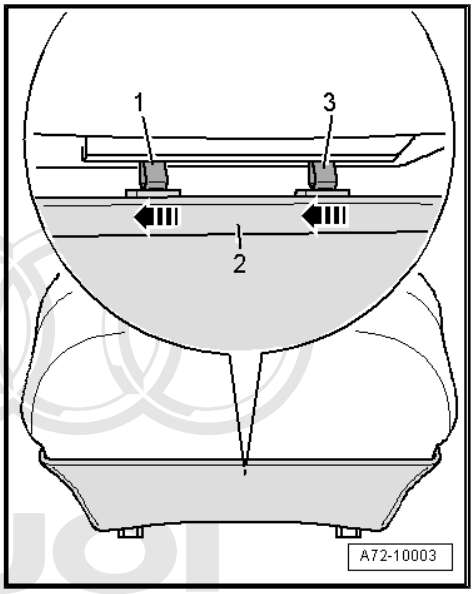


Note

The inner clips (with catches) -2- at the backrest frame can only be unfastened to the first stop.

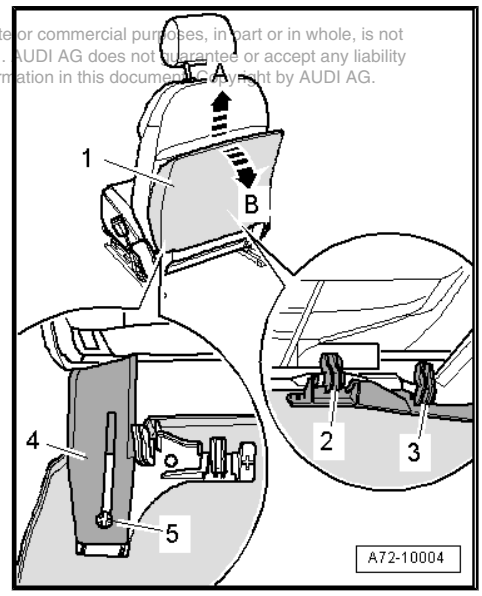
– Use removal lever -80 - 200- to release inner clips -2- as far as first stop.

– To unhook inner clips (with catches) -1- and -3- completely, you must slide backrest cover panel -2- in direction of -arrow-.



– Pull backrest cover panel -1- up slightly -arrow A-, disengaging guide lugs -2- and -3- at backrest frame.
– Swivel backrest cover panel towards the rear -arrow B-.
– Disengage tab -4- (left and right) from guide -5-.
– Detach backrest cover.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

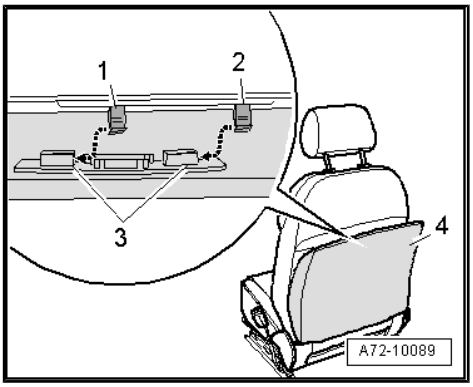


Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

- *If there are still clips for the backrest cover panel in the mounting points, they must be removed and inserted in the backrest cover panel when installing.*
- *Check the clips for damage or deformation and renew them if necessary.*



– Insert clips (with catches) -1- and -2- into guides -3- at backrest cover panel -4- in direction of -arrow-.
– Position backrest cover panel and press on until it engages audibly.

3.26 Removing and installing front seat backrest

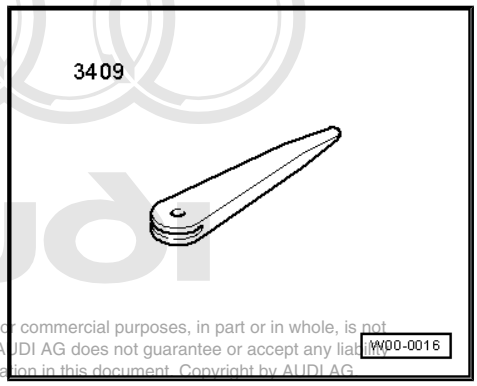
Note

Removal and installation are described for the standard driver's seat. The procedures are similar for the front passenger's seat and other seat versions.

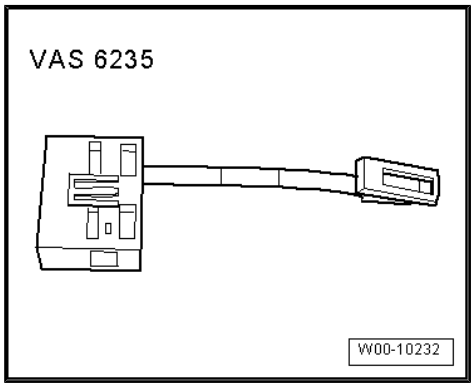
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-



- Airbag adapter -VAS 6235-



Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

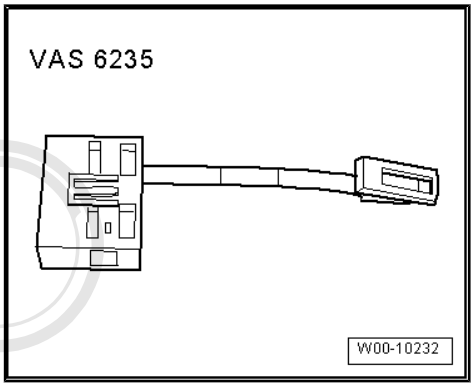
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove trim (tunnel side) ⇒ page 209 .
– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 207 .
– Remove backrest cover panel ⇒ page 224 .

– Unclip electrical wiring harness and cable retainer for corrugated tube on underside of seat pan.
– Unplug connectors of wiring harnesses to backrest and move clear disconnected wiring harnesses.

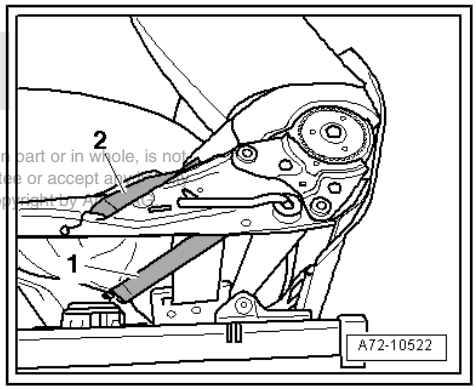
Note

There is a continuous wiring harness between the connector point and the side airbag.

– Plug in connector -2- of airbag adapter -VAS 6235- at electrical connector -1- for side airbag.

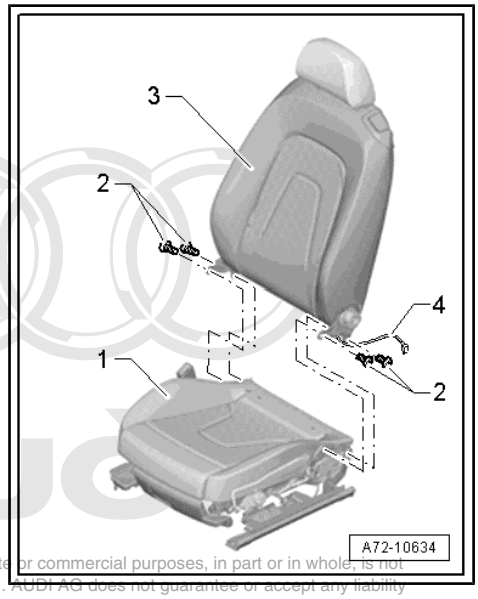


– Disengage rubber straps -1- and -2- (left and right).



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Remove bolts -2-.
– Swivel backrest -3- forwards onto seat pan -1-.
– Press seat pan padding to side and carefully pull wiring harness for side airbag -4- and any other wiring harnesses leading to backrest (depending on equipment version) out of seat pan.
– Detach backrest.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 223

3.27 Exploded view of spring mat

The exploded view relates to the standard seat (front). The spring mat is similar for the sports seat (front).

⇒ “2.27 Exploded view of spring mat”, page 187

3.28 Removing and installing spring mat

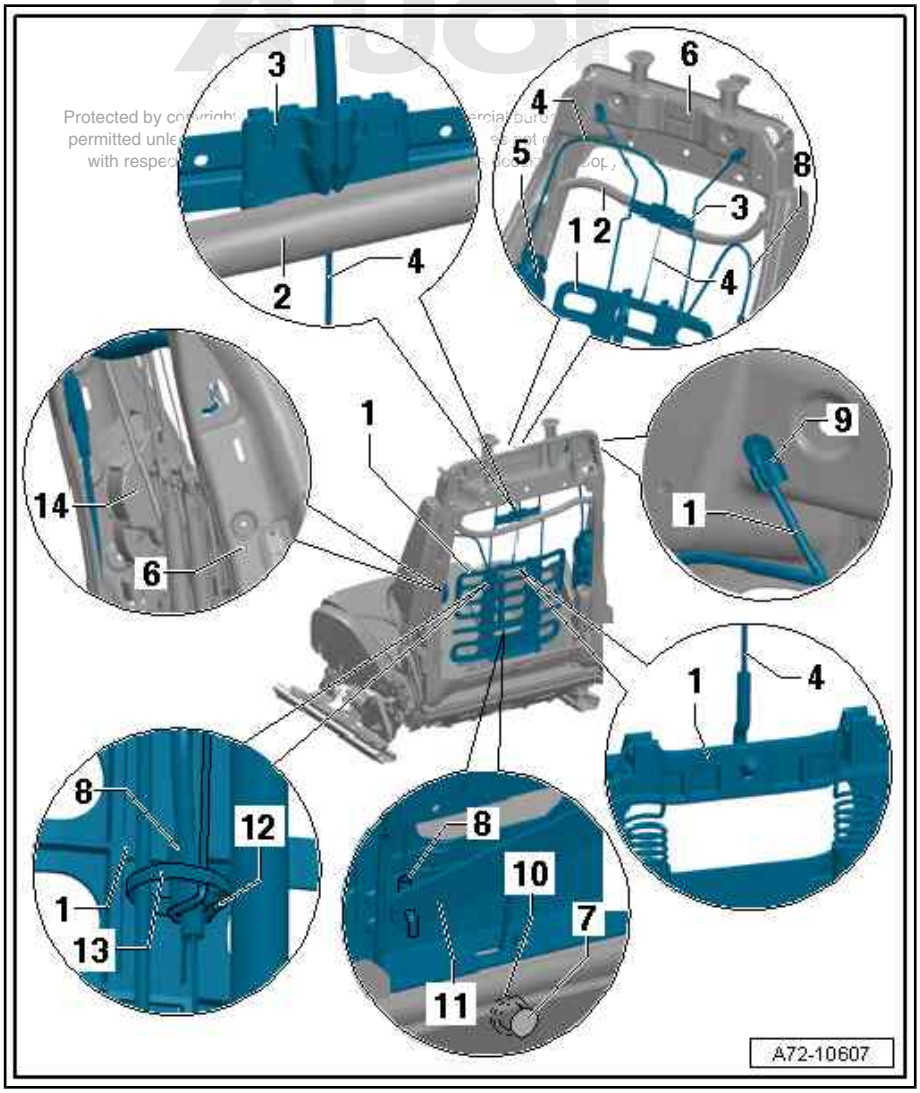
Removal and installation are described for the standard seat (front). The procedures are similar for the sports seat (front).

⇒ “2.28 Removing and installing spring mat”, page 188

3.29 Exploded view of four-way lumbar support

Note

For greater clarity, the cover with padding for the backrest is not shown in the illustration.



1 - Four-way lumbar support

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 230

2 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For Easy Entry facility

3 - Clip

- ❑ For guiding Bowden cable -item 4-

4 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For lumbar support height adjustment
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with lumbar support height adjustment motor

5 - Motor

- ❑ For lumbar support height adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 251
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 254

6 - Backrest frame

7 - Rivet

- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-
- ❑ A plastic washer -item 10- must be inserted between lumbar support and backrest frame before riveting on

8 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For lumbar support longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor

9 - Clip

10 - Plastic washer

- ❑ Between four-way lumbar support and backrest frame

11 - Retaining plate

12 - Support

13 - Cable tie

14 - Motor

- ❑ For lumbar support longitudinal adjustment

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 251
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 252

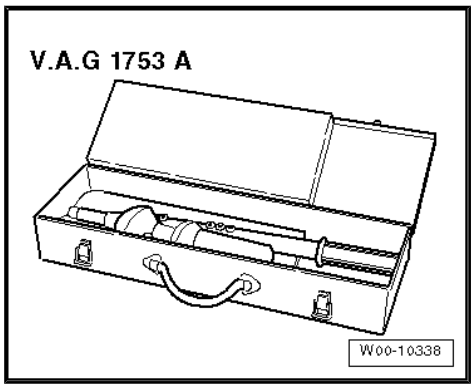
3.30 Removing and installing four-way lumbar support

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



- ♦ Drill
- ♦ Safety goggles

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing

WARNING

- ♦ *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- ♦ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 278 .

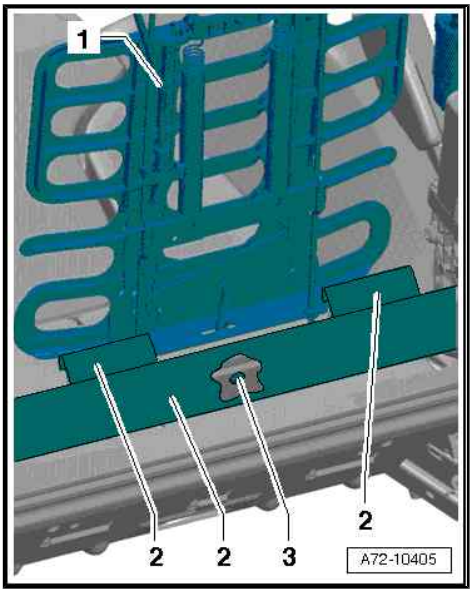
– Use a screwdriver to prise out fastening strips -2-.

WARNING

Risk of injury!

- *Wear safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivet -3-.

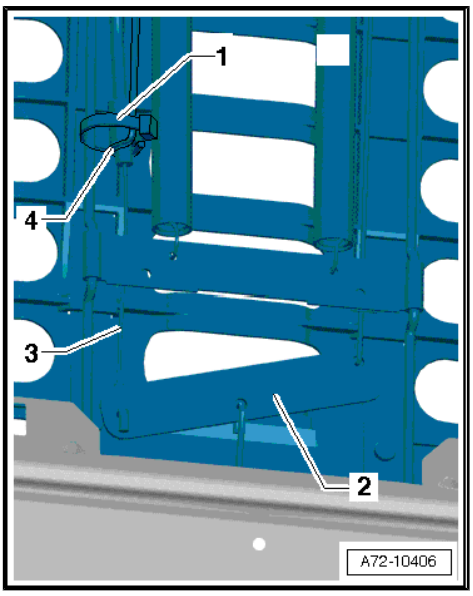


– Disengage Bowden cable -3- from retaining plate -2-.

– Unfasten cable tie -1-.

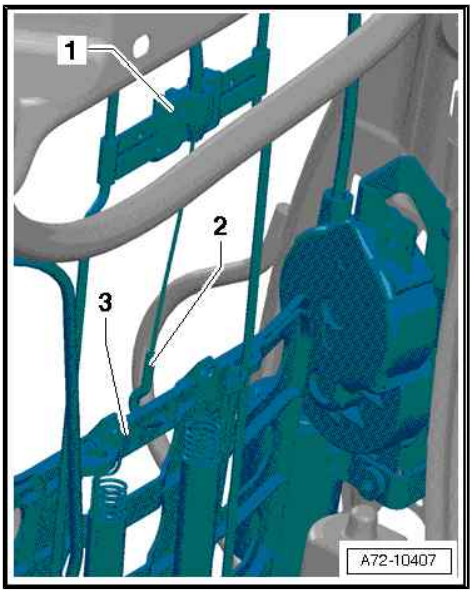
– Thread Bowden cable out of bracket -4-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



– Disengage Bowden cable -2- from four-way lumbar support -3-.

– Disengage Bowden cable from clip -1-.

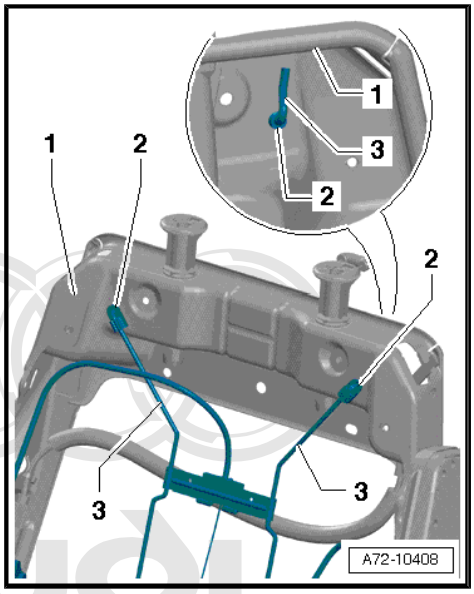


– Disengage four-way lumbar support -3- at top left and right from clips -2- and backrest frame -1-.
– Take out four-way lumbar support.

Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

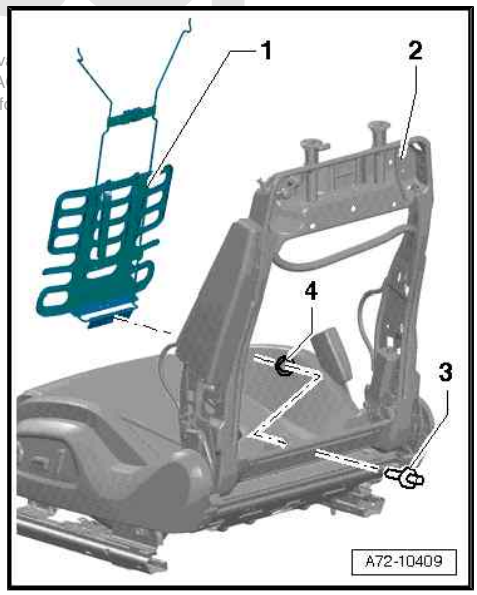


Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Before riveting on lumbar support, fit a plastic washer -4- between lumbar support -1- and backrest frame -2-.

3 - Rivet

Protected by copyright. Copying for priv
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of inf



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

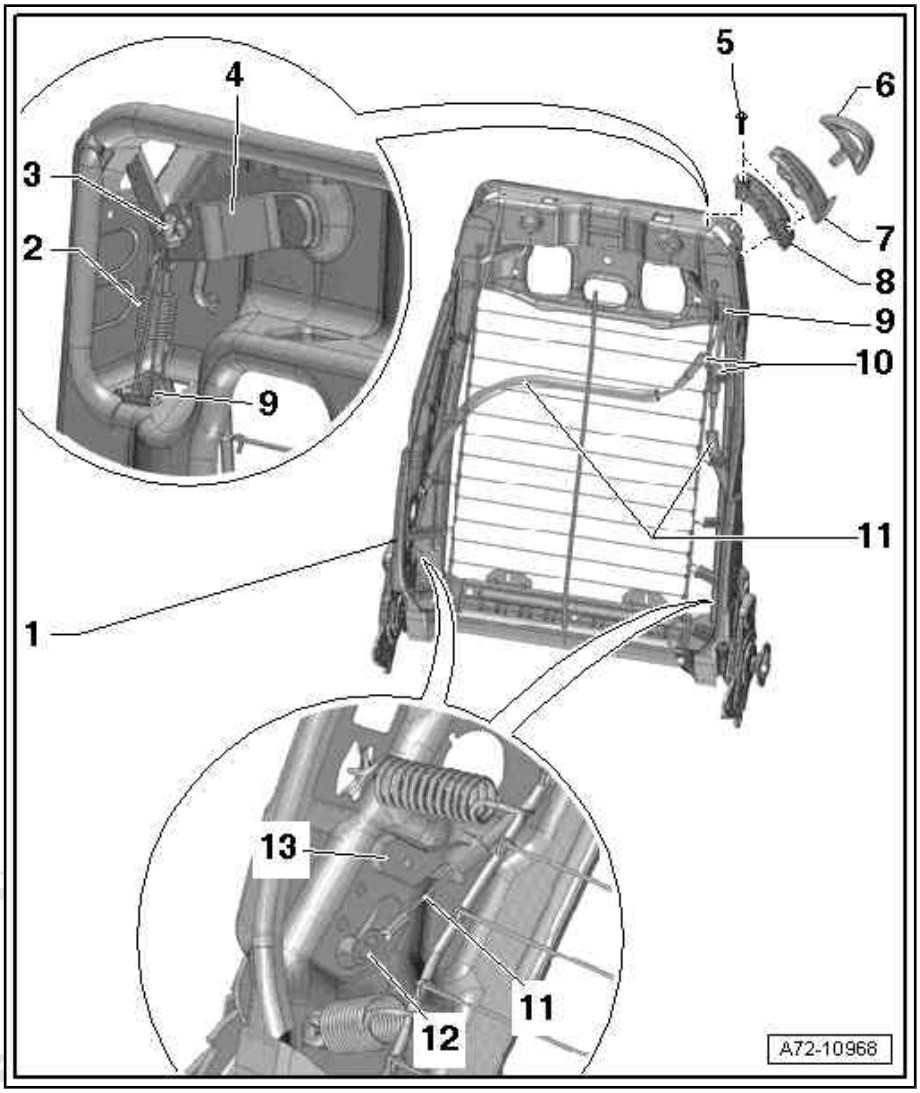
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.31 Exploded view of backrest release mechanism (front)

Note

For greater clarity, the four-way lumbar support is not shown in the illustration.



1 - Backrest frame

2 - Extension spring

- Engaged in operating lever and mounting for Bowden cables

3 - Retaining knob

- For Bowden cable (left and right)
- Bowden cables cannot be disengaged from retainer

4 - Lever

- For Easy Entry handle
- Riveted to backrest frame

5 - Bolt

- 2x
- 2.6 Nm

6 - Handle

- For releasing front seat backrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

7 - Trim

- For backrest release mechanism (front)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 234

8 - Bracket

- For trim for backrest release mechanism (front)
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 235

9 - Bearing

- For Bowden cable (left and right)
- Bowden cables cannot be disengaged from mounting
- Mounting clipped into backrest frame

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

10 - Adjuster

- For Bowden cable (left or right)

11 - Bowden cable

- For releasing front seat backrest
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 236

12 - Pin

- For retainer for Bowden cable

13 - Retainer

- For Bowden cable
- Riveted to backrest frame

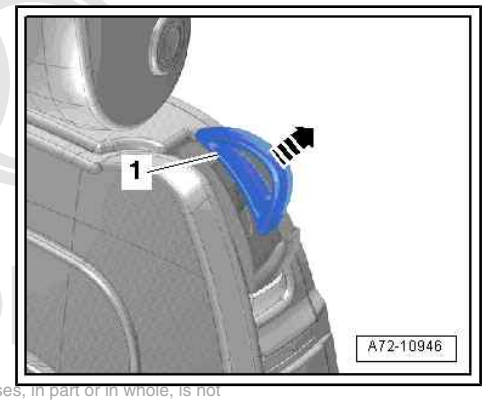
3.32 Removing and installing backrest release handle (front)

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Removing

– Carefully prise off backrest release handle (front) -1- upwards -arrow- with a screwdriver and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Renew retaining clip at lever of backrest release handle (front).

– Make sure backrest adjustment handle (front) engages properly with retaining clip.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

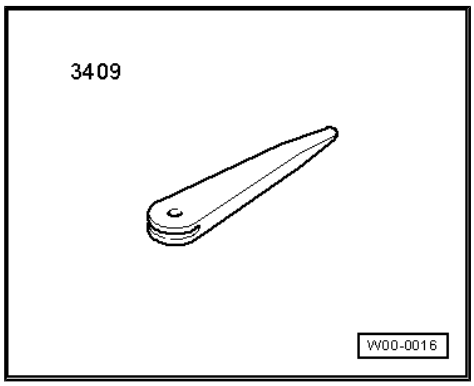
3.33 Removing and installing trim for backrest release mechanism (front)

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Removal wedge -3409-

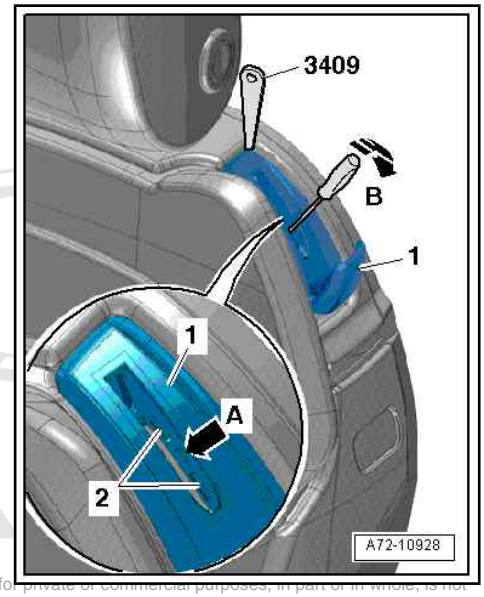


Removing

– Remove backrest release handle (front) ⇒ page 234 .

– Apply a screwdriver to opening -arrow A- and release trim for backrest release mechanism (front) from retaining tabs -2- -arrow B-.

– At the same time, prise trim for backrest release mechanism (front) -1- off bracket with removal wedge -3409- and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure trim engages properly with bracket.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.34 Removing and installing bracket for trim for backrest release mechanism (front)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

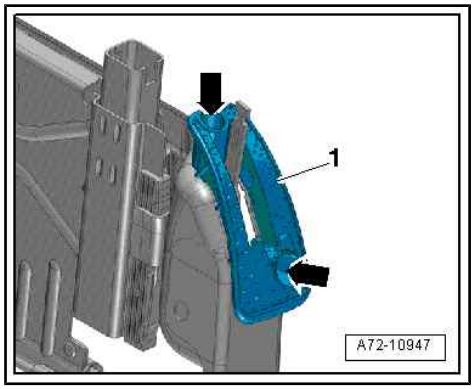
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 278 .

– Unscrew bolts -arrows- and detach bracket for trim for backrest release mechanism (front) -1-.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torques ⇒ page 232

3.35 Removing and installing Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front)

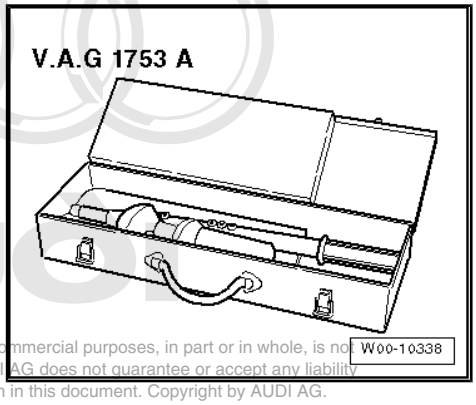
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *The Bowden cables on the left and right of the seat cannot be renewed separately.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 278 .

– Remove side airbag ⇒ page 96 .

Note

It is not necessary to remove the spring mat or lumbar support when removing and installing the Bowden cables.

– Use pliers to disengage retainers -2- from pins -3- (on both sides).

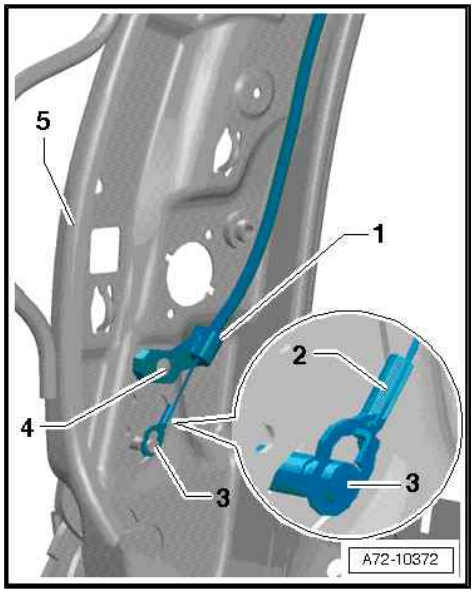
WARNING

Risk of injury!

- *Wear safety goggles.*

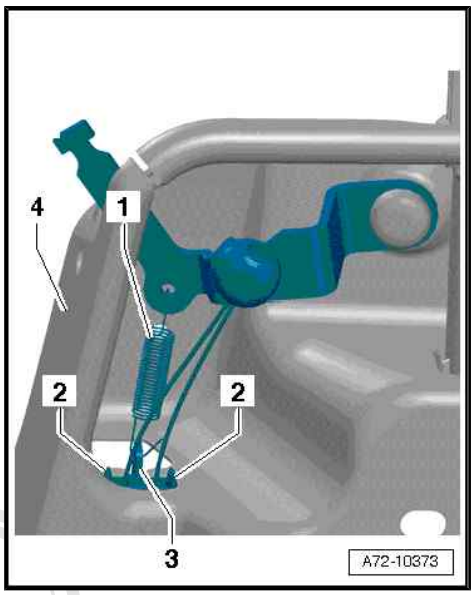
– Drill rivets -4- at retainers -1- (on left and right) out of backrest frame -5-.

– Unfasten cable ties on both sides.



– Disengage extension spring -1- from mounting -3-.

– Press retaining tabs -2- and pull mounting -3- downwards out of backrest frame -4-.



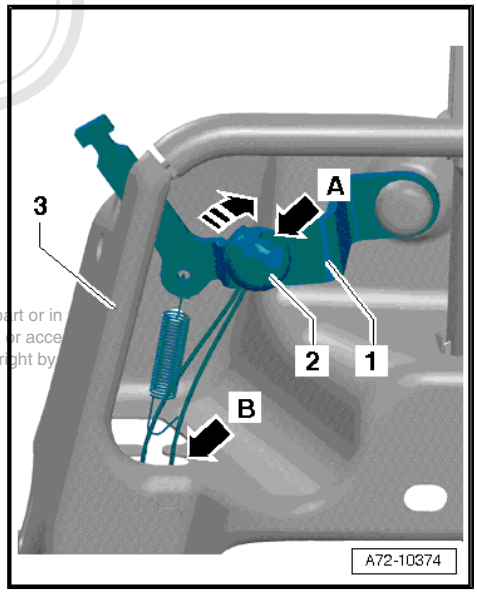
– Turn knob -2- in direction of -arrow- until nipple of Bowden cable -arrow A- faces centre of backrest (horizontally).

– Hold knob in this position.

– Press knob upwards out of lever -1-.

– Guide knob through Bowden cable opening -arrow B- in backrest frame -3-.

– Take Bowden cables out of backrest frame (left and right).



Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or acce
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by

WARNING

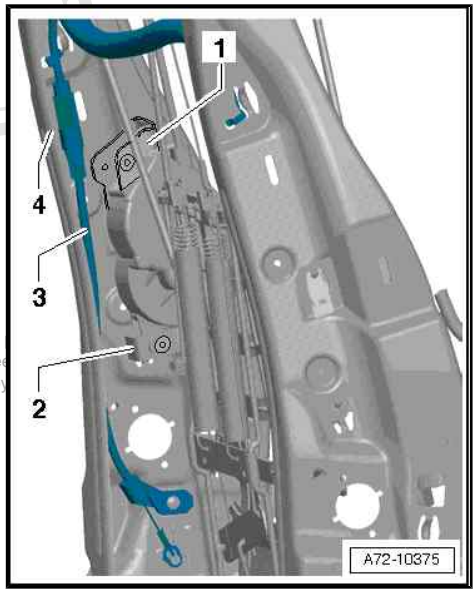
- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure Bowden cables -3- are routed behind retaining plates -1- and -2-.

4 - Backrest frame

– Adjust Bowden cable (left and right) ⇒ page 239 .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copy

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.36 Adjusting Bowden cables for backrest release mechanism (front)

WARNING

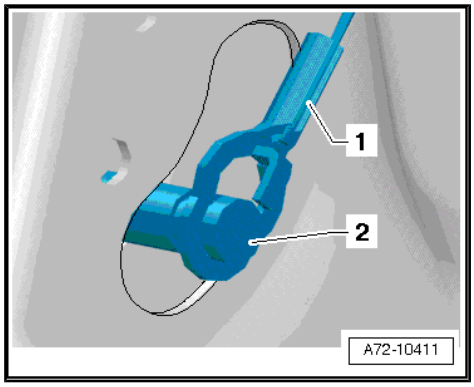
Make sure that the front seat backrest is in the engaged position, as it could otherwise tilt forwards unintentionally.

The following conditions must be met for the adjustment:

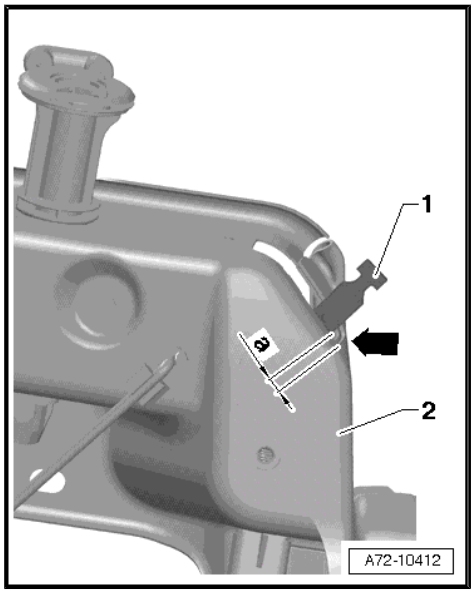
- Backrest cover panel must be removed.
- Padding must be removed from front seat backrest.

Note

The pins (release pins) -2- are in the locked position on both sides (position on delivery, i.e. basic position).



– Pull lever -1- upwards by distance -a- = 3 mm from bottom stop -arrow- of backrest frame -2-.



– Adjust Bowden cables -1- and -2- with adjuster -4- (left and right).

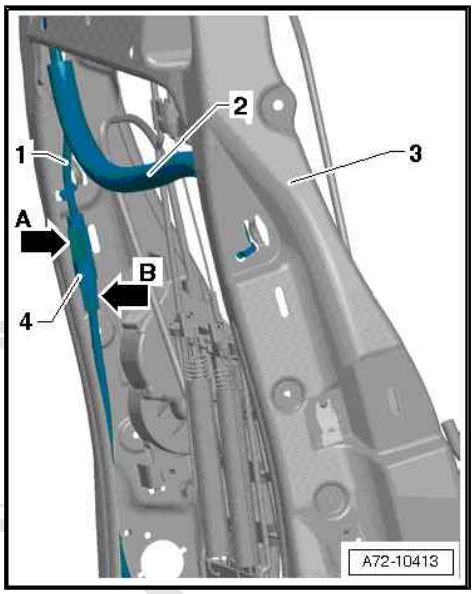
Note

For greater clarity, the adjuster (right-side) is not shown in the illustration.

– To adjust, turn upper part -arrow A- and lower part -arrow B- in opposite directions.

– Adjust Bowden cables so that there is neither play nor strain.

3 - Backrest frame

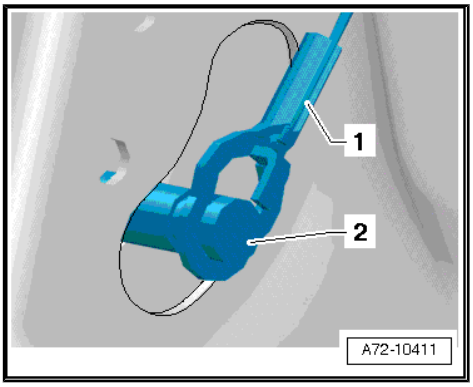


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *Only one side of the locking mechanism is shown in the illustration.*
- *When adjusting the Bowden cables -1-, they must not be subjected to pre-tension at the release pins -2-.*

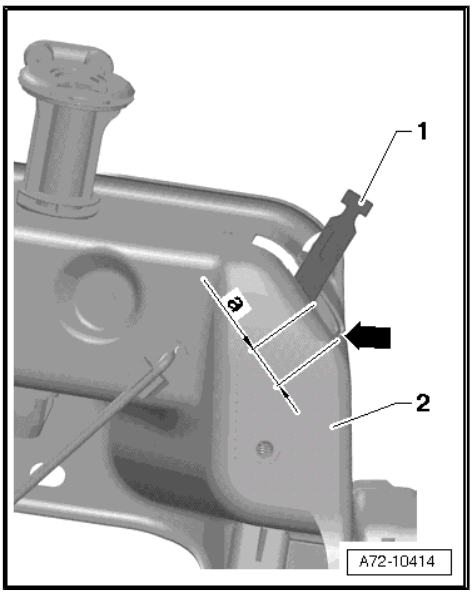
– After adjusting Bowden cables, check locking function of backrest.



– When pulling the lever -1-, the front seat backrest must be released after the lever has been lifted 9 mm (distance -a-) from the bottom stop -arrow-.

2 - Backrest frame

– If there is no or only partial release, check the routing of the Bowden cables or repeat the adjustment of the Bowden cables.



3.37 Exploded view of Easy Entry facility

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Pin for backrest fitting

2 - Retainer

- ❑ For Bowden cable

3 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For Easy Entry facility
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 242

4 - Retainer

- ❑ For Bowden cable
- ❑ For securing Bowden cable to seat pan
- ❑ Clipped to seat pan
- ❑ Component of Bowden cable

5 - Memory block

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 244

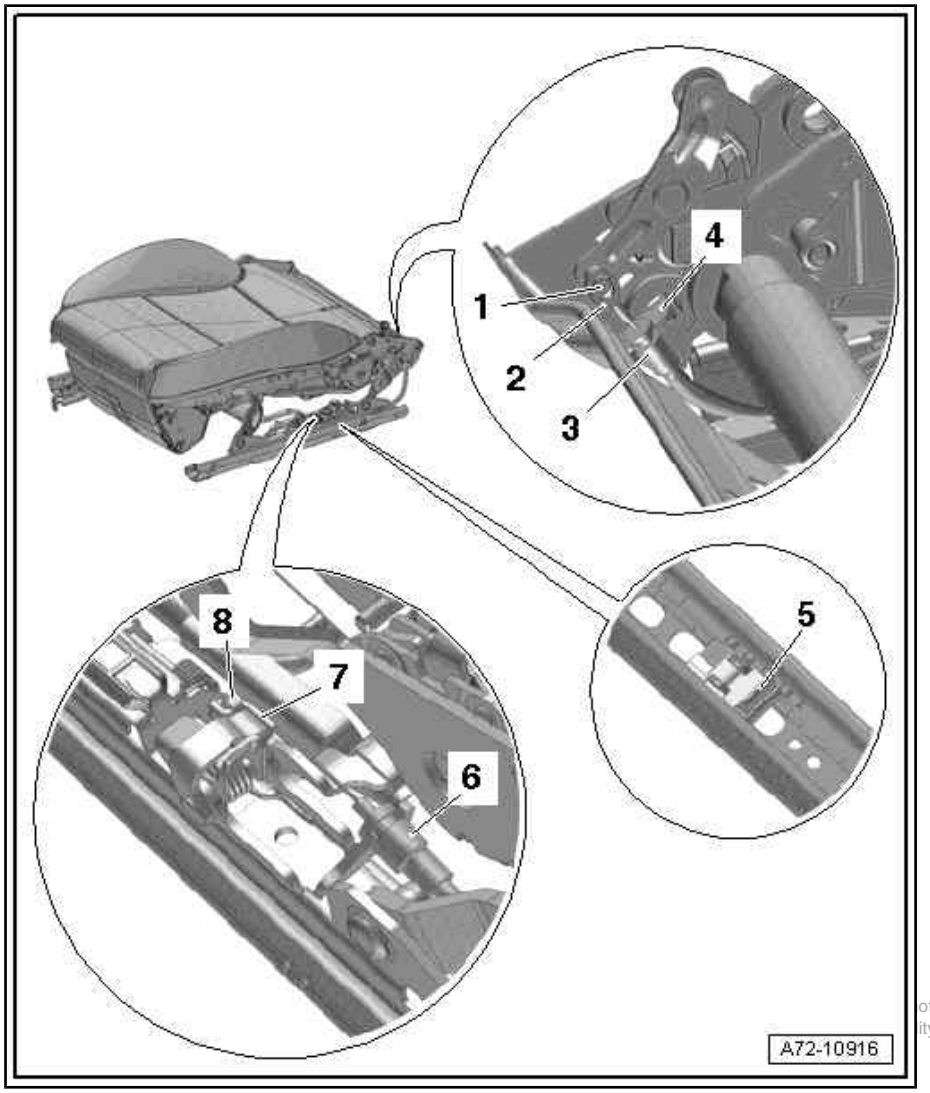
6 - Adjuster

- ❑ For Bowden cable

7 - Securing hook

- ❑ For Bowden cable

8 - Release mechanism for seat rail



3.38 Removing and installing Bowden cable for Easy Entry facility

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

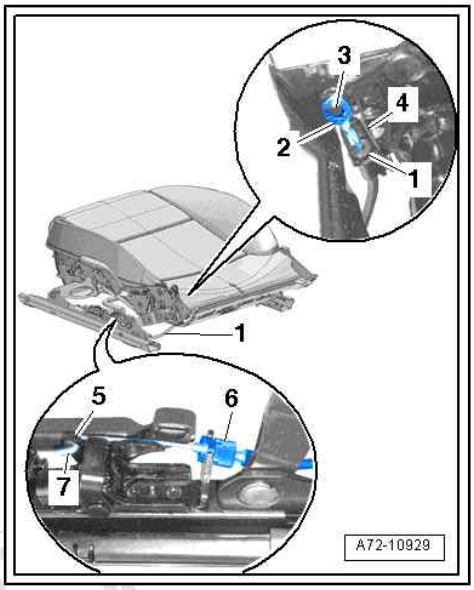
Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Switch off ignition.

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .
– Disengage Bowden cable -1- from retainer -4-.
– Disengage retainer for Bowden cable -2- from pin for backrest fitting -3-.
– Remove adjuster -6- from retainer.
– Disengage securing hook -7- from release mechanism -5- for seat rail and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Adjust Bowden cable -1- with adjuster -6- so that Bowden cable releases release mechanism for seat rail completely (with little play).

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

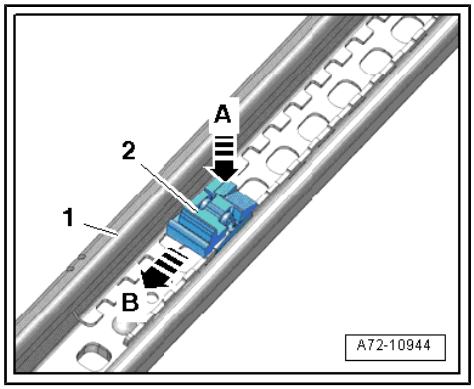
If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.39 Removing and installing memory block

Note

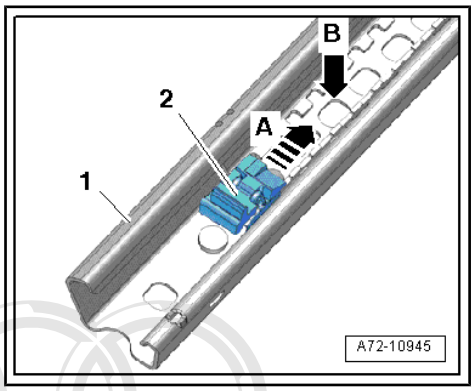
- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Removing



- Operate seal longitudinal adjustment handle and move front seat as far back as possible.
- Release front seat with Easy Entry handle.
- Fold backrest down and at the same time move seat forwards.
- Remove bolt for seat rail ⇒ page 196 .
- Press rocker -arrow A- of memory block and release it.
- Pull memory block -2- towards rear out of seat rail -1- -arrow B-.

Installing



- Insert memory block -2- in seat rail -1- -arrow A-.
- Lock memory block in rearmost detent hole -arrow B-.
- Fold backrest up and at the same time move seat to rear (Easy Entry system).
- Release seat longitudinal adjuster and move front seat to desired position.

Note

The memory block does not have to be adjusted.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 194

3.40 Exploded view of storage compartment

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1 - Storage compartment

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 245

2 - Bracket

- ❑ For storage compartment
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 245

3 - Speed nut

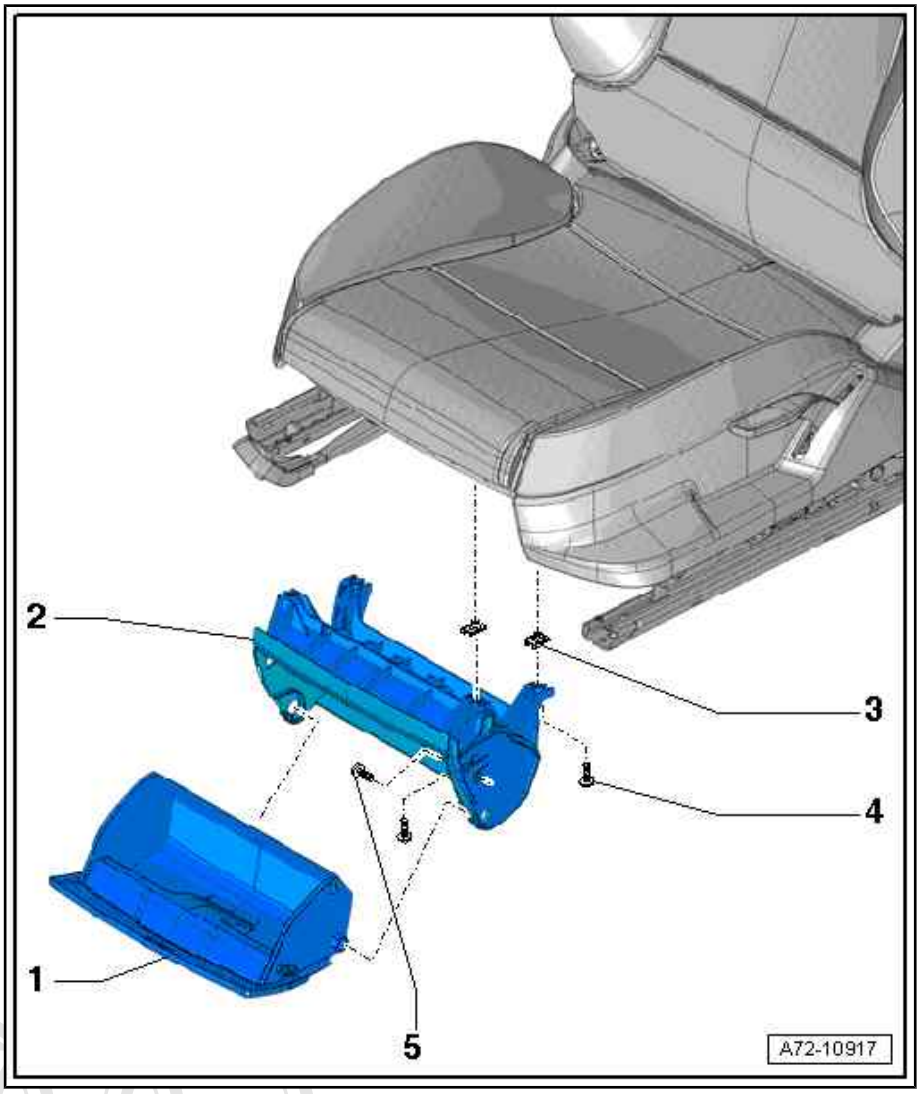
- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Insert in seat pan

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ 3.5 Nm

5 - Bolt

- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 205



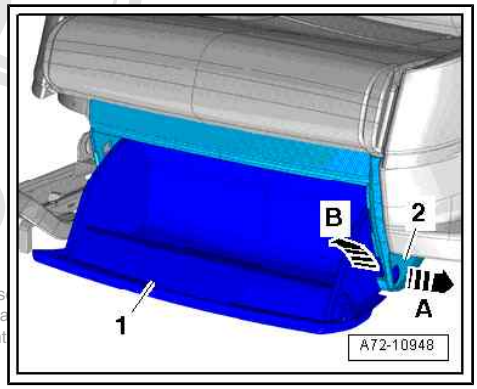
3.41 Removing and installing storage compartment

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



- Operate seal longitudinal adjustment handle and move front seat as far back as possible.
- Move seat as far up as possible.
- Open storage compartment -1-, press opening catch (side) to the side and completely open storage compartment.
- Carefully press bracket -2- slightly to the side -arrow A- and disengage pivot point of storage compartment.
- Pull storage compartment forwards -arrow B- and detach.

This document is copyrighted and for private or commercial purpos
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not gua
with respect to the correctness of information in this document

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

3.42 Removing and installing bracket for storage compartment

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

- Switch off ignition.
- With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .
- Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
- Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
- Remove storage compartment ⇒ page 245 .

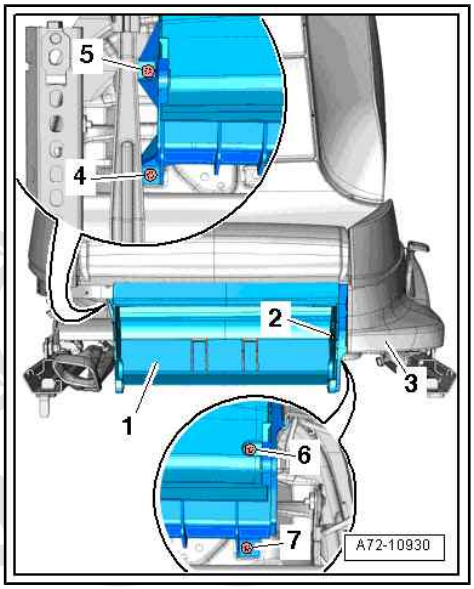
– Unscrew bolt -2- for trim (sill side) -3-.
– Remove bolts -4, 5, 6, 7- and detach bracket for storage compartment -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Engage bracket for storage compartment -1- at trim (sill side) -3-.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 205 , ⇒ page 244 .



3.43 Exploded view of head restraint

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- *The exploded view relates to the sports seat (front). The head restraint is similar on the standard seat (front).*
- *For greater clarity, the cover with padding for the backrest is not shown in the illustration.*

1 - Front seat backrest

2 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ Without release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 249
- ❑ Always fitted on right side of backrest

3 - Head restraint

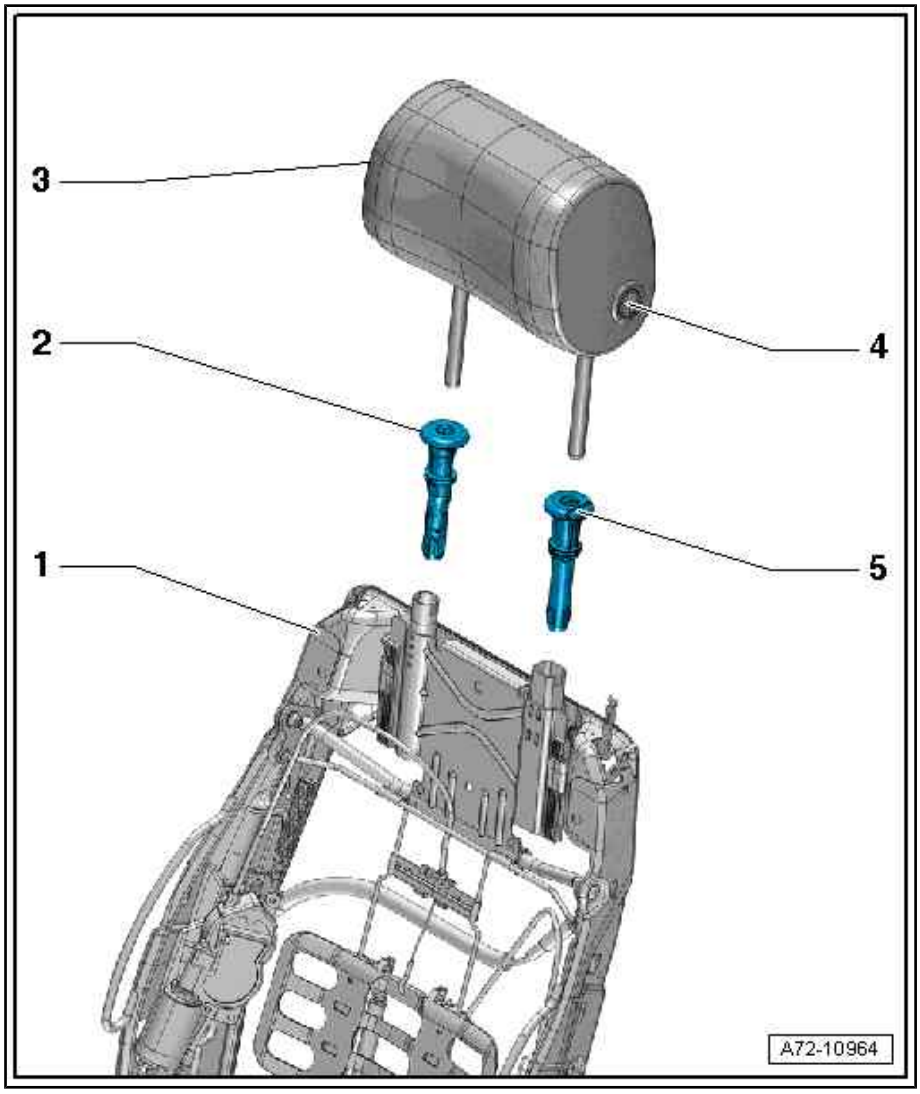
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 248

4 - Release button

- ❑ For height adjustment
- ❑ Clipped to mounting bracket for head restraint

5 - Head restraint guide

- ❑ With release button
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 249
- ❑ Always fitted on left side of backrest



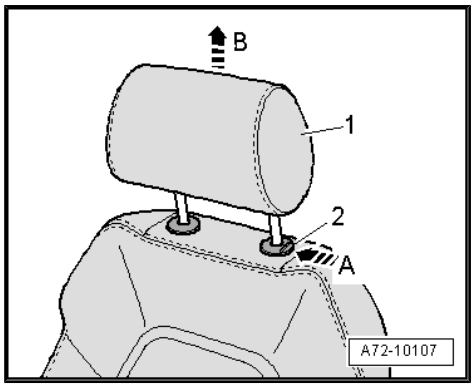
3.44 Removing and installing head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

Note

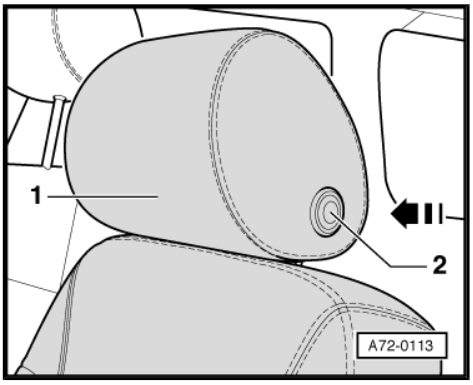
- ♦ *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- ♦ *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Removing

– Press and hold release button -2- in direction of -arrow A- and pull head restraint -1- out upwards as far as possible -arrow B-.



– Press in release button -2- on head restraint -1- as far as it will go -arrow-.
– Keep pressing the release button in and push the head restraint down as far as possible on the posts.
– Take the head restraint out of the head restraint guides.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure head restraint is properly engaged in head restraint guides.

3.45 Removing and installing head restraint guide without and with release button

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Removing

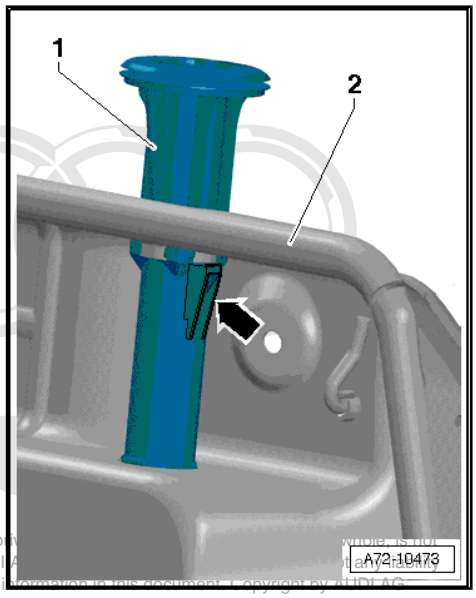
– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 248 .

Head restraint guide without release button:

Note

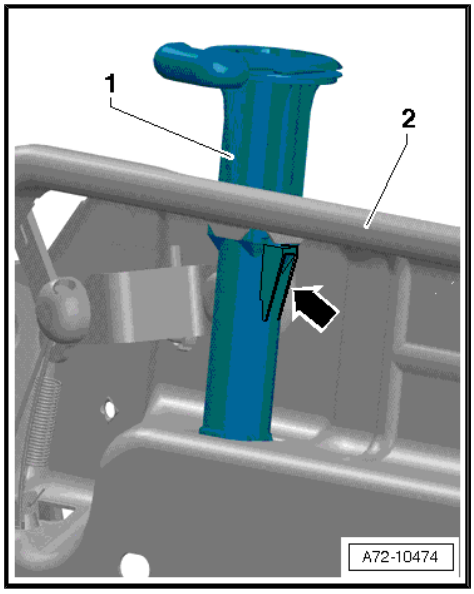
For greater clarity, the front seat backrest is shown without padding in the illustration.

– Insert a small screwdriver from above into the opening in the head restraint guide and press the retaining tab -arrow- of the head restraint guide -1- towards the centre of the head restraint guide.
– Keep retaining tab pressed and at the same time lift head restraint guide out of backrest frame -2-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for pr
permitted unless authorised by AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of i

Head restraint guide with release button:



Note

For greater clarity, the front seat backrest is shown without padding in the illustration.

– Insert a small screwdriver from above into the opening in the head restraint guide and press the retaining tab -arrow- of the head restraint guide -1- towards the centre of the head restraint guide.

– Keep retaining tab pressed and at the same time lift head restraint guide out of backrest frame -2-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure retaining tab engages properly with backrest frame.

3.46 Overview of electrical and electronic components

1 - Motor

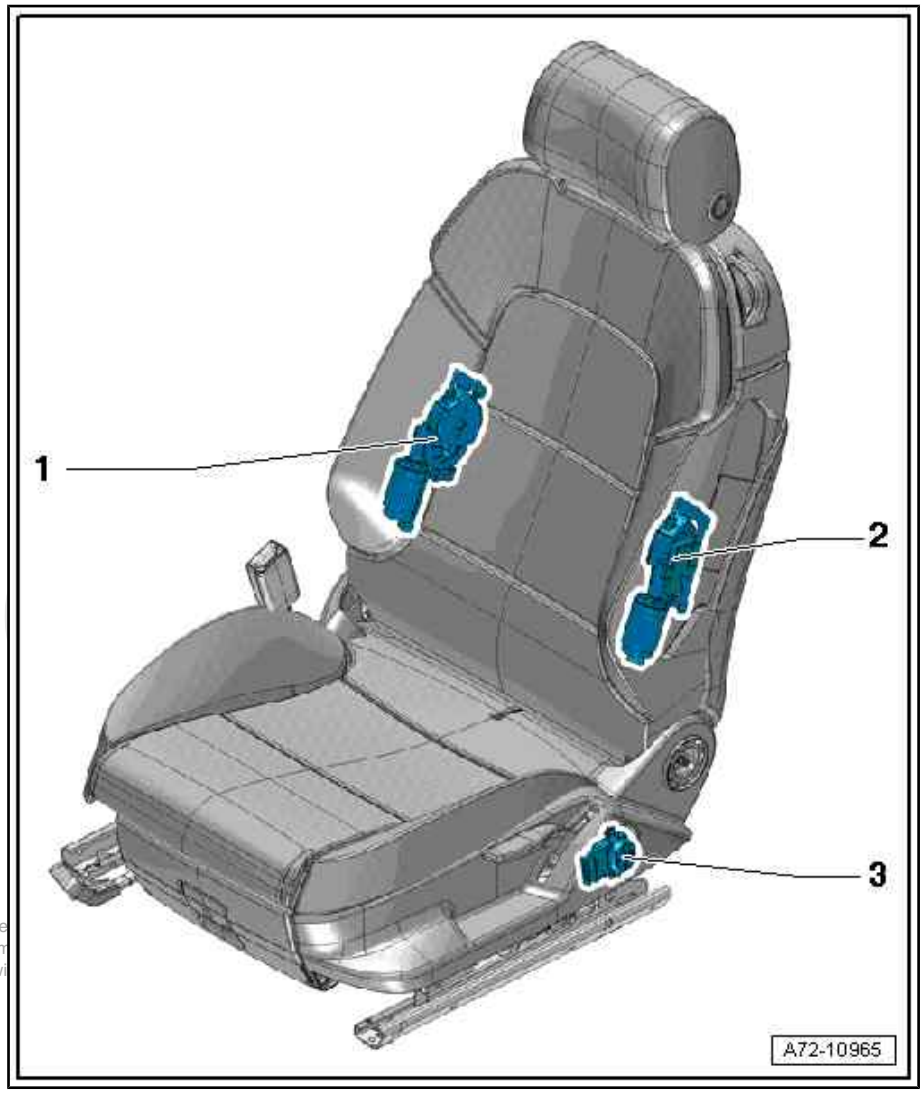
- ❑ For lumbar support height adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 251
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 254

2 - Motor

- ❑ For lumbar support longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 251
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 252

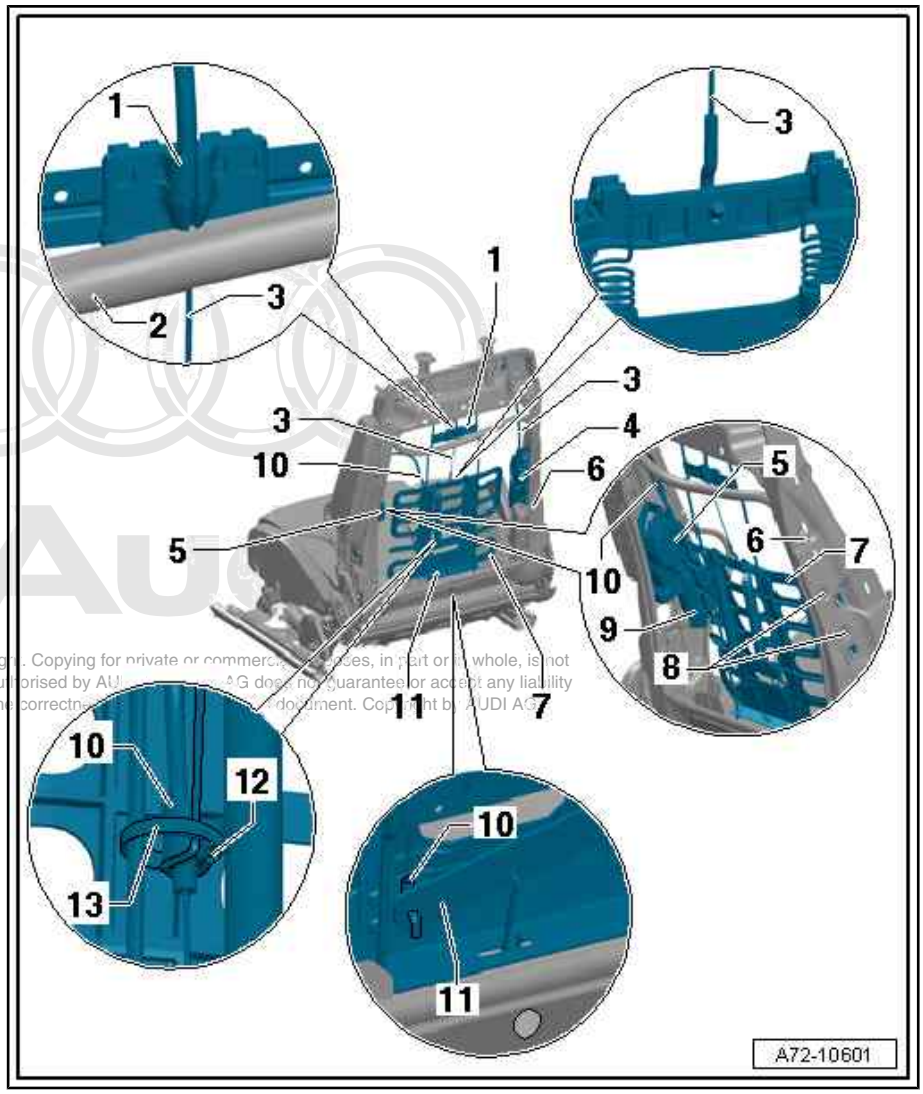
3 - Switch

- ❑ For lumbar support adjustment
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 256
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 257



Prote
perm
wi

3.47 Exploded view of lumbar support longitudinal and height adjustment motors



1 - Clip

- ❑ For guiding Bowden cable -item 3-

2 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For Easy Entry facility

3 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For lumbar support height adjustment
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with lumbar support height adjustment motor

4 - Lumbar support height adjustment motor

- ❑ Driver side: Driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129-
- ❑ Passenger side: Front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 254

5 - Lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor

- ❑ Driver side: Driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125-
- ❑ Passenger side: Front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 252

6 - Backrest frame

7 - Four-way lumbar support

8 - Rivet

- ❑ 2 per motor
- ❑ Set rivet using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-

9 - Connector

10 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For lumbar support longitudinal adjustment
- ❑ Can only be renewed together with lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor

11 - Retaining plate

12 - Support

- ❑ For guiding Bowden cable -item 10-

13 - Cable tie

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

3.48 Removing and installing lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- / -V126-

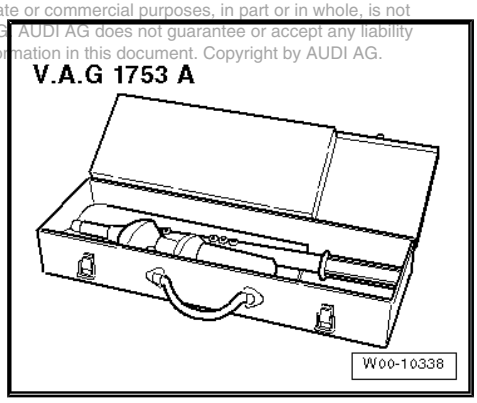
Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Switch off ignition.

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

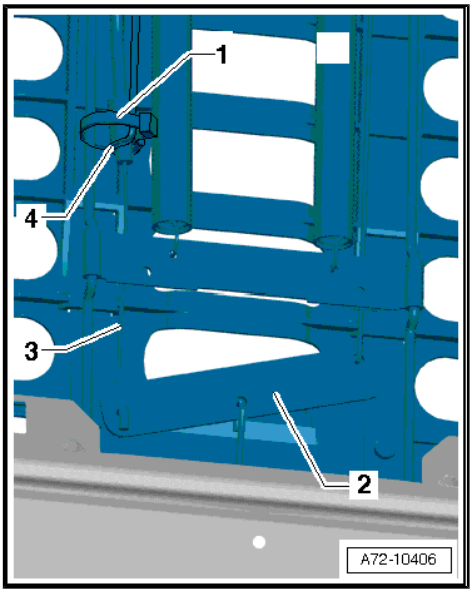
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 278 .

– To remove driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- , remove side airbag ⇒ page 96 .

– Disengage Bowden cable -3- at retaining plate -2-.
– Unfasten cable tie -1-.
– Disengage Bowden cable from bracket -4-.



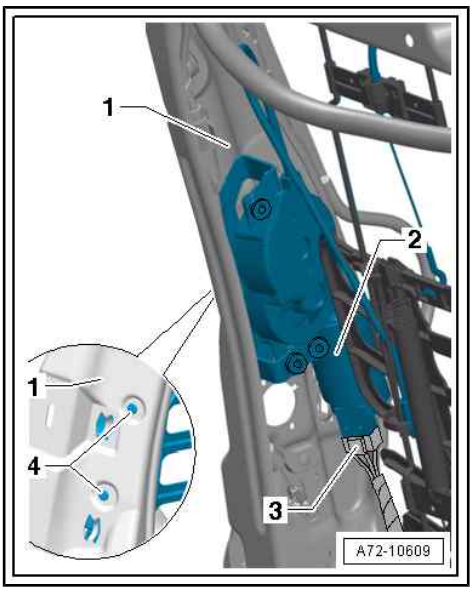
– Unplug electrical connector -3-.

WARNING

Risk of injury!

- *Wear safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivets -4- (2x) at backrest frame -1-.
– Remove driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- -item 2- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126- with Bowden cable.



Installing

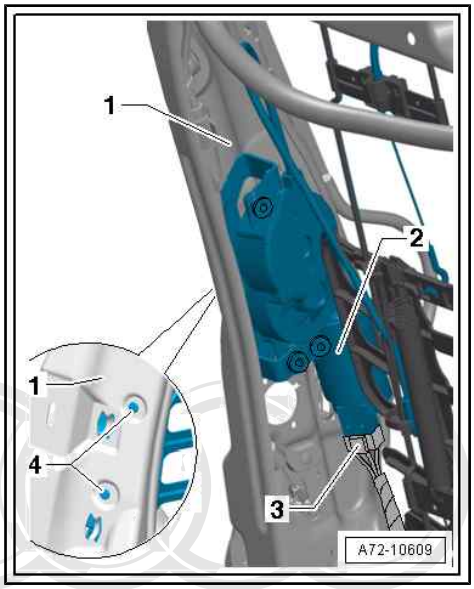
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Rivet driver seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V125- -item 2- / front passenger seat lumbar support longitudinal adjustment motor -V126- to backrest frame -1- using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

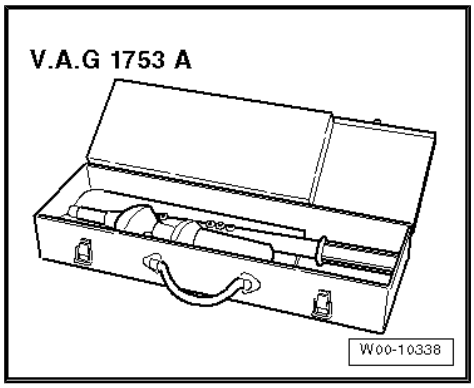
3.49 Removing and installing lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- / -V130-

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A-



- Drill
- Safety goggles

Removing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– With ignition switched off, disconnect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .

– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .

– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .

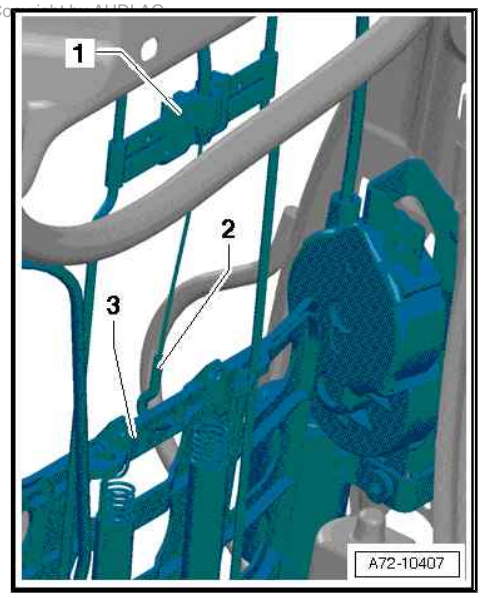
– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 278 .

– To remove front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130-, remove side airbag ⇒ page 96 .

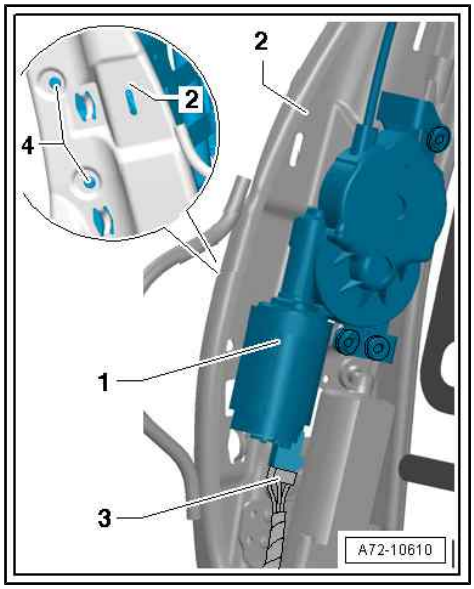
– Disengage Bowden cable -2- from clip -1-.

– Disengage Bowden cable from four-way lumbar support -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG



– Unplug electrical connector -3-.



WARNING

Risk of injury!

- *Wear safety goggles.*

– Drill out rivets -4- at backrest frame -1-.

– Remove driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- -item 1- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130- with Bowden cable.

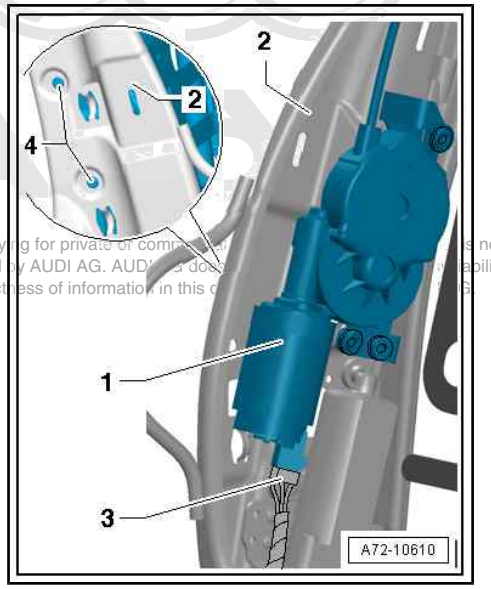
Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Rivet driver seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V129- -item 1- / front passenger seat lumbar support height adjustment motor -V130- to backrest frame -2- using special pop rivet pliers -V.A.G 1753A- .



Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

...t. Copying for private or comm... is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI ... does not assume liability with respect to the correctness of information in this d...

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

3.50 Exploded view of lumbar support adjustment switches

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 0.5 Nm

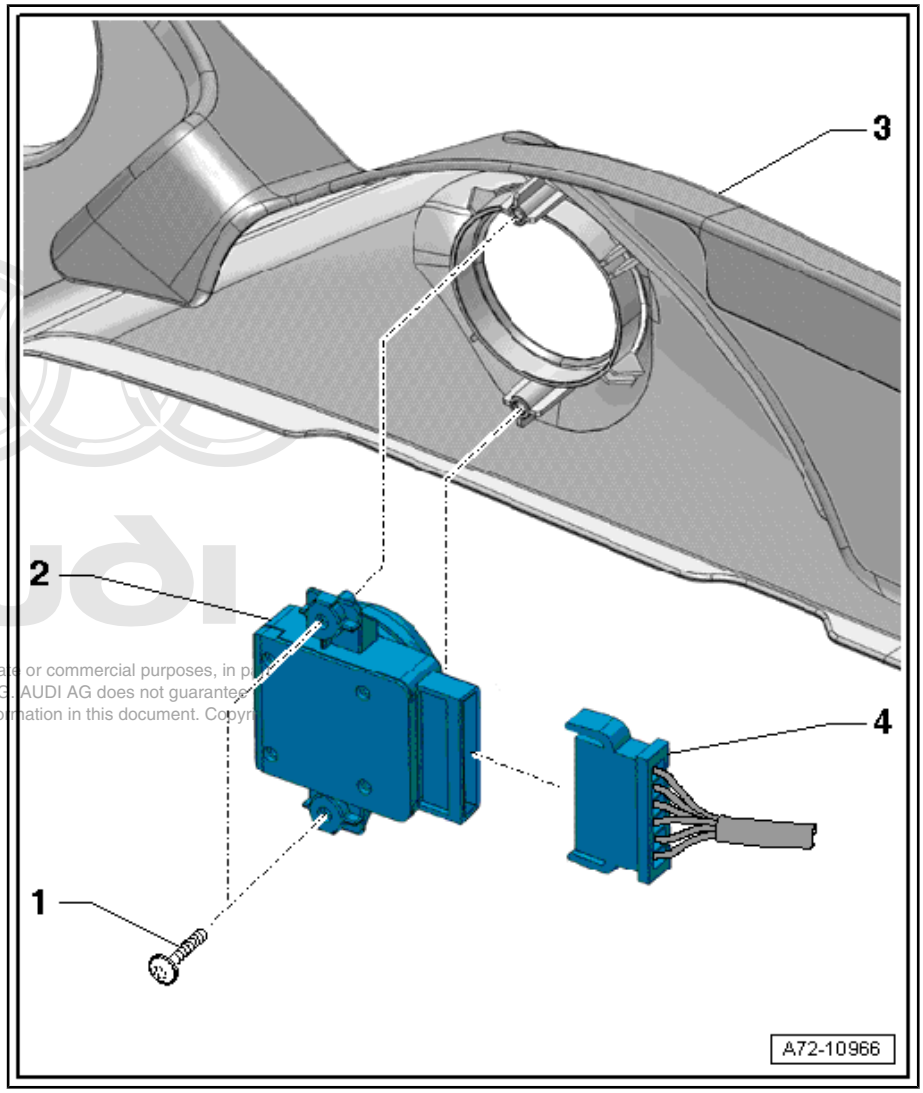
2 - Lumbar support adjustment switch

- ❑ Driver side: driver seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E176-
- ❑ Passenger side: front passenger seat lumbar support adjustment switch -E177-
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 257
- ❑ Switch and control button cannot be separated

3 - Trim (sill side)

4 - Electrical connector

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in p
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr



3.51 Removing and installing lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177-

Note

- *Removal and installation is possible with seat installed.*
- *Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.*

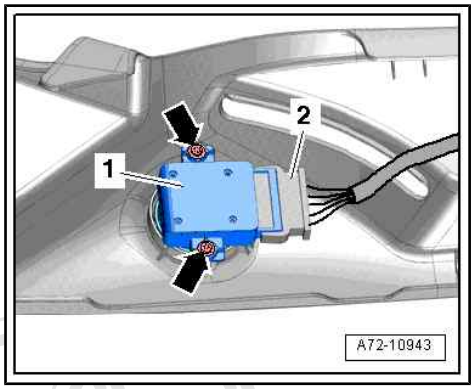
Removing

WARNING

- ***Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .***
- ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.***

– Remove trim (sill side) ⇒ page 207 .

– Unplug electrical connector -2-.
– Remove bolts -arrows-.
– Detach lumbar support adjustment switch -E176- / -E177- -item 1- from trim.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Route wiring as close as possible to connector -2-.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

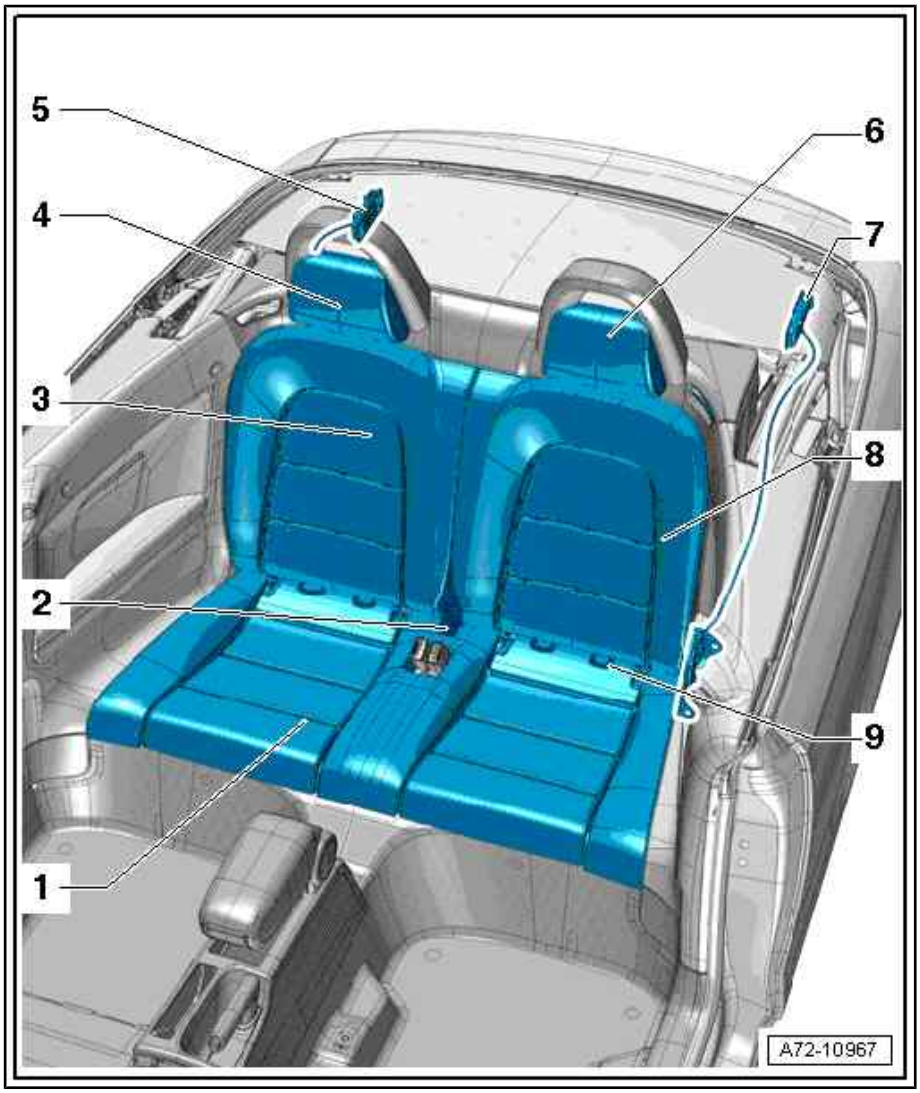
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 256

4 Rear seats

4.1 Overview of rear seats



1 - Seat bench

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 260
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261

Equipment version:
♦ Seat heating

2 - Cap

- ❑ For centre bracket (front)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 265

3 - Backrest (right-side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

Equipment version:
♦ Backrest heating

4 - Head restraint (right-side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 271

5 - Backrest release mechanism (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 266

6 - Head restraint (left-side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 271
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 271

7 - Backrest release mechanism (rear)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 266

8 - Backrest (left-side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 262
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

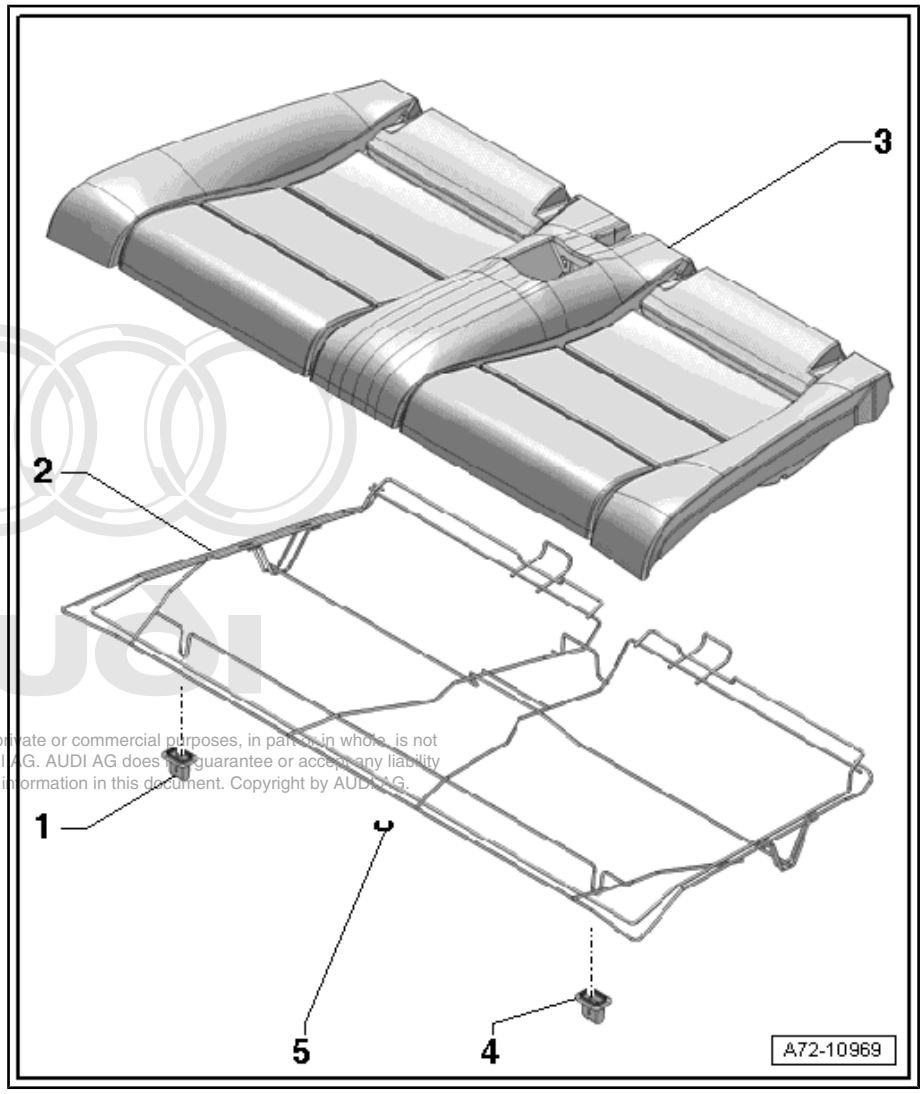
Equipment versions:
♦ Backrest heating

9 - ISOFIX child seat anchor

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 74

- ❑ Welded to backrest frame. To renew child seat anchor, backrest frame must be removed and renewed ⇒ page 270

4.2 Exploded view of seat bench



1 - Retainer

- ❑ For securing seat bench
- ❑ Clipped into vehicle floor

> **Caution**
> *The retainers must always be renewed after removing seat bench.*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261

2 - Seat frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288

3 - Seat bench

- ❑ One-piece
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding ⇒ page 288

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4 - Retainer

- ❑ For securing seat bench
- ❑ Clipped into vehicle floor

> **Caution**
> *The retainers must always be renewed after removing seat bench.*

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 261

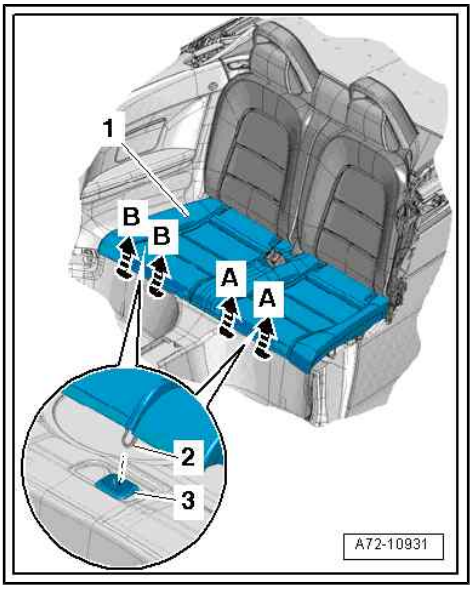
5 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ 47x
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach at same location

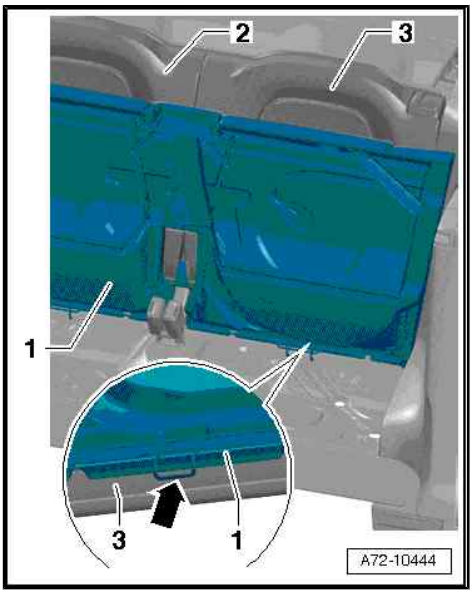
> **WARNING**
> *After fitting, the ends of the upholstery clips must face towards the padding and must be properly closed to prevent possible injury.*

4.3 Removing and installing seat bench

Removing



- Fold backrest of front seats as far down as possible.
- Move front seats as far forwards as possible.
- Reach beneath seat frame on one side of seat with both hands.
- Using both hands, pull seat bench -1- firmly and abruptly upwards -arrows A- to disengage wire hook -2- for seat bench from retainer -3-.
- Repeat procedure on other side of seat bench -arrows B-.



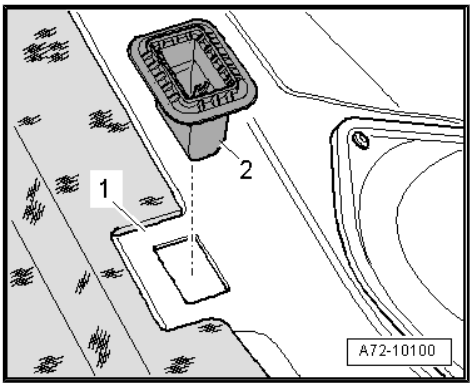
- Swivel seat bench -1- as far as rear seat backrest -2- and -3-.
- Disengage retaining lugs -arrow- of seat bench (left and right) from frame of backrests (rear).
- Equipment version with seat heating: Unplug electrical connector for seat heating.
- Take seat bench out of vehicle.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing

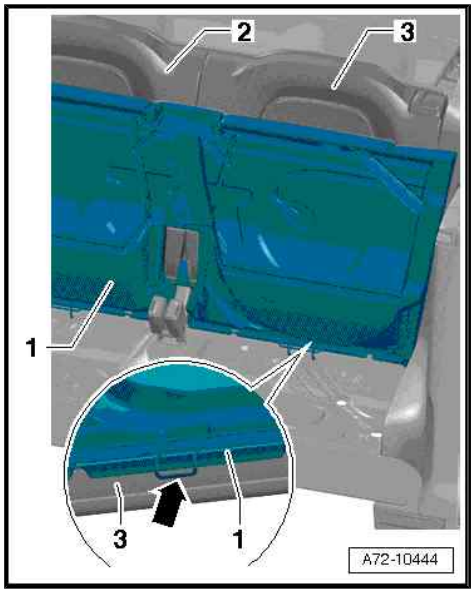
Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

> **Caution**
>
> *Always renew retainers after removing seat bench.*



- Take old retainer -2- out of cut-out in body.
- Fit new retainer in body cut-out -1- and push it until it engages audibly.

– Make sure retaining lugs -arrow- of seat bench -1- are properly fitted around tubular connection of backrest frame.
– Press rear seat bench downwards into retainers until it engages audibly.



Note

Make sure electrical connector for seat heating is pressed on as far as it will go and engages audibly.

4.4 Exploded view of backrests (rear)

1 - Cap
- ❑ For centre bracket (front)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 265

2 - Belt buckle (rear)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 69
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70

3 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 40 Nm

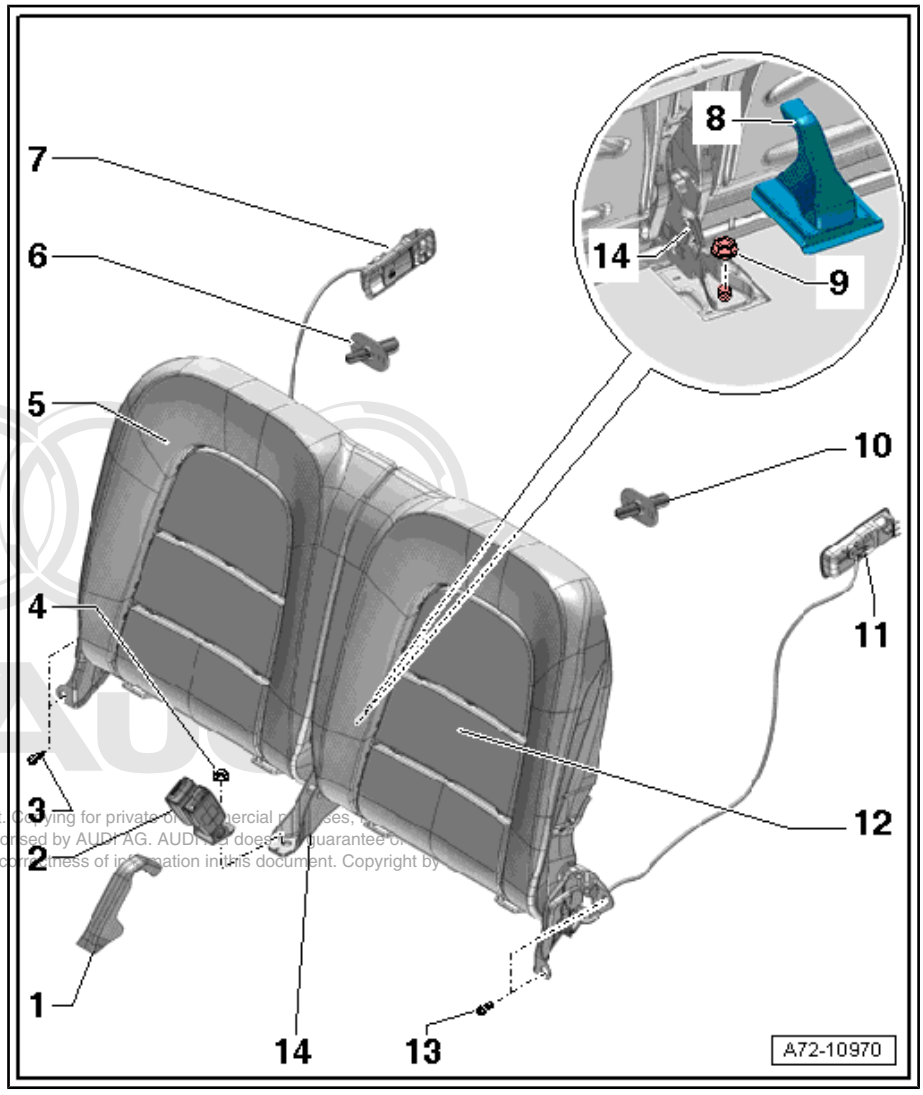
4 - Nut
- ❑ Tightening torque ⇒ page 69

5 - Rear seat backrest (right-side)
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

6 - Pressure pin
- ❑ For releasing rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

7 - Backrest release mechanism (rear, right-side)
- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 266

8 - Cover
- ❑ For centre bracket (rear)



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, ... permission of Audi AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or ... with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by ...

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “4.6 Removing and installing rear seat backrest”, page 263

9 - Nut

- ❑ 40 Nm

10 - Pressure pin

- ❑ For releasing rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

11 - Backrest release mechanism (rear, left-side)

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 265
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 266

12 - Rear seat backrest (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 263

13 - Bolt

- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 40 Nm

14 - Backrest frame

- ❑ Exploded view ⇒ page 268
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270

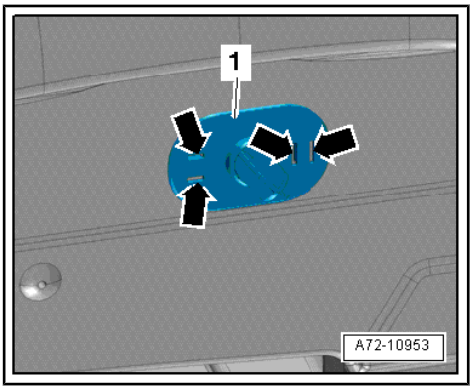
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness and completeness of this document by AUDI AG.

4.5 Removing and installing pressure pin for releasing rear seat backrest

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing



Caution

Do not put any strain on the rear seat backrest when it is folded down.

– Release rear seat backrest and fold down.
– Release pressure pin for releasing rear seat backrest -1- with a screwdriver -arrows- and detach.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Insert pressure pin for releasing rear seat backrest in cut-out in body and press on until it engages audibly.

4.6 Removing and installing rear seat backrest

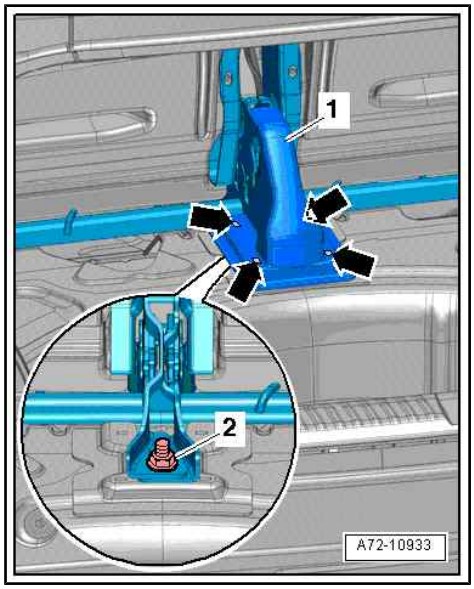
Note

The backrests can only be removed and installed together.

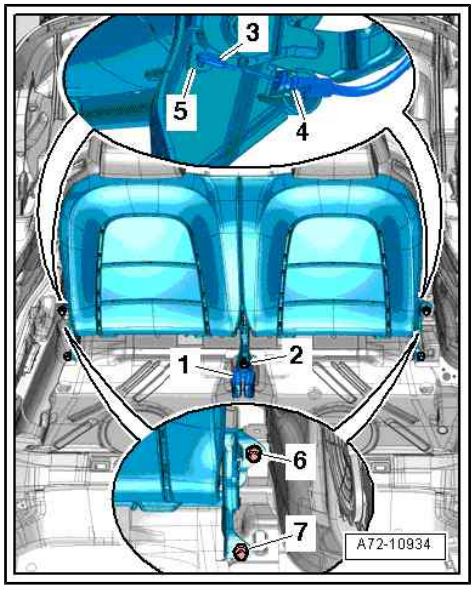
Removing

Caution

Do not put any strain on the rear seat backrest when it is folded down.



- Fold backrest of front seats as far down as possible.
- Operate seal longitudinal adjustment handle and move seat as far forwards as possible.
- Remove seat bench ⇒ page 261 .
- Remove luggage compartment floor covering.
- Remove side trim panels ⇒ page 148 .
- Release rear seat backrests (left and right) and fold down.
- Use a screwdriver to release cover -1- -arrows- and detach.
- Unscrew nut -2-.



- Fold rear seat backrest (left and right) back into normal position.
- Unscrew bolts -6- and -7- (left and right) for backrest frame.
- Unscrew nut -2- and detach belt buckle -1-.
- Disengage backrest frame at studs and pull forwards slightly.
- If fitted, cut through cable tie for Bowden cable.
- Unclip Bowden cable -4- from backrest frame.
- Disengage securing hook -3- of Bowden cable from lever -5-.
- Take both rear seat backrests (left and right) out of vehicle.

Installing

Caution

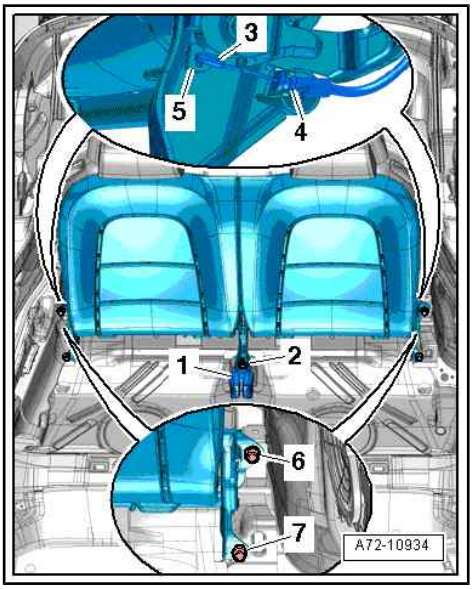
Do not put any strain on the rear seat backrest when it is folded down.

Note

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

When installing the rear seat backrests (left and right), observe the correct sequence for securing the bolt connections.

– Engage securing hook -3- of Bowden cable at lever -5-.
– Clip Bowden cable -4- into backrest frame.
– Engage backrest frame at stud.
– Check that Bowden cables for releasing backrest are seated correctly.
– Install belt buckle (rear) -1- and hand-tighten nut -2-.
– Tighten bolts -6- and -7- (left and right) for backrest frame.
– Bolt on centre bracket for backrest frame (rear) and fit cover.
– Bolt on belt buckle (rear) and centre bracket for backrest frame (front).



Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

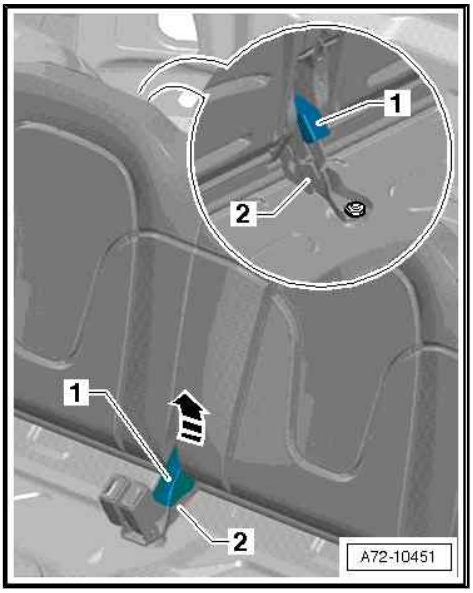
Tightening torque ⇒ page 262

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted. Unauthorized use may result in civil and criminal penalties and any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

4.7 Removing and installing cap for centre bracket (front)

Removing

– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 261 .
– Disengage cap -1- at centre bracket -2-.
– Lift out cap in direction of -arrow-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

4.8 Exploded view of backrest release mechanism (rear)

1 - Bowden cable

- ❑ For releasing rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 267

2 - Spreader rivet

3 - Actuator

- ❑ For releasing rear seat backrest
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 266

4 - Nut

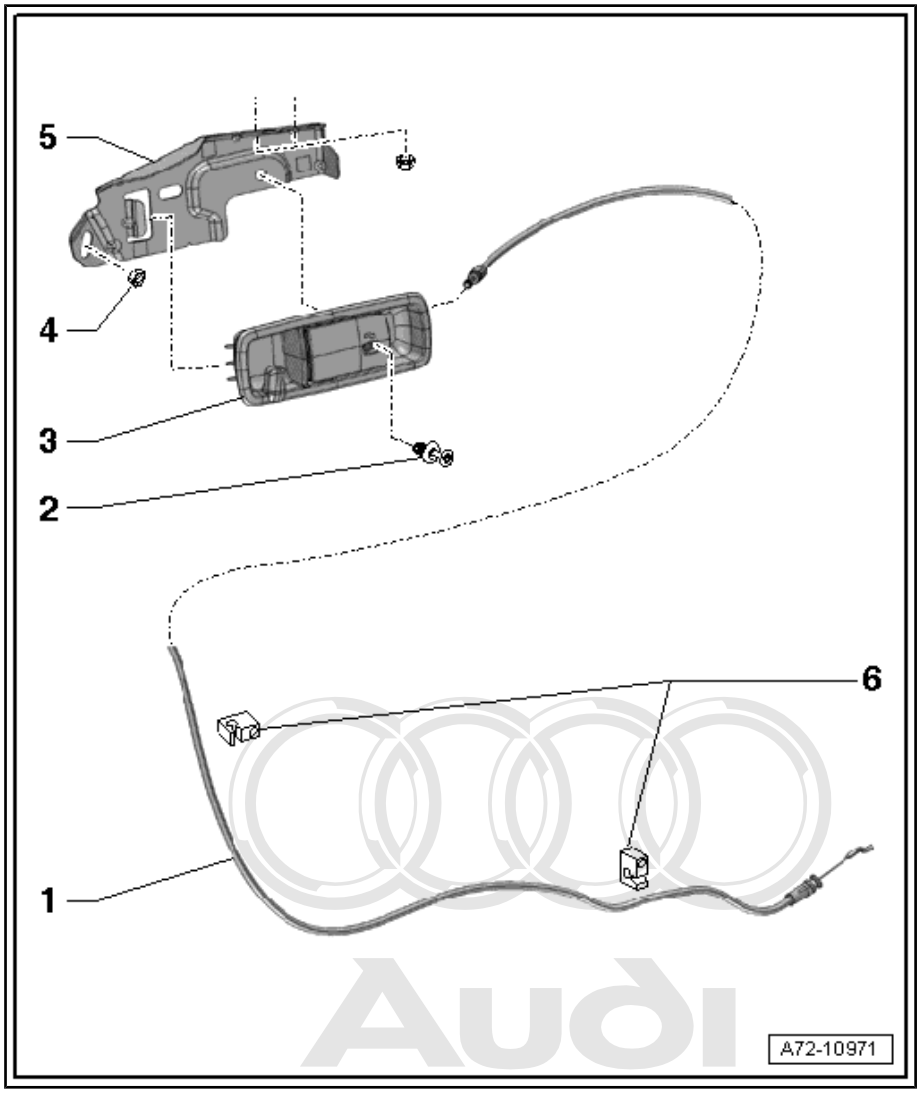
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ 10 Nm

5 - Bracket

- ❑ For actuator
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 268

6 - Retainer

- ❑ For Bowden cable



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

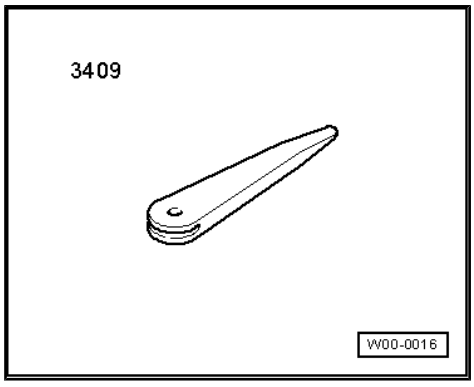
4.9 Removing and installing actuator for releasing rear seat backrest

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-

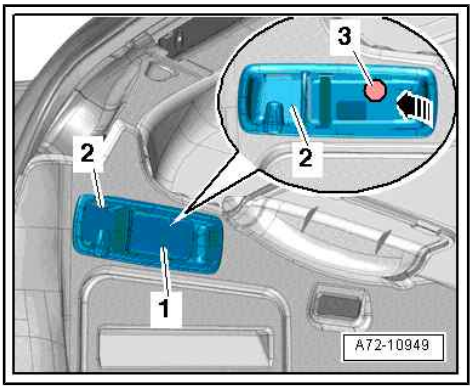


Removing

– Operate release lever -1- and release rear seat backrest.

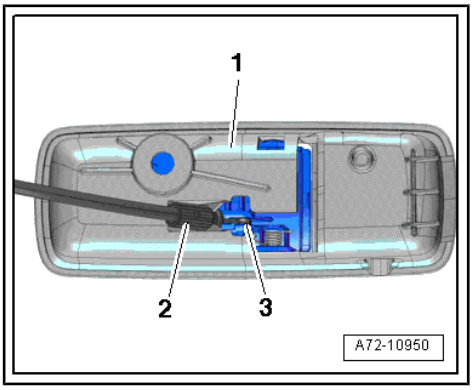
– Keep release lever pulled and remove spreader rivet -3- with a screwdriver.

– Lever out actuator -2- for releasing rear seat backrest using removal wedge -3409- -arrow- and detach.



– Unclip Bowden cable -2- at actuator -1- for releasing rear seat backrest.

– Disengage ball-head pin -3- of Bowden cable and detach actuator for releasing rear seat backrest.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

4.10 Removing and installing Bowden cable

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

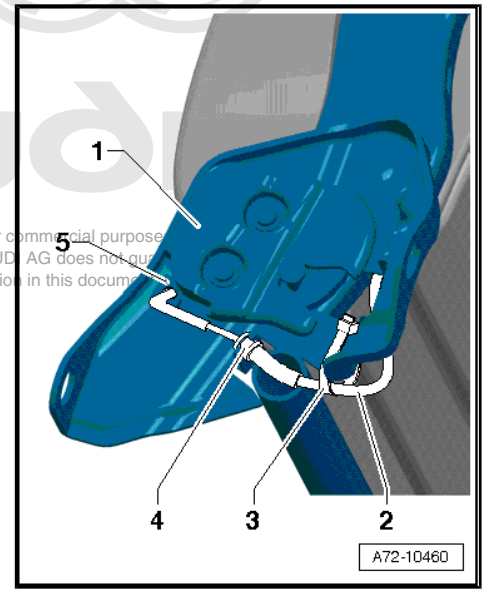
– Remove side trim ⇒ page 148 .

– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 170 .

– If fitted, cut through cable tie -3- for Bowden cable.

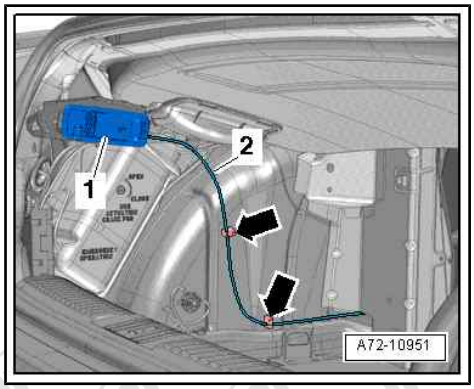
– Unclip Bowden cable -2- from support bracket -4- on backrest frame -1-.

– Disengage securing hook of Bowden cable from lever -5-.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document.

– Unclip Bowden cable -2- from retainers -arrows-.
– Pull Bowden cable with actuator -1- for releasing rear seat backrest out towards rear and detach.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

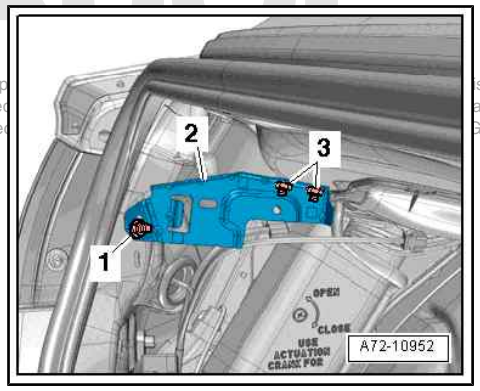
4.11 Removing and installing bracket for actuator

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Removing

– Remove actuator for releasing rear seat backrest ⇒ page 266 .
– Remove luggage compartment side trim ⇒ page 170 .
– Unscrew nuts -1- and -3- and detach bracket -2-.



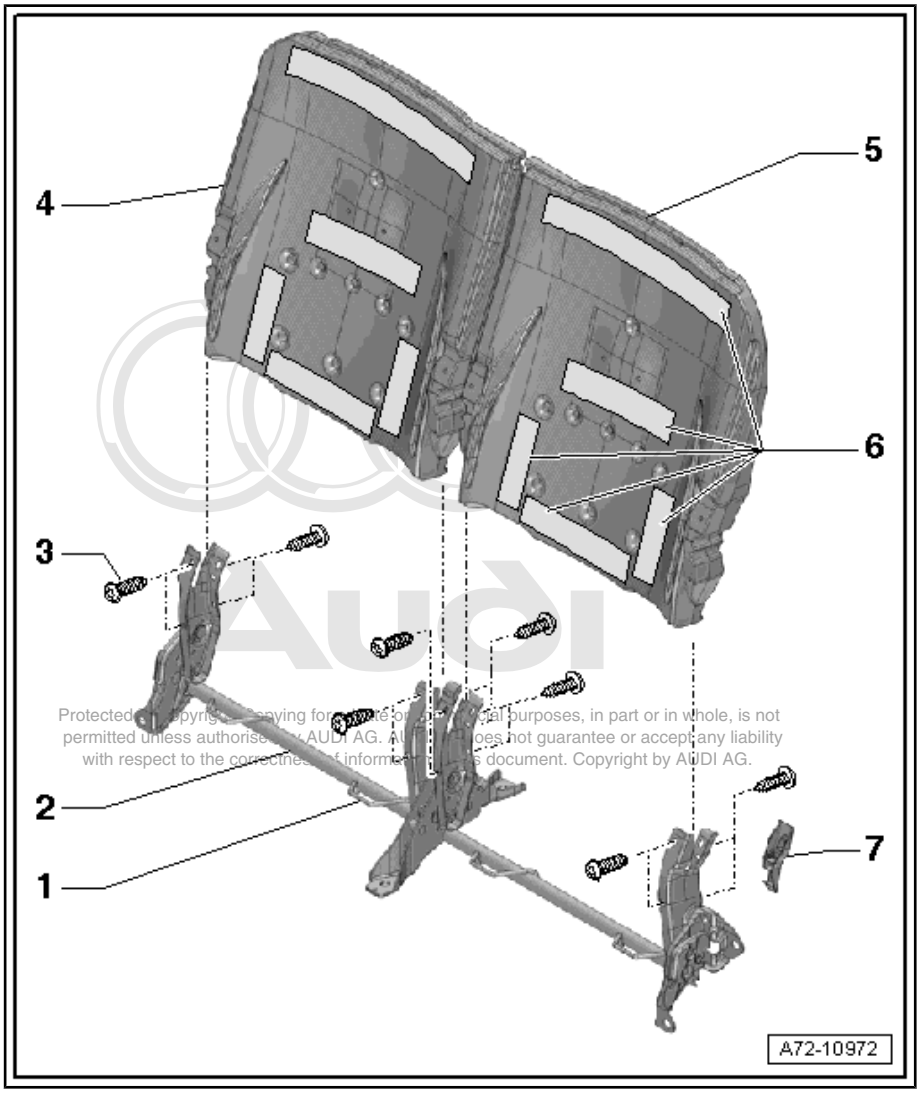
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 265

4.12 Exploded view of backrest frame and backrest pan

rotected by copyright. Cop
permitted unless authorise
with respect to the corre
s not
ability
G.



1 - ISOFIX child seat anchor

- ❑ Welded to backrest frame. To renew child seat anchor, backrest frame must be removed and renewed ⇒ page 270

2 - Backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270
- ❑ Equipment versions:

♦ With ISOFIX child seat anchor

♦ Without child seat anchor

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 16x
- ❑ 4.0 Nm

4 - Backrest pan (right-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270
- ❑ Double-sided adhesive tape on front
- ❑ Adhesive film on back
- ❑ With Top Tether (country-specific version)
- ❑ Removing and installing child seat anchor (Top Tether) ⇒ page 76

5 - Backrest pan (left-side)

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270
- ❑ Double-sided adhesive tape on front
- ❑ Adhesive film on back
- ❑ With Top Tether (country-specific version)
- ❑ Removing and installing child seat anchor (Top Tether) ⇒ page 76

6 - Double-sided adhesive tape

- ❑ Bonded onto front of backrest pan

7 - Filler piece

- ❑ 4x
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 269

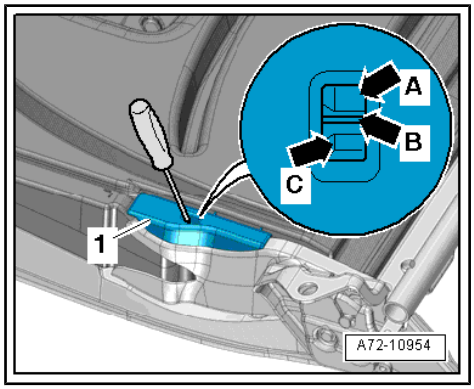
4.13 Removing and installing filler pieces

Note

♦ *The procedures for removing and installing the outer filler piece are described for the rear seat backrest (left-side). The removal and installation procedures at the rear seat backrest (right-side) are similar.*

♦ *The procedures for removing and installing the inner filler pieces are similar to those for the outer filler pieces.*

Removing



– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 263 .
– Detach padding from rear seat backrest in area of filler pieces and fold to the side ⇒ page 290 .
– Use a screwdriver to unclip filler piece -1- at backrest frame.
– Insert screwdriver into upper opening -arrow A- and press first retainer tab towards centre web -arrow B-.
– Then insert screwdriver into lower opening -arrow C- and press second retainer tab also towards centre web -arrow B-.
– Detach filler piece.

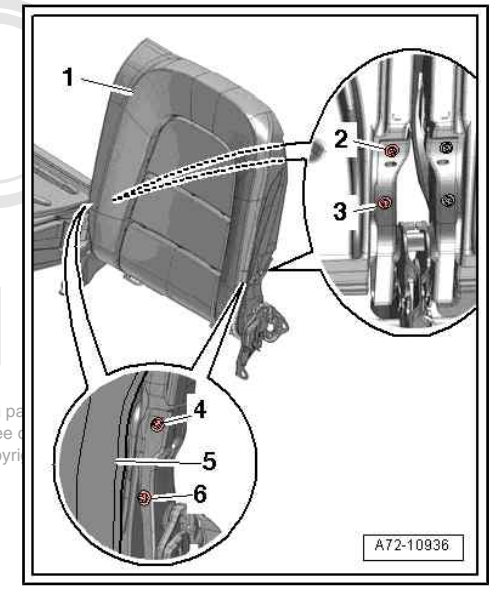
Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that filler piece is properly engaged with backrest frame.

4.14 Removing and installing rear seat backrest at backrest frame

Removing



– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 263 .
– Remove outer and inner filler pieces ⇒ page 269 .
– Remove bolts -2- and -3- for backrest pan at rear of backrest frame.
– Press seat cover and padding -5- to the side at the front and unscrew bolts -4- and -6- for backrest pan.
– Lift backrest -1- with seat cover and padding out of guides on backrest frame.
– Repeat procedure for second backrest.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in pa
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyri

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 268

4.15 Removing and installing backrest pan

Note

The procedures for removing and installing the backrest pan are similar to those for the backrest frame.

Removing

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 290 .
– Remove rear seat backrest from backrest frame ⇒ page 270 .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 268

4.16 Exploded view of head restraint (rear)

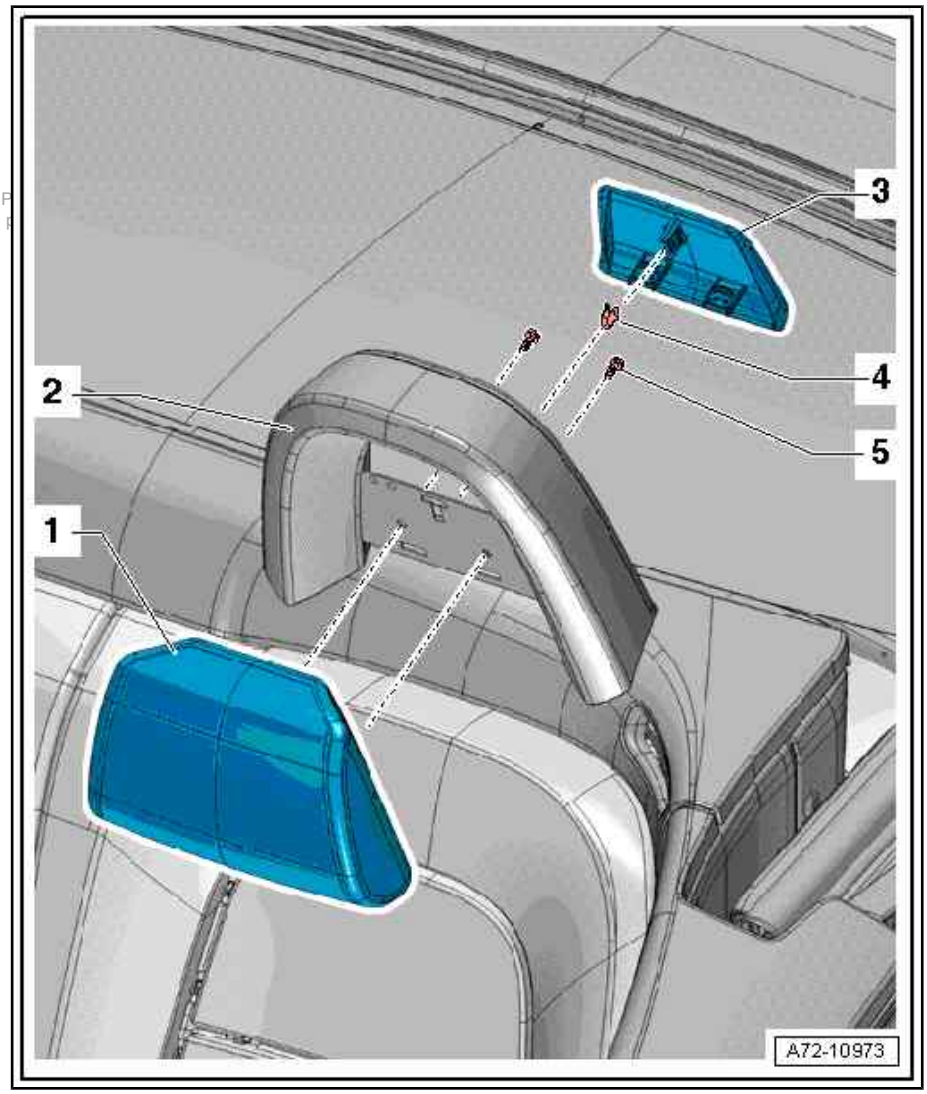
1 - Head restraint
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 271

2 - Roll-over bar

3 - Cover
- ❑ For head restraint

4 - Clip
- ❑ 3x
- ❑ Insert in cover
- ❑ Renew if damaged or deformed

5 - Bolt
- ❑ 2x
- ❑ 2 Nm



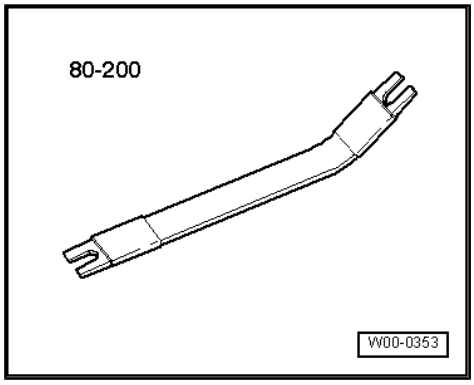
4.17 Removing and installing head restraint (rear)

Note

Removal and installation are identical on the left and right.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal lever -80 - 200-



Removing

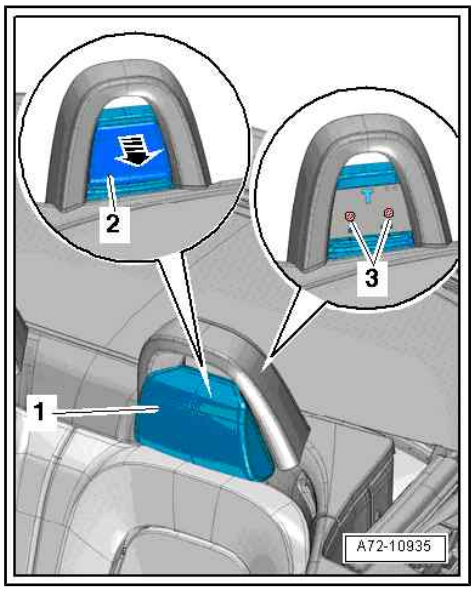
– Carefully press cover -2- off roll-over bar -arrows- using removal lever -80 - 200- and detach.

– Unscrew bolts -3- and detach head restraint -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening torque ⇒ page 271



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

74 – Seat - padding, covers

1 Front seat covers and padding

1.1 Exploded view of cover and padding for front seat

1 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ Fastened in clip -item 4-

2 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame

Copyright by copyrig
permitted unless au
with respect to th

3 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 273
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 275

4 - Clip

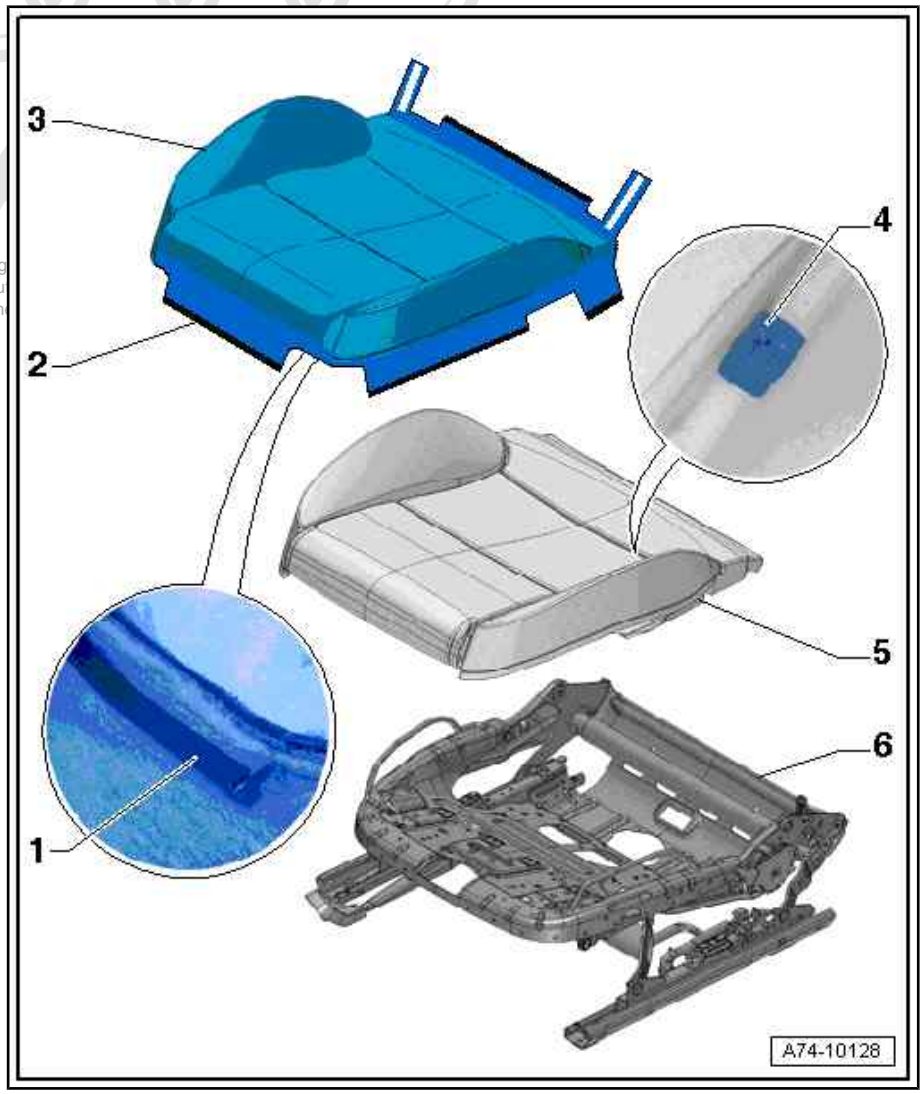
- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

5 - Padding

- ❑ With foam-fitted clip -item 4-
- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 273
- ❑ Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 275

6 - Seat pan

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.2 Removing and installing seat cover and padding”, page 273



1.2 Removing and installing seat cover and padding

Removing

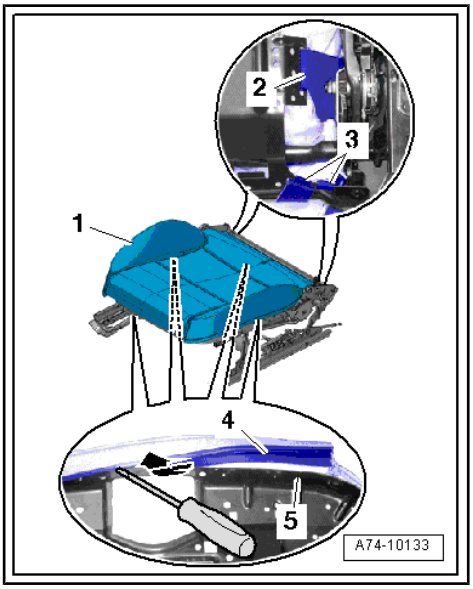
WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .
– Remove retaining bracket for trim (sill side) ⇒ page 186 .
– Equipment version with ISOFIX child seat anchor ⇒ “3.2 Removing and installing ISOFIX retainer”, page 72 .

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– Disengage fastening strip -4- of cover at front, rear and side of seat pan -5-.
– To do so, disengage fastening strips of seat cover from angled catches at fastening edge -arrow- with a screwdriver (or similar).
– Disengage piping of tabs -2- and -3- from seat pan (on both sides).
– Detach seat cover with padding from seat pan.



Installing

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that fastening strips engage properly and that there are no creases in the cover.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

Note

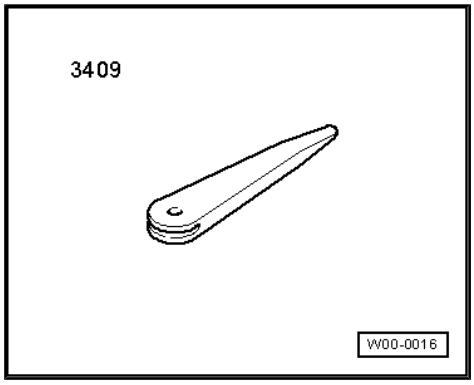
If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by Audi AG. Audi AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by Audi AG.

1.3 Detaching seat cover from padding and assembling

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Detaching

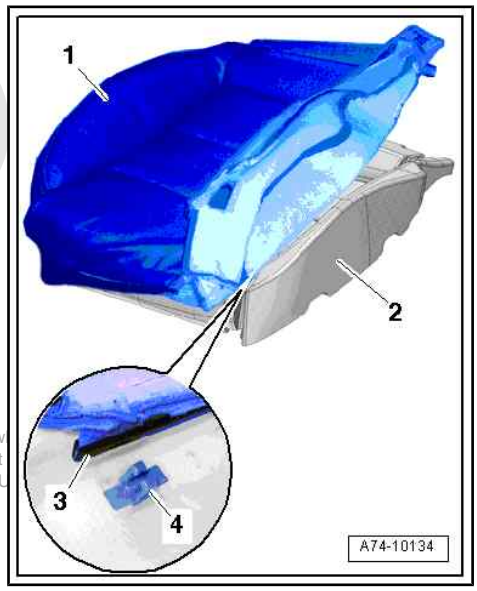
– Remove seat pan cover and padding ⇒ page 273 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
– Unclip fastening strip of seat cover -3- from clips (foam-fitted in padding) -4- using removal wedge -3409- .
– Detach cover from padding.

Assembling

Assembly is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that clip and fastening strip engage properly and that there are no creases in the cover.

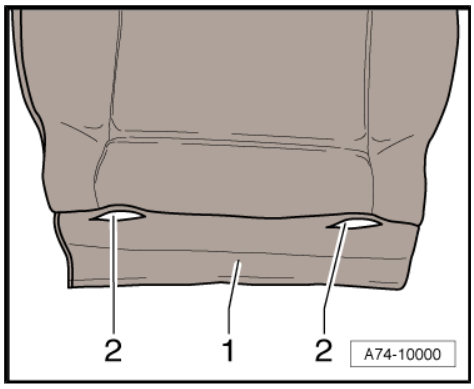
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in w
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AU



1.4 Cutting slots in fabric cover for ISOFIX retainer

Procedure

– Cut slots (approx. 60 mm long) on both sides -2- of new fabric cover -1-.



1.5 Exploded view of cover and padding for front seat backrest

1 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover in backrest frame

2 - Rubber strap

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For engaging cover at upper seat pan frame

3 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 278
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 279

4 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ Fastened in clip -item 7-

5 - Padding

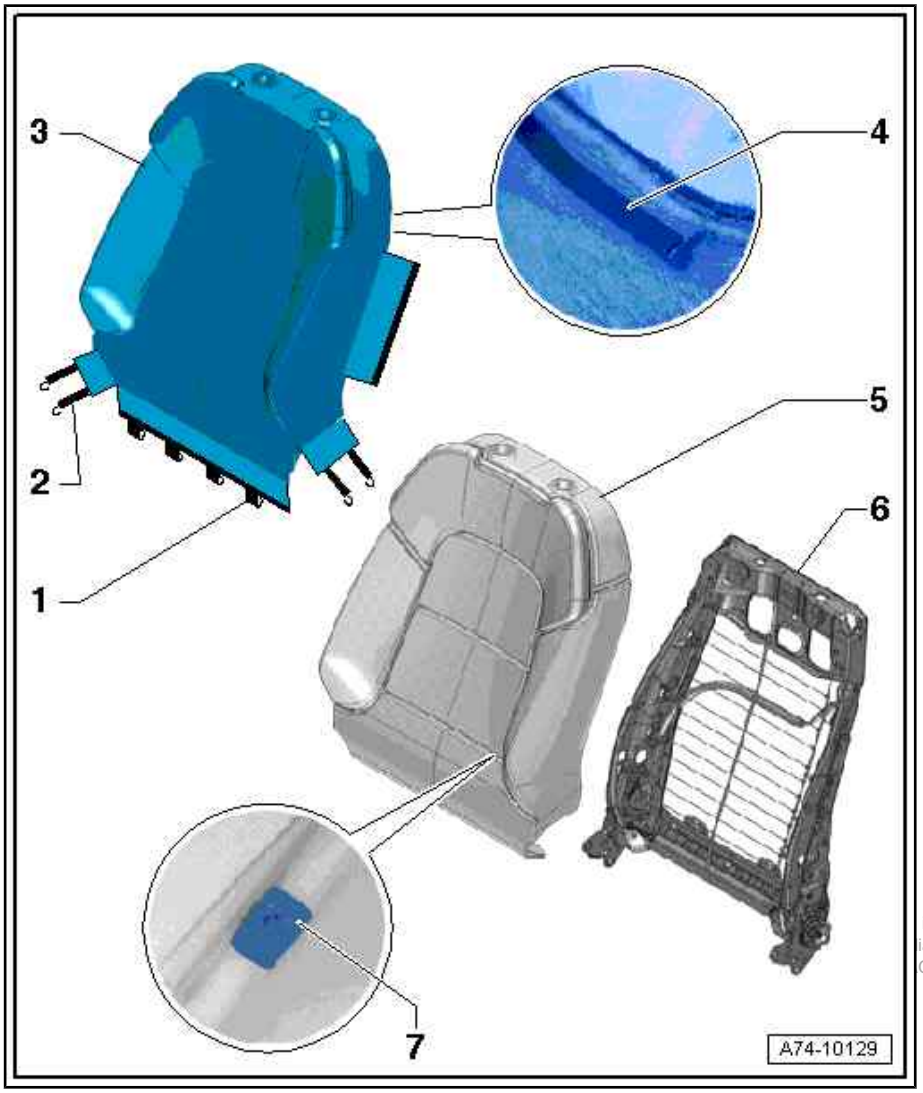
- ❑ With foam-fitted clip -item 7-
- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 278
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 279

6 - Backrest frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “1.6 Removing and installing cover and padding for front seat backrest”, page 278

7 - Clip

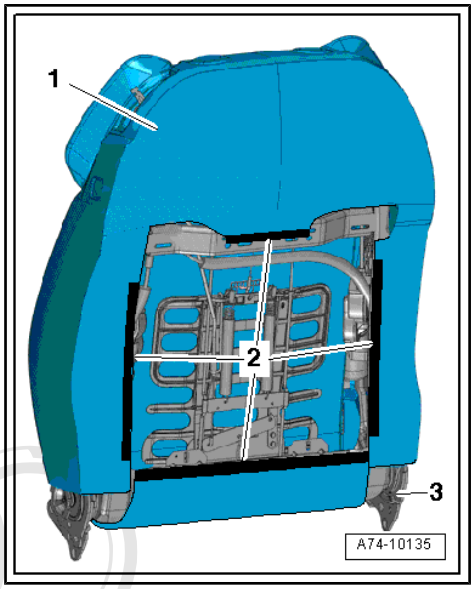
- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding



is not
iability
G.

1.6 Removing and installing cover and padding for front seat backrest

Removing



WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. unplugging the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

– Remove front seat ⇒ page 196 .
– Attach front seat to seat repair stand -VAS 6136- ⇒ page 182 .
– Remove front seat backrest ⇒ page 226 .
– Remove head restraint guides (without and with release button) ⇒ page 249 .
– Remove trim for backrest release mechanism (front) ⇒ page 234 .
– Disengage fastening strips -2- at top, bottom and side of backrest frame -3-.
– Pull cover and padding -1- upwards off backrest frame and detach.

Installing

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

WARNING

- *Observe safety regulations for pyrotechnic components ⇒ page 49 .*
- *Before handling pyrotechnic components (e.g. plugging in the electrical connector) the mechanic must discharge static electricity by briefly touching the door striker plate, or similar.*

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that fastening strips -2- engage properly and that there are no creases in the cover -1-.

Note

Make sure electrical connectors are fitted correctly (as far as stop) and engage audibly.

– Switch on ignition.

WARNING

The battery must be connected with the ignition switched on. If pyrotechnic components (e.g. airbag or belt tensioner) are inexpertly repaired, this may result in unwanted triggering after connecting the battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle while you are connecting the battery.

– With ignition switched on, connect battery earth wire ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 .

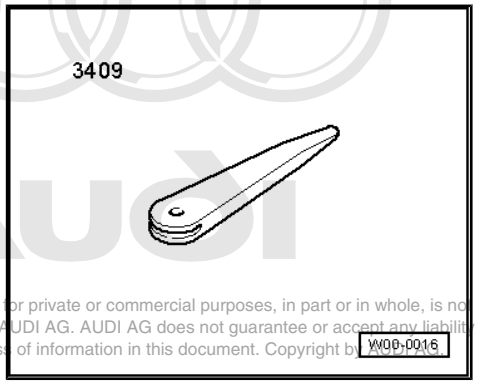
Note

If airbag warning lamp -K75- indicates a fault following installation, you must interrogate, erase and then re-interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Vehicle diagnosis, testing and information system VAS 5051.

1.7 Detaching backrest cover from padding (front) and assembling

Special tools and workshop equipment required

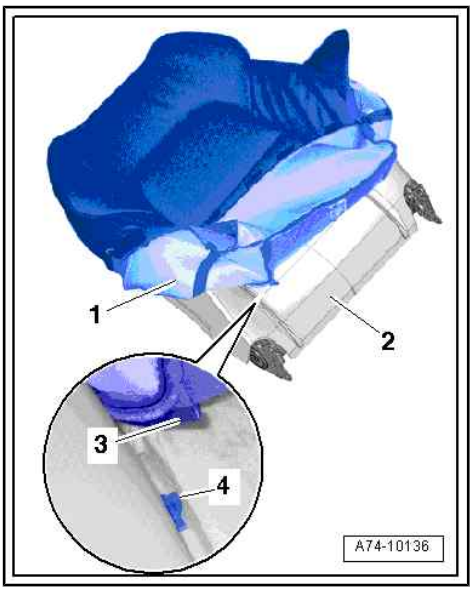
♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Detaching

– Remove backrest cover and padding ⇒ page 278 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
– Unclip fastening strip of seat cover -3- from clips (foam-fitted in padding) -4- using removal wedge -3409- .
– Pull cover upwards off padding and detach.



Assembling

Assembly is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Make sure that clip and fastening strip engage properly and that there are no creases in the cover.

1.8 Overview of seat heating element

1 - Padding

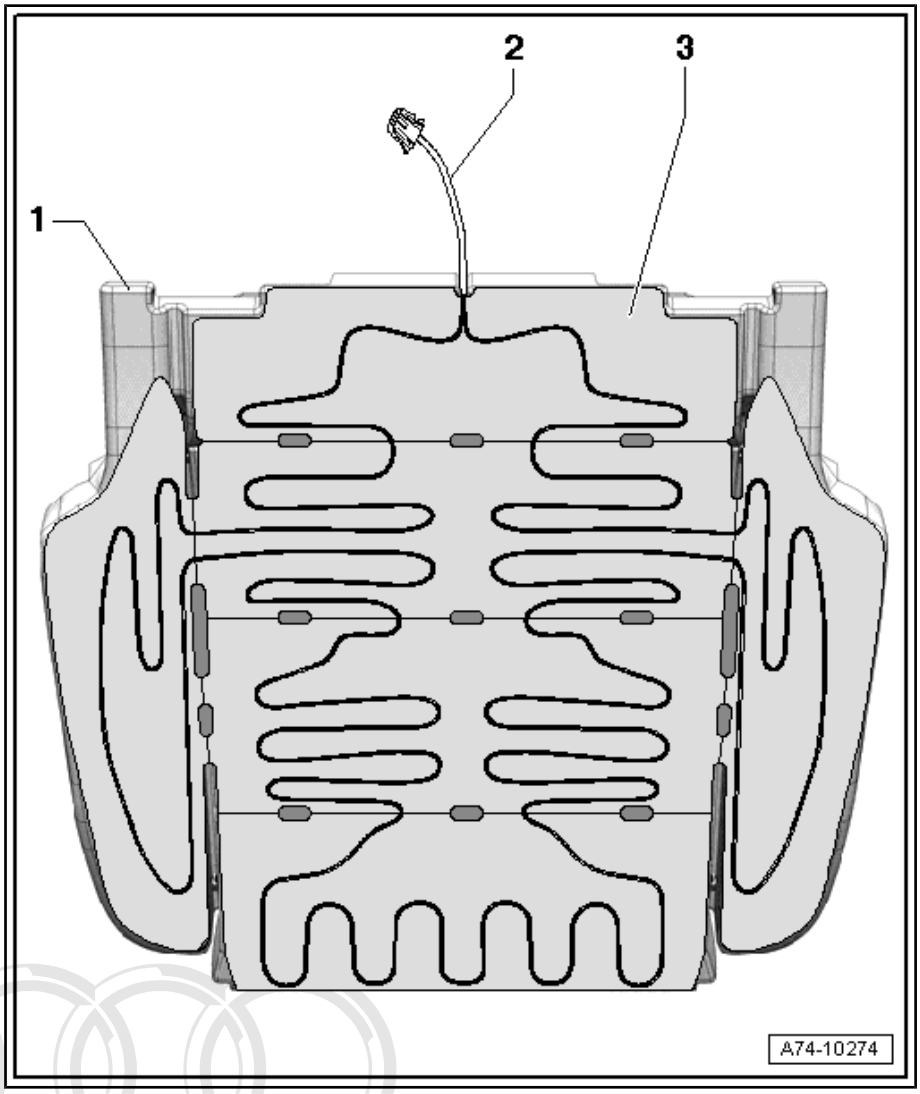
- ❑ For seat pan

2 - Wire

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat heating element

3 - Seat heating element

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 280



1.9 Removing and installing seat heating element

Removing

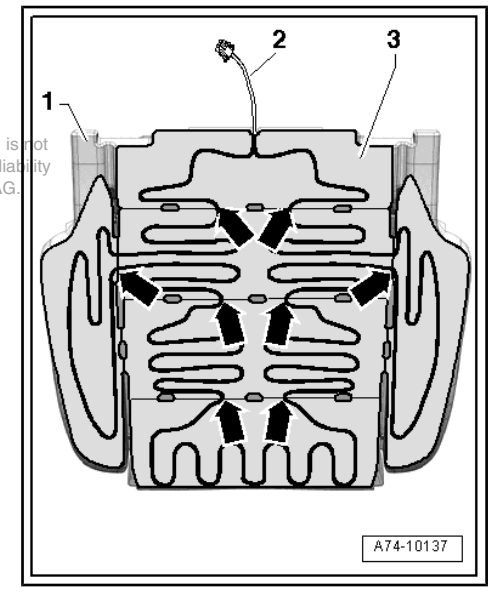
– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 275 .

– Cut off wire -2- directly at old seat heating element -3-.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Note

- ♦ *Leave old seat heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat heating element.*
- ♦ *-Arrows- can be disregarded.*



Installing

– Align new seat heating element -3- on padding.

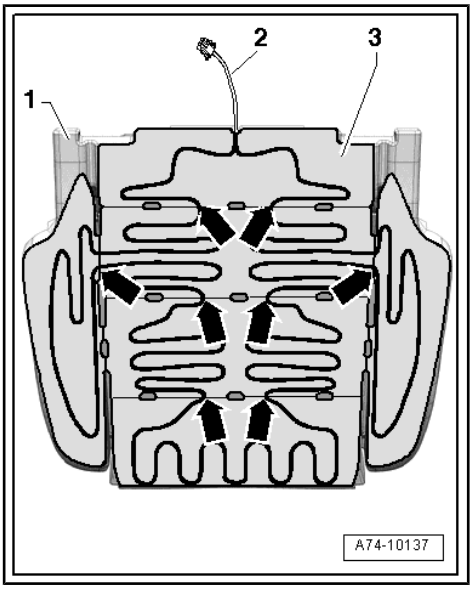
Caution

- *Take care to attach the new seat heating element in such a way that it covers the old seat heating element exactly.*
- *Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.*
- *When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.*

– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones into bottom of openings -arrows- (avoid crossing wires).

– Pull wire -2- through slit in padding -1-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.



1.10 Overview of backrest heating element

1 - Padding

❑ For front seat backrest

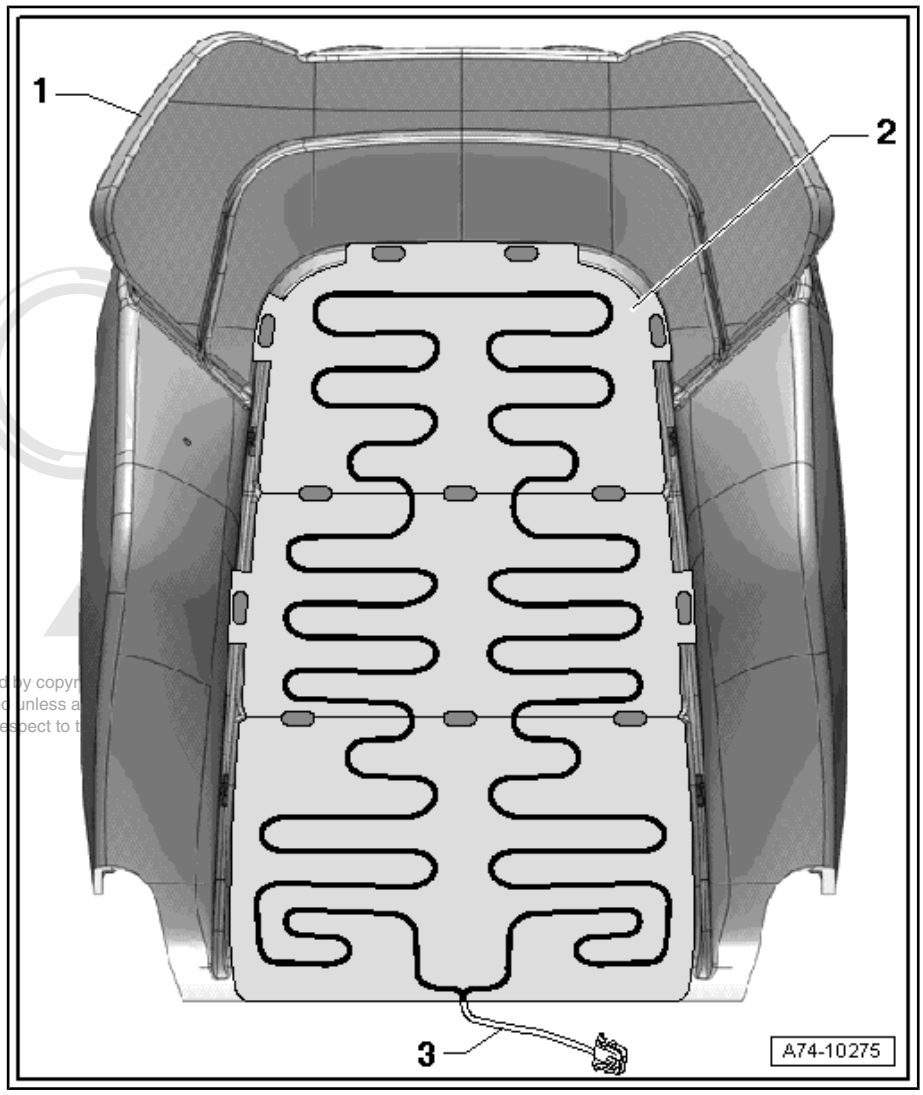
2 - Backrest heating element

❑ Bonded to padding

❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 282

3 - Wire

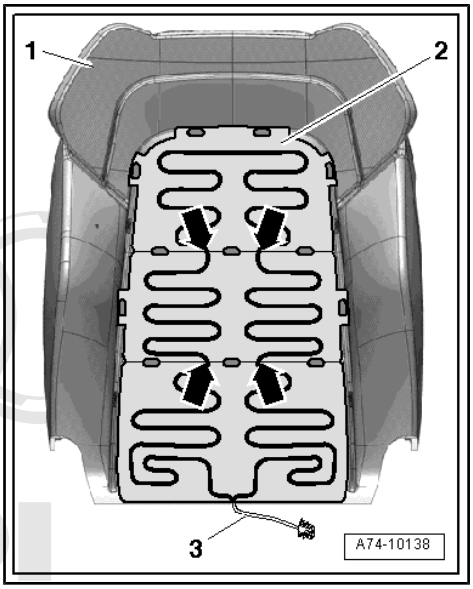
❑ Permanently connected to backrest heating element



Protected by copyr
permitted unless a
with respect to t

1.11 Removing and installing backrest heating element

Removing



– Detach cover from padding ⇒ page 279 .
– Cut off wire -3- directly at old backrest heating element -2-.

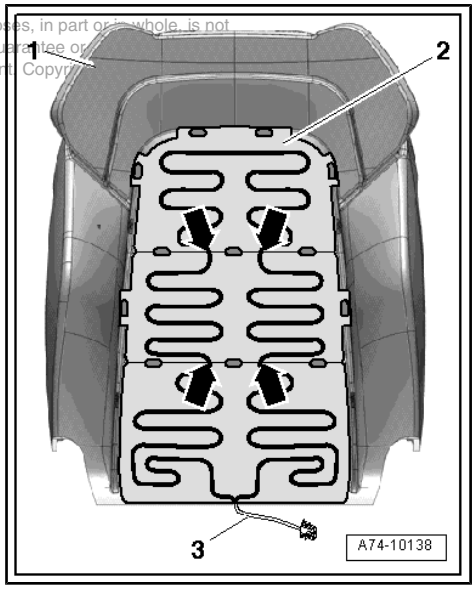
Note

- *Leave old backrest heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new backrest heating element.*
- *-Arrows- can be disregarded.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyr

Installing

– Align new backrest heating element -2- on padding.



Caution

- *Take care to attach the new backrest heating element in such a way that it covers the old heating element exactly.*
- *Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.*
- *When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.*

– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones into bottom of openings -arrows- (avoid crossing wires).
– Pull wire -3- through slit in padding -1-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

1.12 Exploded view of cover and padding for head restraint (front)

1 - Mounting bracket for head restraint

2 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 283

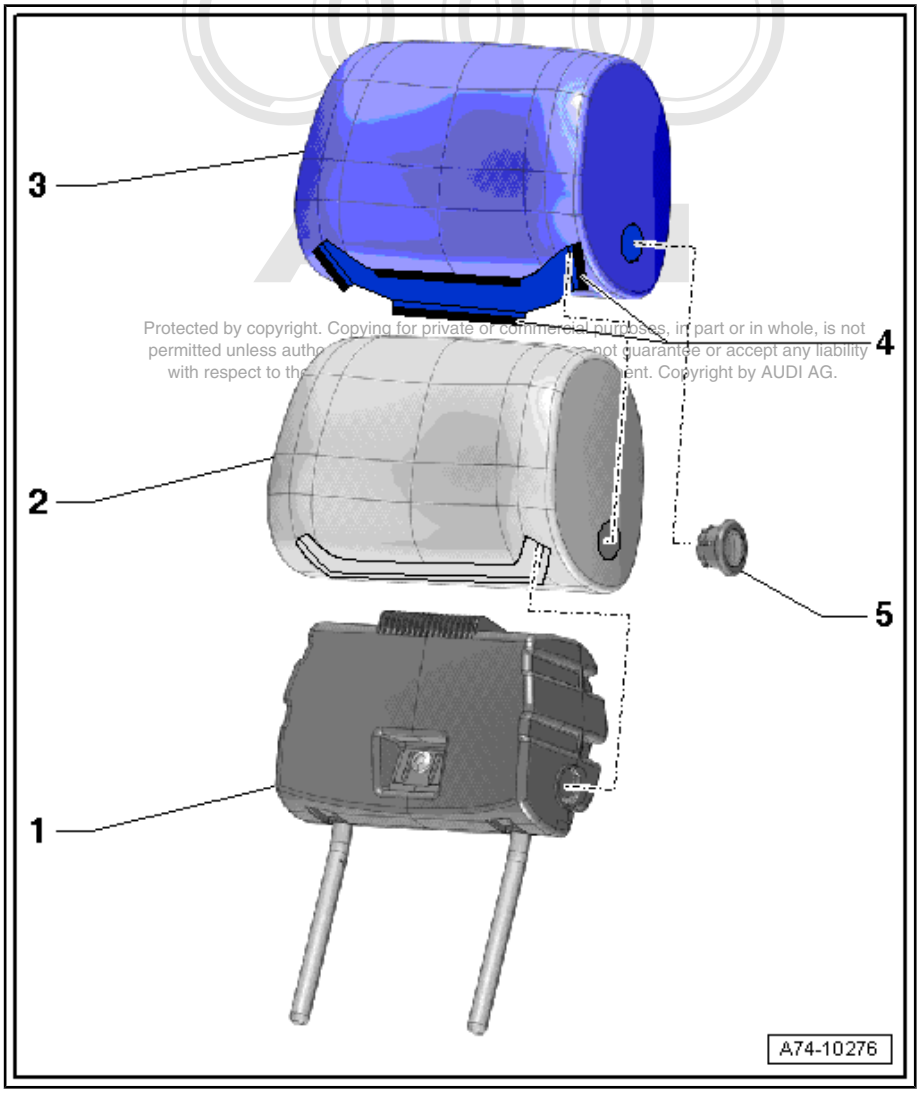
3 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 283

4 - Fastening strips

5 - Release button

- ❑ For height adjustment
- ❑ Clipped to mounting bracket for head restraint

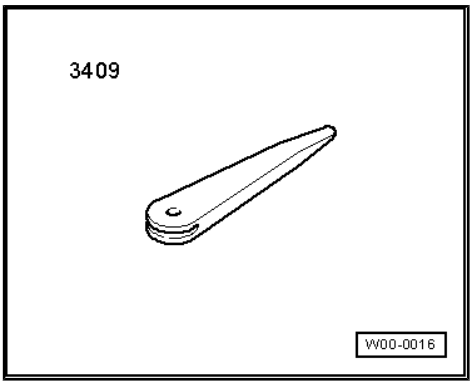


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless author... not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the... ent. Copyright by AUDI AG.

1.13 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint with slide-in locking mechanism

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-



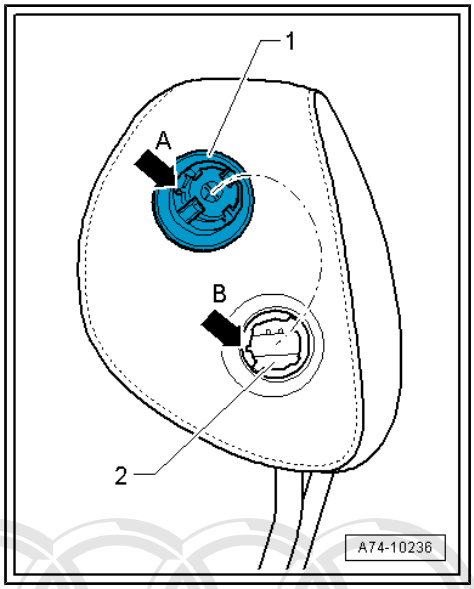
Removing

– Remove head restraint ⇒ page 248 .

– Use removal wedge -3409- to prise off release button -1- for adjusting height of mounting bracket -2- for head restraint.

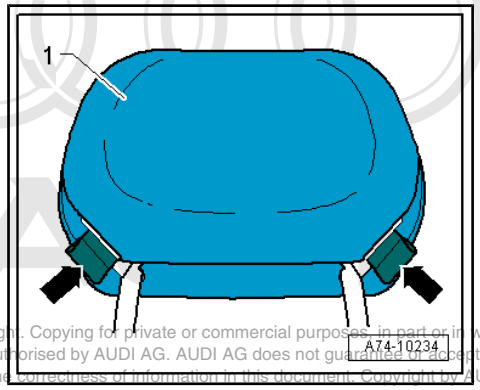
Note

-Arrows A, B- can be disregarded.



Opening fasteners (side)

– Open side fasteners -arrows- on cover -1-.

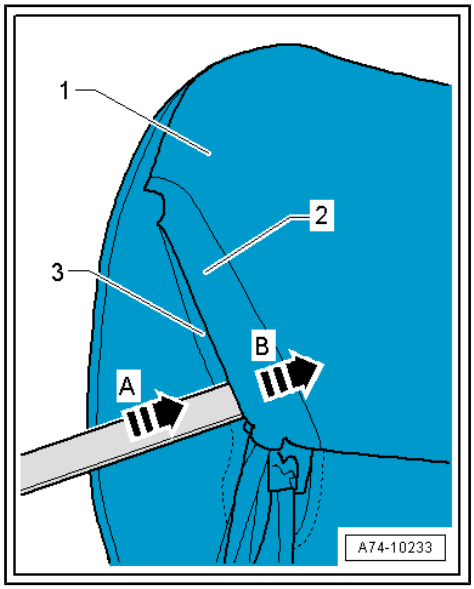


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

– To do so, insert removal wedge -3409- or a flat screwdriver in between fastening ring of cover -1- in direction of -arrow A-.

– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -3- in direction of -arrow B-.

– Pull upper side of cover out of U-profile with flat profile -2-.

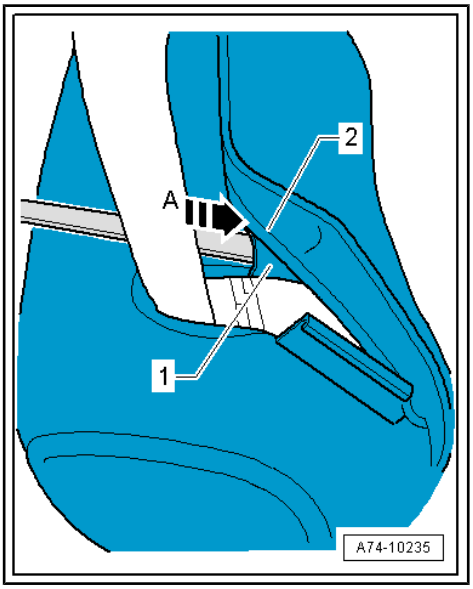


Opening main fastener

– Insert removal wedge -3409- or a flat screwdriver in between cover fastening.

– Apply tension to bottom U-profile -1- in direction of -arrow A-.

– Pull upper side of cover out of U-profile -1- using flat profile -2-.



Note

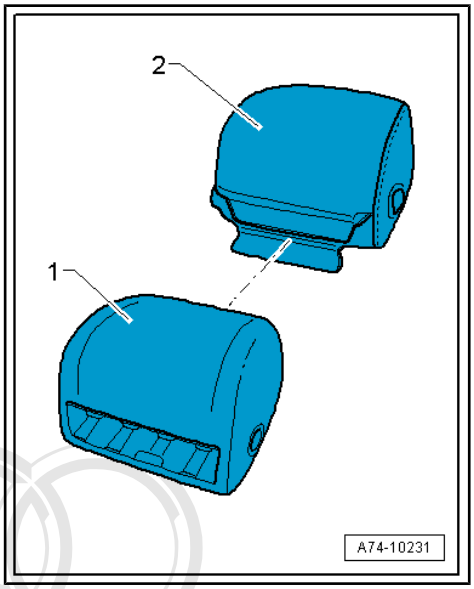
To take out padding cover must be fully open.

– Take padding -1- out of cover -2-.

Installing

– Insert padding -1- in cover -2-, ensuring that it fits correctly.

– Insert head restraint mounting bracket in padding with cover.



Closing main fastener

– Turn over upper flat profile -1- of cover -2-.

– Insert edge of fabric into U-profile -5- using flat profile.

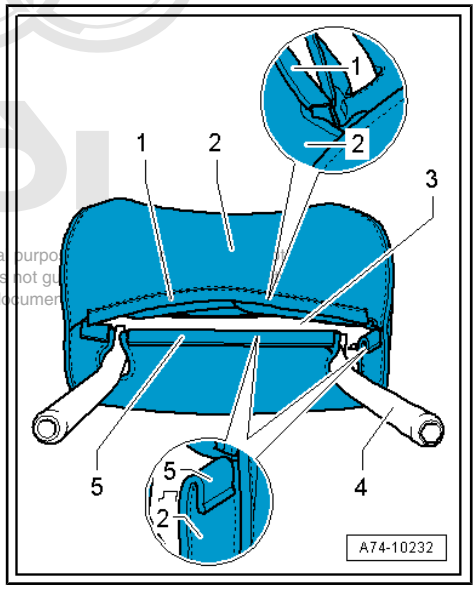
Closing fasteners (side)

– The procedure for closing the side fasteners is similar to that for closing the main fastener.

Continuation after closing main fastener and side fasteners

– Align cover and profiles using a needle or another sharp object.

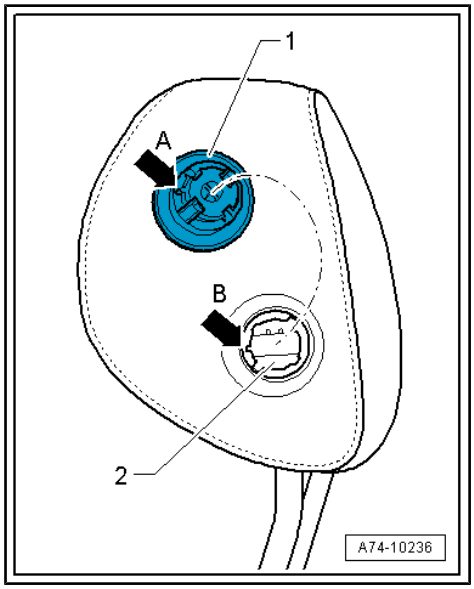
– Make sure cover is positioned on padding -3- without creases or seam marks.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purpo
with respect to the correctness of information in this documen

– Insert release button -1- for height adjustment through cover and padding into mounting bracket -2- for head restraint.
– When doing so, pay attention to locating pin for release button/ head restraint mounting bracket.
– Lug -arrow A- on release button must coincide with slit -arrow B- in button mounting of head restraint mounting bracket.
– Clip release button into mounting bracket for head restraint.

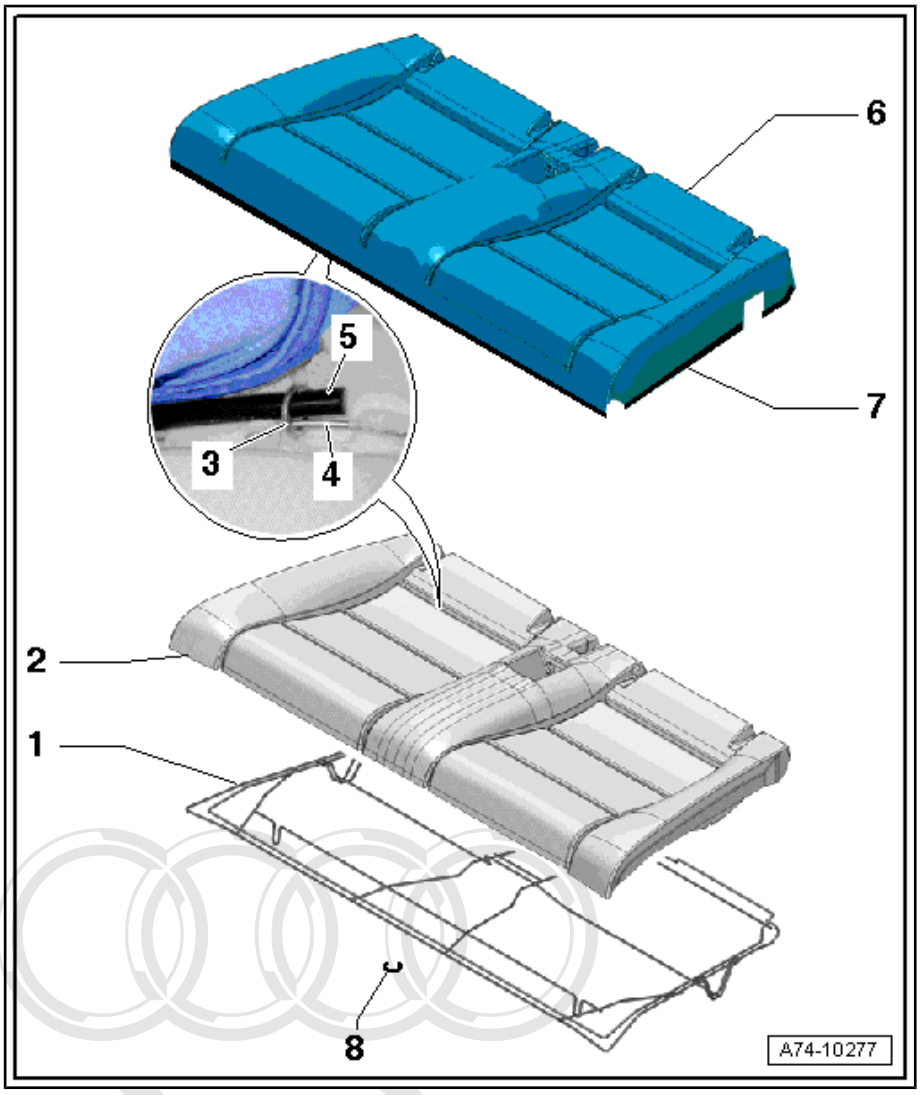
Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2 Covers and padding on rear seats

2.1 Exploded view of cover and padding for rear seat bench



1 - Seat frame

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 288

2 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 288

3 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ For attaching cover to padding
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach in original position

4 - Wire

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

5 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to padding

6 - Seat cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 288
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 288

7 - Piping

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ For attaching cover to seat frame

8 - Upholstery clip

- ❑ 47x
- ❑ For attaching cover to seat frame
- ❑ Renew
- ❑ Re-attach in original position

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

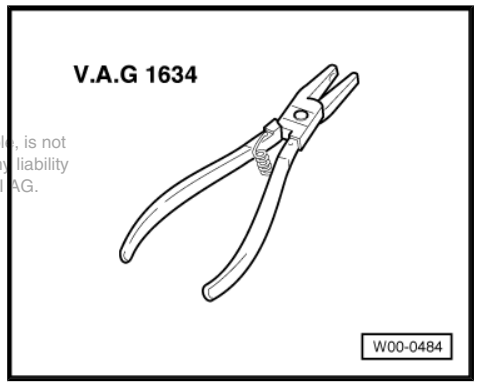
WARNING

After fitting, the ends of the upholstery clips must face towards the padding and must be properly closed to prevent possible injury.

2.2 Removing and installing cover and padding for rear seat bench

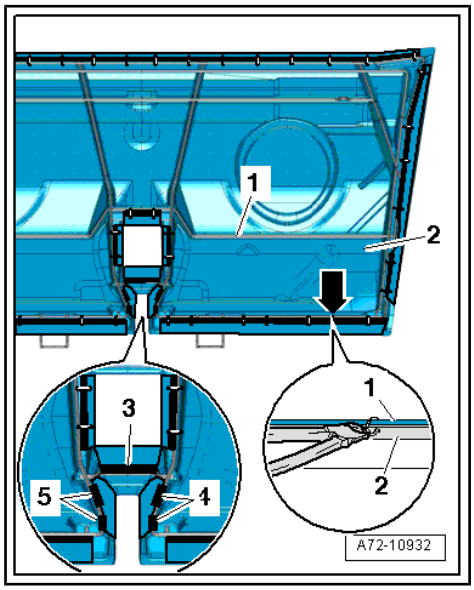
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Removing



– Remove seat bench ⇒ page 261 .
– Disengage fastening strips -3, 4, 5-.
– Cut through upholstery clips -arrow-.
– Take cover and padding -2- off seat frame -1-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

WARNING

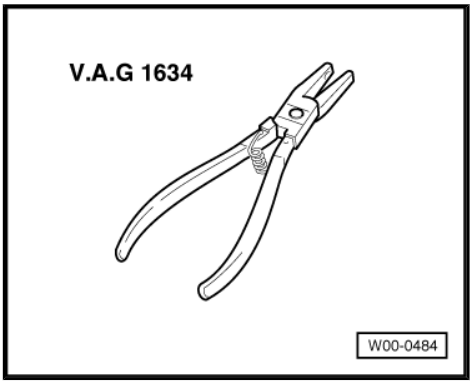
After fitting, the ends of the upholstery clips must face towards the padding and must be properly closed to prevent possible injury.

– Use new upholstery clips.
– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to fasten upholstery clips.
– Fit upholstery clips in their original positions.

2.3 Detaching cover from padding for rear seat bench and assembling

Special tools and workshop equipment required

♦ Upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634-



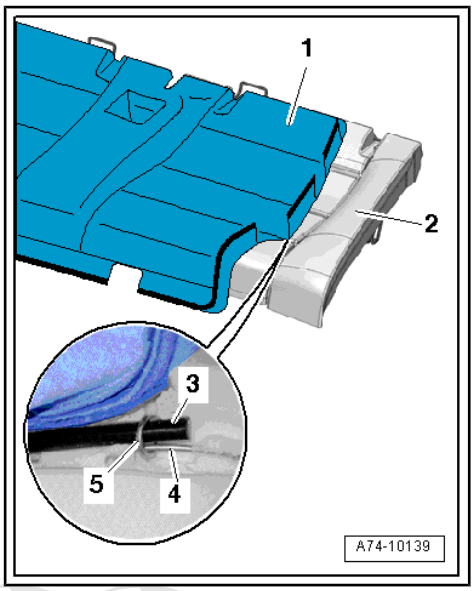
Detaching

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 288 .
– Detach cover -1- as far as possible from padding -2-.
– Use pliers to pinch off upholstery clips -5-.
– Detach cover from padding.

Assembling

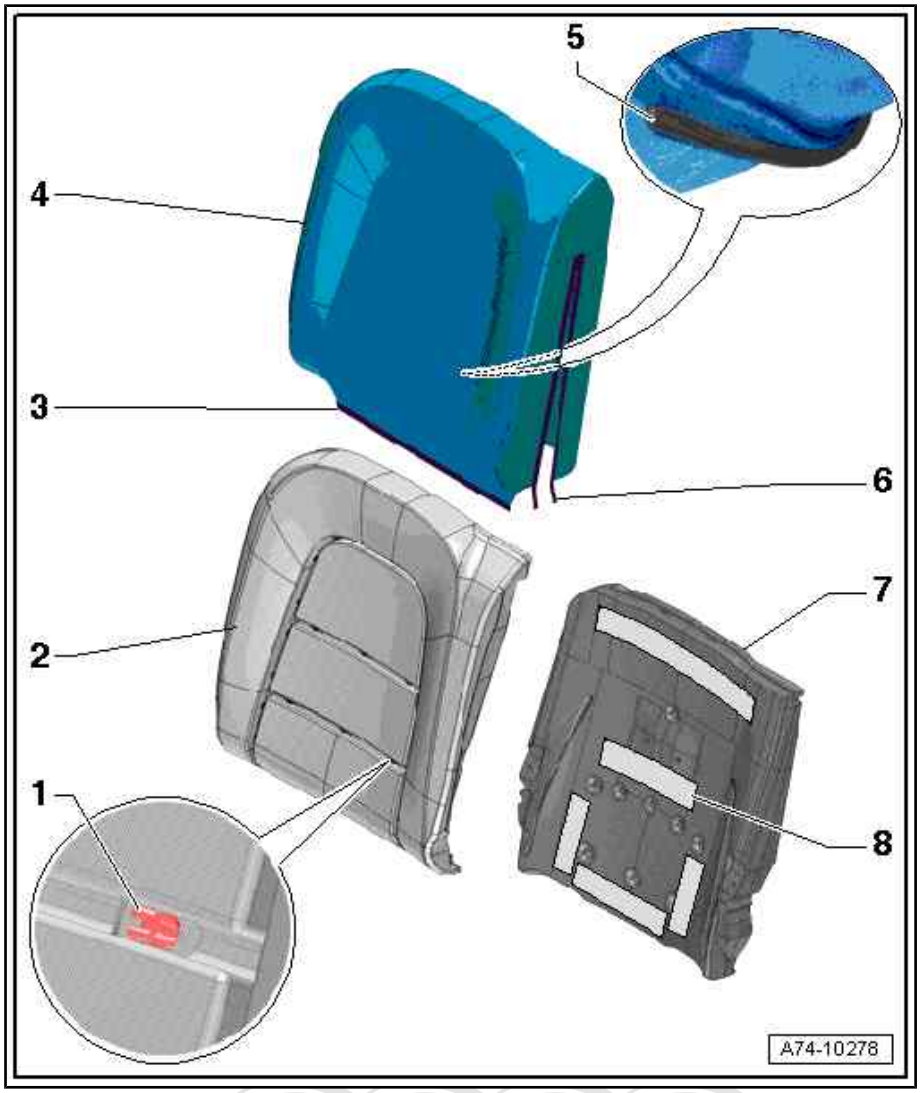
Assembly is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Use new upholstery clips.
– Secure fastening strip -3- of cover to wire -4- of padding with upholstery clips -5-.
– Use upholstery clip pliers -V.A.G 1634- to fasten upholstery clips.
– Fit upholstery clips in their original positions.



2.4 Exploded view of cover and padding for rear seat backrest

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.



1 - Clip

- ❑ Foam-fitted in padding

2 - Padding

- ❑ With foam-fitted clip -item 1-
- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 290
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 291

3 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover

4 - Cover

- ❑ Removing and installing cover with padding ⇒ page 290
- ❑ Detaching cover from padding and assembling ⇒ page 291

5 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover
- ❑ Fastened in clip -item 1-

6 - Zip

- ❑ Stitched to cover

7 - Backrest pan

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 270
- ❑ Double-sided adhesive tape on front
- ❑ Adhesive film on back
- ❑ With Top Tether (country-specific version)
- ❑ Removing and installing child seat anchor (Top Tether) ⇒ page 76

8 - Double-sided adhesive tape

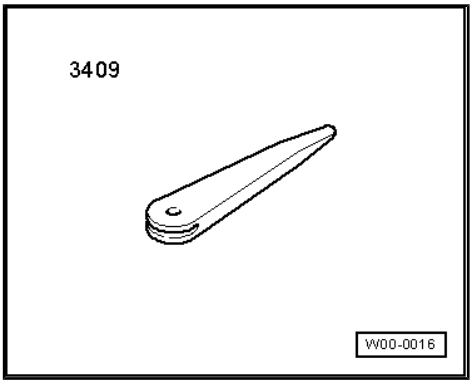
- ❑ Bonded onto front of backrest pan

2.5 Removing and installing cover and padding for rear seat backrest

Special tools and workshop equipment required

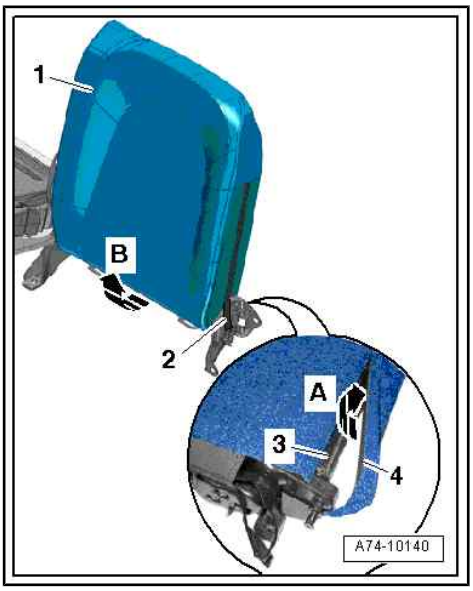
Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing

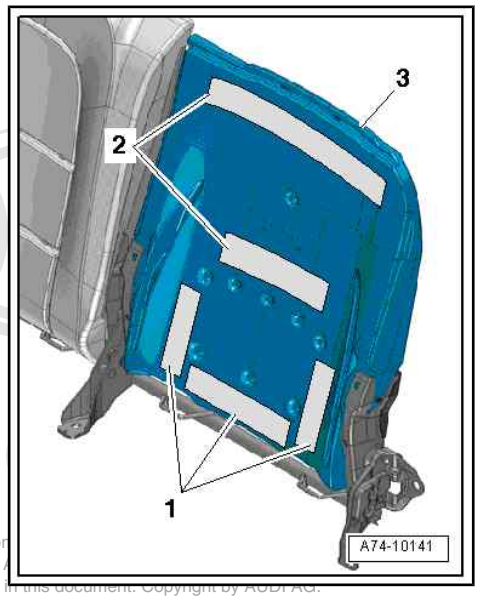
– Remove rear seat backrest ⇒ page 263 .
– Equipment version with Top Tether child seat anchor: Remove Top Tether child seat anchor ⇒ page 76 .
– Open zip on both sides of cover -2-.
– Use removal wedge -3409- to open fastening strips -3- and -4- -arrow A-.
– Pull out cover with padding (bottom) -1- towards front -arrow B-.
– Carefully pull cover with padding off adhesive strip on front of backrest pan and detach.



Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– When installing a new backrest pan -3-, detach protective film from adhesive strips -1- and -2- on front of backrest pan before fitting padding.
– When re-using the old backrest pan, use new double-sided adhesive tape.

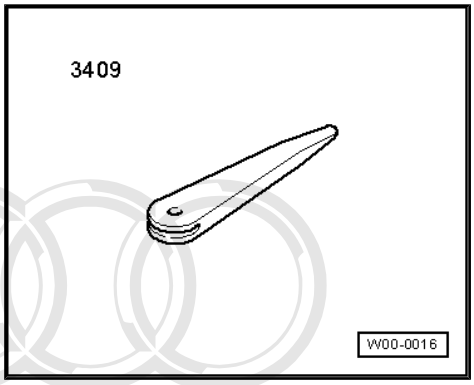


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or com
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI A
with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.6 Detaching cover from padding for rear seat backrest and assembling

Special tools and workshop equipment required

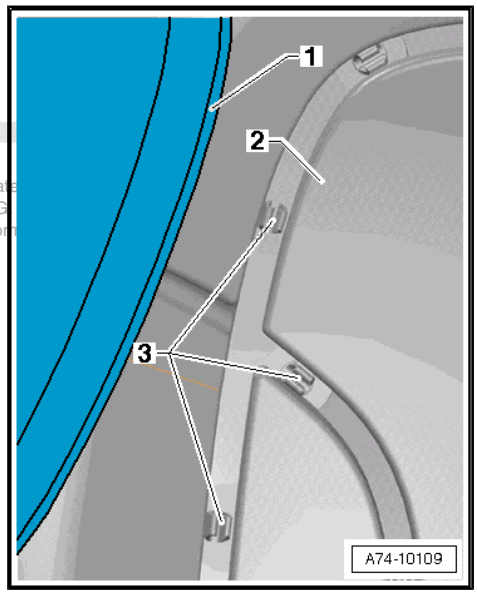
♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Detaching

– Remove seat cover with padding ⇒ page 290 .
– Detach cover as far as possible from padding.
– Unclip fastening strip of cover -1- from clips -3- (foam-fitted in padding -2-) using removal wedge -3409-.
– Detach cover from padding.

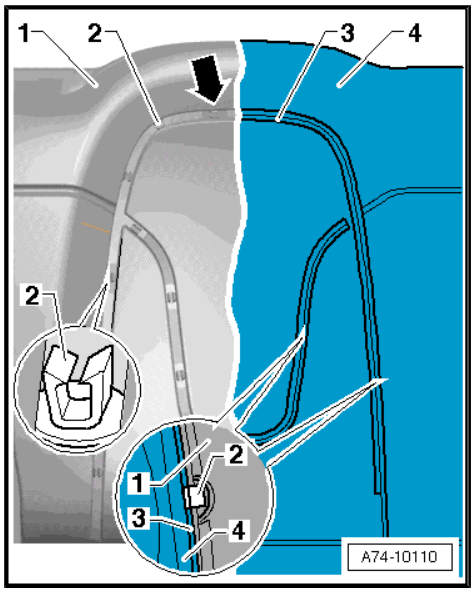
Protected by copyright. Copying for private
permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG
with respect to the correctness of infor



Assembling

Assembly is carried out in the reverse order; note the following:

– Align cover -4- with padding -1-.
– Start clipping cover to padding in upper section -arrow-.
– Press fastening strip -3- into clips -2-.
– Make sure that clip and fastening strip engage properly and that there are no creases in the cover.



2.7 Overview of seat bench heating element

1 - Padding

- ❑ For seat bench

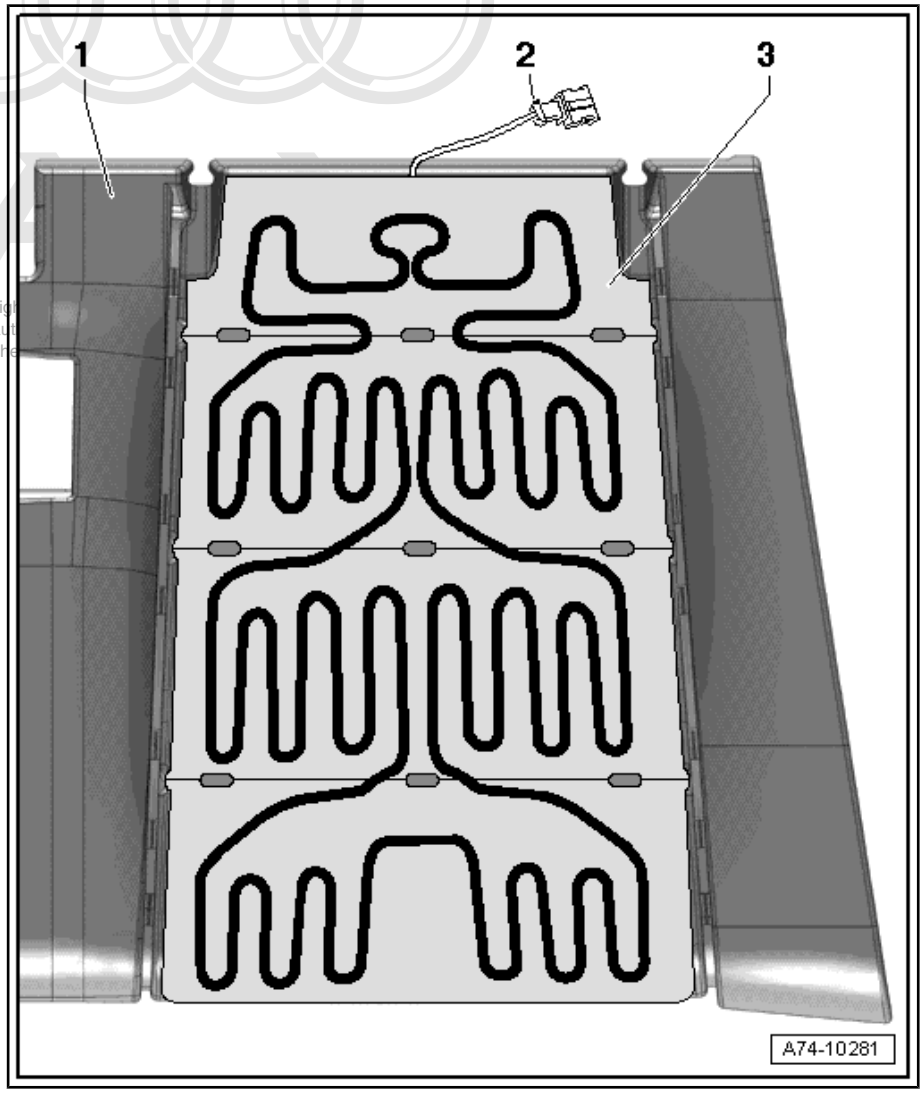
2 - Electrical wiring

- ❑ Permanently connected to seat bench heating element

3 - Seat bench heating element

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 293

Reproduction of this copyright permitted unless au with respect to the



2.8 Removing and installing seat bench heating element

Removing

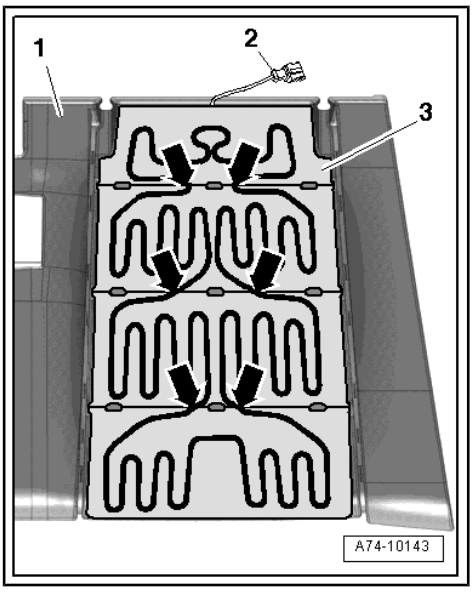
– Remove cover and padding for rear seat bench ⇒ page 288 .

– Detach cover from padding for rear seat bench ⇒ page 288 .

– Cut off electrical wire -2- directly at old seat bench heating element -3-.

Note

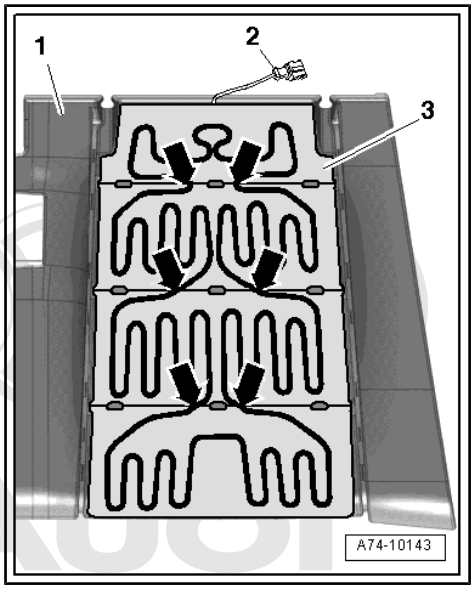
- *Leave old seat bench heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new seat bench heating element.*
- *-Arrows- can be disregarded.*



Installing

– Align new seat bench heating element -3- on padding.

> **Caution**
>
> - *Take care to attach the new seat bench heating element in such a way that it covers the old heating element exactly.*
> - *Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.*
> - *When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.*



– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones into bottom of openings -arrows- (avoid crossing wires).

– Pull wire -2- through slit in padding -1-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

2.9 Overview of backrest heating element

1 - Padding

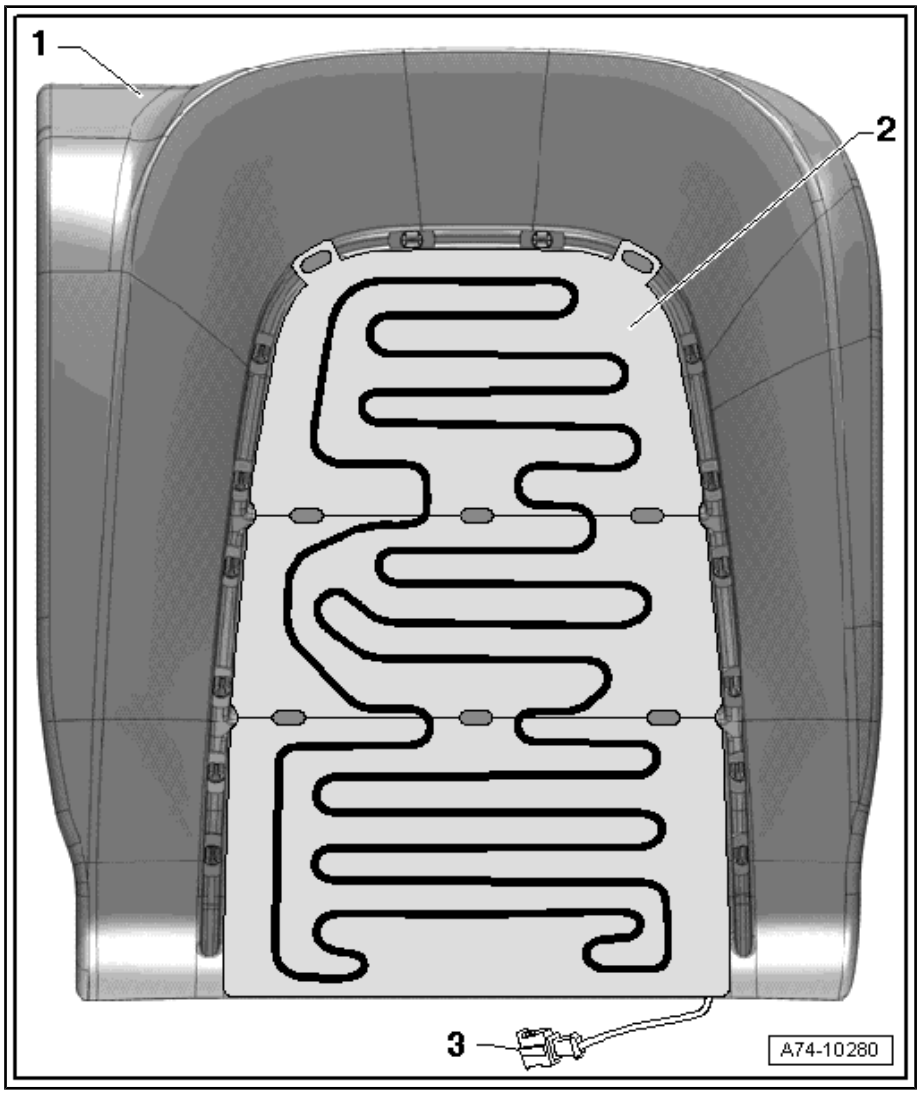
- ❑ For backrest

2 - Backrest heating element

- ❑ Bonded to padding
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 295

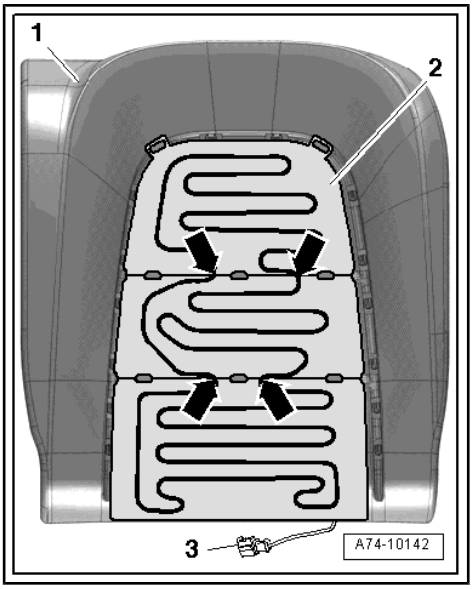
3 - Electrical wiring

- ❑ Permanently connected to backrest heating element



2.10 Removing and installing backrest heating element

Removing



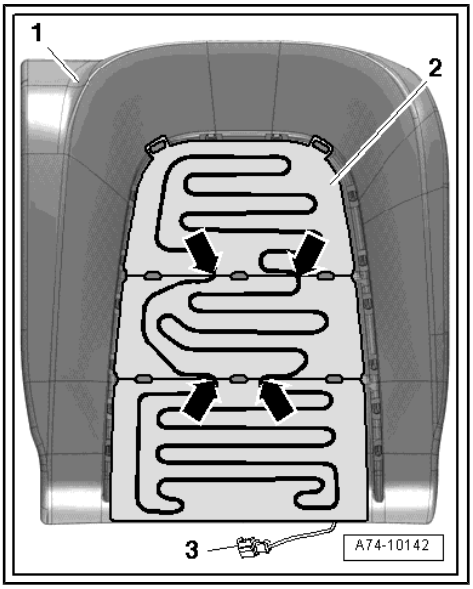
– Remove cover and padding for rear seat backrest ⇒ page 290 .
– Detach cover from padding for rear seat backrest ⇒ page 291 .
– Cut off electrical wire -3- directly at old backrest heating element -2-.

Note

- *Leave old backrest heating element on padding -1- and cover it with new backrest heating element.*
- *-Arrows- can be disregarded.*

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.

Installing



– Align new backrest heating element -2- on padding.

Caution

- *Take care to attach the new backrest heating element in such a way that it covers the old heating element exactly.*
- *Detach protective foil from areas of heating element in bonding sequence.*
- *When detaching protective foil, take care not to damage heating element and avoid creases when bonding.*

– Route wiring leading to individual heating zones into bottom of openings -arrows- (avoid crossing wires).
– Pull wire -3- through slit in padding -1-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

2.11 Exploded view of cover and padding for head restraint (rear)

1 - Padding

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 296

2 - Cover

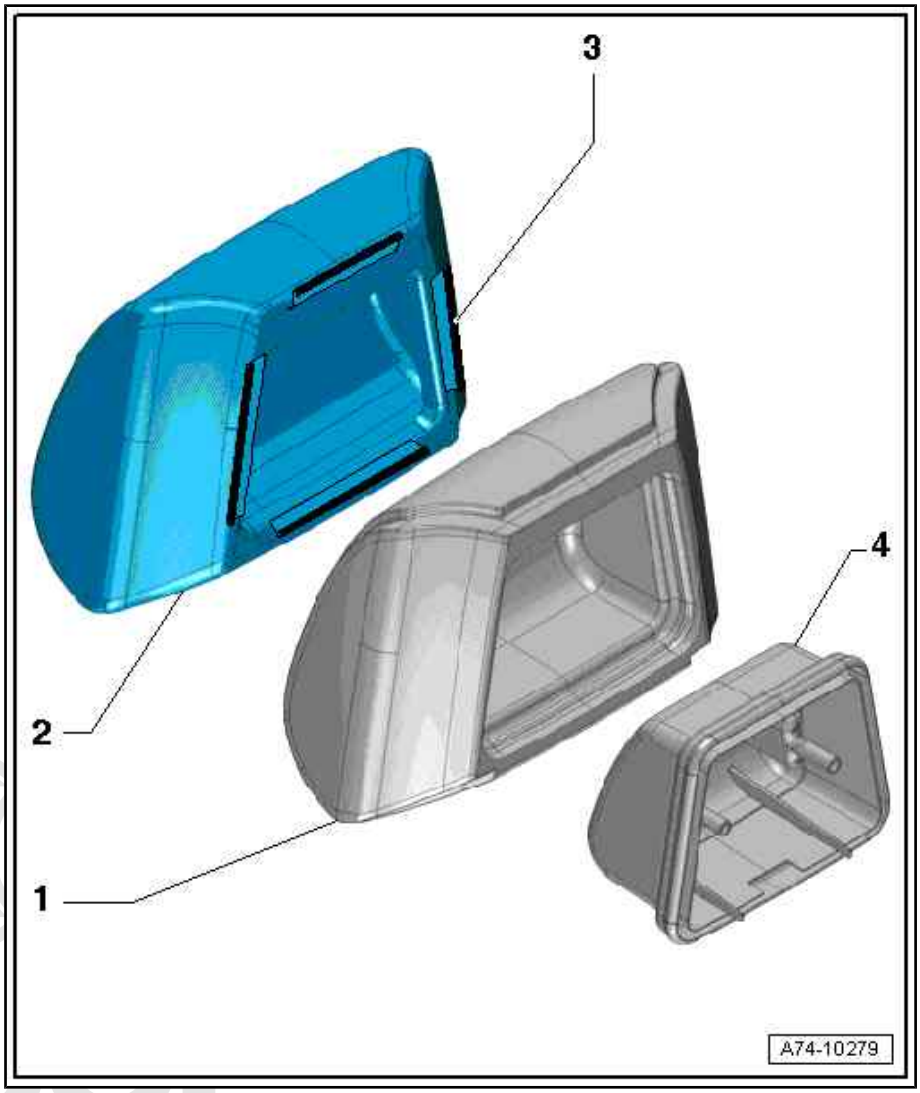
- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ page 296

3 - Fastening strip

- ❑ Stitched to cover

4 - Mounting bracket for head restraint

- ❑ Removing and installing ⇒ “2.12 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint (rear)”, page 296

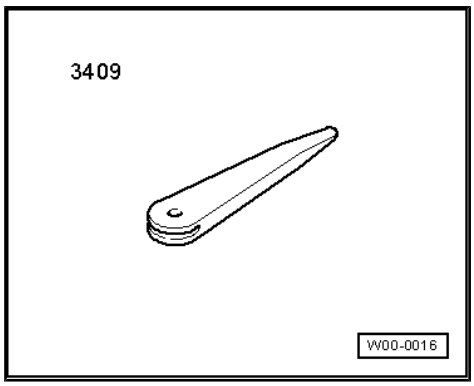


Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information. Copyright by AUDI AG.

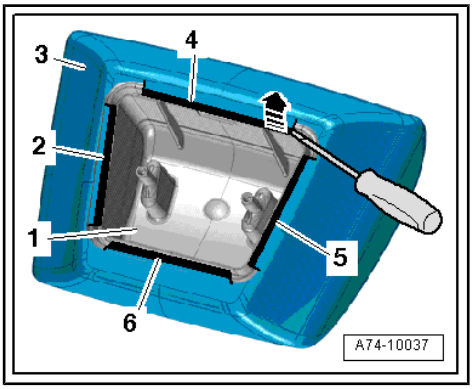
2.12 Removing and installing cover and padding for head restraint (rear)

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Removal wedge -3409-



Removing



– Remove head restraint (rear) ⇒ page 271 .
– Use removal wedge -3409- or a flat screwdriver to prise fastening strips -2, 4, 5, 6- out of mounting bracket for head restraint -arrow-.
– Pull mounting bracket -1- for head restraint out of padding with cover -3-.

Note

To take out padding cover must be fully open.

– Take padding out of cover.

Installing

– Insert padding in cover, ensuring that it fits correctly.
– Make sure cover is positioned on padding without creases or seam marks.
– Slide mounting bracket -1- for head restraint into padding with cover -3-.

Perform remaining installation in reverse order of removal.

Protected by copyright. Copying for private or commercial purposes, in part or in whole, is not permitted unless authorised by AUDI AG. AUDI AG does not guarantee or accept any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document. Copyright by AUDI AG.